

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY



3 1761 00361171 2









# Charles the Grete.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XXXVII.

1881.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



Early English Text

[Blind-stamped text, possibly a library or collection name]

no. 36527

THE

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART III. —

The Luf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,

Charles the Grete,

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY WILLIAM CANTON  
AND PRINTED BY HIM 1485.



EDITED NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME, FROM THE UNIQUE COPY  
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary,

BY

SIDNEY J. H. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF "GESTA ROMANORUM," "SIR FERUMBRAS," ETC.

38074  
7/1/96

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCXXXI.

PF

III E

EE

no 30 37

Extra Series.

XXXVII.

---

BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, THE CHAUCER PRESS.

## INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume, completing Part III. of the English Charlemagne Romance series, requires but little introduction. I have already referred to it in my edition of *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. pp. viii, ix. It contains the whole life of Charlemagne, with a brief sketch of the early kings of France, and includes all the incidents narrated in *Sir Ferumbras*, *The Sordone of Babyloynne*, *Roland and Vernagu*, and the *Song of Roland*.

Caxton's "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete" survives only in the unique copy preserved in the British Museum (Press Mark c. 10, b. 9). It is a folio volume, containing 96 leaves, the signatures running from A ij to M viij, and is perfect, but without title-page. The colophon tells us that the "werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xvij day of Juyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrde, and the yere of our lord MCCCCLXXXV, and enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our lord, & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth."

The type is that classed by Mr. Blades as 4\*. The pages have two columns, each containing 39 lines, and each line measuring  $2\frac{3}{8}$  inches. There are neither folios nor catchwords. The initial wood-cut letters are 3 lines deep.

In 1743 the volume was sold by R. Harley to Osborne the bookseller, the price not mentioned. In 1773 it became the property of J. Ratcliffe at a cost of £13, and in 1776 it was sold by him to George III for £4. 4. 0.

As Caxton himself tells us, the work here reprinted is a translation of the French prose romance of *Fierabras*, itself a compilation

partly from the *Speculum Historiale* of Vincent de Beauvais, and partly from the old French romance of Fierabras. The exploits of Charlemagne were related in numerous histories and romances, both in French and Latin, in prose and in verse, as early as the 12th and 13th centuries. From the envoy of the anonymous author of the original French version we learn how Henry Bolomyer, a canon of Lausanne, induced him to gather together into one connected narrative these disjointed fragments. A comparison of his work with that of Vincent of Beauvais shows clearly that his researches were by no means confined to the *Speculum Historiale*. I have already given a short account of the original French work.<sup>1</sup> One version in the Grenville Library, 10531, is doubly unique, being not only the only copy of that particular version known to be in existence, but also the only production of the press of Symon du Jardin, at Geneva, which has come down to us. Brunet had heard of it, but doubted its existence (*Suppl.* II. p. 231). It is undated and without signatures, pagination, or illustrations.

A second version of the original French is also preserved in the same library, No. 10532. It also is a folio volume of 65 leaves, signatures running from A j to L v. On L v b is a woodcut similar to that at the end of the copy already described. This also is unique, and has the following colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil qualtre cens quatre vingtz et seize. Le xx iour de novembre." There are numerous woodcuts throughout the work, evidently copied from the same source as those in the Royal *Fierabras* described below, but much coarser and plainer. They are also frequently reversed, and, as in the royal copy, the same woodcut is at times made to serve for two or more incidents of a similar character.

In the library of the late Mr. Huth is a version, undated, in folio, black letter, with woodcuts, and the colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a lyon par mai-stre Guillaume le roy. Le cinquesme Jour du moys de Juilliet. Deo gracias." It contains 108 leaves, and is the copy described by Brunet. It appears to have belonged originally

<sup>1</sup> Introd. to *Sir Ferumbras*, pp. vi, vii.

to the library of the Academy at Lyons. In the same library is a version in German containing 53 leaves, of which another copy is in the British Museum.<sup>1</sup>

The copy of the French *Fierabras* which I have used for comparison with the English translation, is that preserved in the Royal Library (Press mark, C. 6, b. 12). It is a folio volume of 115 leaves, without title-page. Woodcuts are freely introduced. On the back of sign. A i. is a large one representing Fierabras on horseback, and another on O 5 representing Charlemagne on his throne, and surrounded by his douzeperes. The preface begins on A ij, the index on A ij b, and the text on A vj. The colophon runs: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgeois de la dicte cite. Lan mil cccc. lxxxij. et Le xij iour de moys de Mais. Deo gracias. Amen." The woodcuts are in many cases most comical: perhaps the most ludicrous are those which are intended to represent Floripas killing Britamont, and Richard swimming the torrent of Flagot. In one in which the sacred relics are shown, only three nails appear, and in two others the Saracens are represented as bombarding the tower of Aigremont with cannons.

In a few instances the same cut is employed to represent two incidents of a similar character. Thus that representing Oliver before Balan is also used for Guy before the Sultan.

In his translation, Caxton has followed his original so closely and even slavishly, that at times it is difficult, if not impossible, to understand his meaning without a reference to the language of the original. Frequently he has used the very words of the French author, and still more frequently he has merely given them an English dress. Caxton probably is responsible for the introduction of more French words into our language than any other writer.

In his epilogue Caxton tells us that he undertook the rendering into English of this *Lyf of Charles the Grete* at the instigation of "a good and synguler frend, Maister wylliam daubeny, one of the tresirers of the Iewellys of the noble and moost crysten kyng, our naturel and sonerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth." I have endeavoured to identify this Sir William Daubeny,

<sup>1</sup> See *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. p. vii.

and to ascertain the nature of the duties pertaining to his office as keeper of the jewels. As to the latter—

The copy of the *Liber Niger Domus Regis Anglie*, believed to be that of Edward IV. in the Harleian MS 642, has the following section on leaf 49, &c. on the Keeper of the Jewels, his clerk, yoman, groom, chariot, &c.

### Office of Jewellhouse

hath an Architector callid Clarke of the Kinges or keeper of Joyalx, or Theasaurer of the Chambre: this officer taketh bui Indenture betwixt him and the Kinge, all that he findes in his office of gold, siluer, pretious stones, and the markes of euery thinge. Alsoe he receaueth the yearly guiftes by Record of the Chamberlaine. Item he receaueth by Indenture of the Thesaurer of England, And by ouersight of the Chamberlaine sitting in the Kingis Chambre or in the hall with a *person* of like seruice, And for his Chambre at night dimidium cheate loafe, one quart wyne, one gallon of ale; And for winter Linerey, one perche de wax, one candle wax, two candels *paris*, one dimidium tallwood, and *present* in Court vij<sup>d</sup>. ob. [*leaf 49 back*]. In Checkerrolle and cloathing with howsold for winter and sommer, or of the Countinghouse xl<sup>s</sup>.: his Linerey is as Knightes, and if he be sieke, he taketh in eating daies like the Squires for the bodie when they bin lett blood or sieke, &c. Also in this oflise is a clarke vnder him in the hall eatinge, taking for his liuerey at night, dimidium gallon ale, one candle *paris*, dimidium tallwood, slide and cloathing by the Countinghouse, or yerely twentie shillinges. And if he be sike, he taketh for all day one loafe of bread, one messe of gret meate, dimidium gallon ale. And for this office a yoman eating in the hall with yomen of Chambre, taking for his wages in the Countinghouse, if he be *present*, allowed by the Checkerrolle, threepence: And cloathing with the housold winter and summer for chanches and all other part, or eightene shillinges, besides his reward of the Jewellhouse for sure and diligent keeping of the Kinges Joalxe yerely &c. And if he be sieke, he taketh such Linerey as doth the Clerke. Also in this office a groome eating dayly in the office, taking for his liuerey one loafe, one messe of grete meate, dimidium gallon ale: And he setteth in the Lineries [*leaf 50*]. For this office in season, one candle wax, two candels *paris*, one tallwood dimidium. And Rushes and litter for this office all the yeare of the Sergeant Vsher of hall and Chambre. Also this groome fetting nightly for this office one gallon of ale: he helpeth to trusse and beare to the Charriott, and awaiteth therevpon the safeguard; and the yoman also to attend vpon this carriage. And this office hath also lodginge in the Countrie towne for all these horses and seruantes



suffisauntly by the herbergier. And the chiefe of this office to haue into this Court two waiters, and the Clerke one honest seruant. The remenant goo to theire lodgeing in the Countrey. And the yoman and groome haue one seruant. And for this office is assigned a Charriott with seauen horses and all there apparell, horse-meate, shoocing, and the yomen and groomis wagis therfore, foundyn of the charge of Thesaurer of housold to carrie the stuff of the Kinges in this office, and none other mans, by the ouersight of the Controller, betwixt the Thesaurer of housold, and this officer, be many interchaunges of siluer vessell, hoole and brooke, receaned or deliuered by officers by Indentures &c. As it will appeare in [leaf 50, back] The Accompt of housold. And as for other thinges touching this office, behold in the title *De Oblationibus*<sup>1</sup> *Regis* capitulid before. all thinges of this office inward or outward, cometh and goeth by the knowledge of the Kinge, and by the Chamberlaines Record. Also if any Knight or Squire presume to weare the Kinges linerey, but if he come ther by authoritie, or ellys by record in this office./

The maister  
two seruants,  
the Clerke  
one seruant.

A Charriot  
with seauen  
horses.

Thanks to the kindness of Mr. Selby of H.M. Record Office and Mr. Furnivall, I have been enabled to identify Sir W. Daubeney, and to give some interesting particulars relating to him. We first meet with his name in 1480-1, when he was appointed Searcher in the Port of London.<sup>2</sup> The substance of the Patent Roll is as follows :

<sup>1</sup> Vide de hoc antea: folio. 15. b. [On Gifts by the King in charity, &c.]

<sup>2</sup> The following note is derived from a bundle of Searchers' Accounts for the period:—

[*Ancient Miscellanea*. (Exch. Q. R.) Searchers' Accounts. Bundle 692. J. P. R. 2110.]

1—6 } London.—Account by John Lyn who was appointed by  
Hen. VII } letters patent dated 22 Sept. 1 Hen. VII. Searcher in the  
port of London, to wit, from 22 Sept. / to Mich. 6 Hen.  
VII., William Dawbency late Searcher. / membrane.

This Account extending over five years and 8 days gives the sum received as *nil*.

This record states the duties to be—"ad explorandum per se in propria persona sua, et non per substitutum, omnes naves et batellas extra regnum Anglie transeuntes, et ad idem regnum venientes in portibus et locis predictis [*i. e.* in portu Civitatis Londonie], et ad scrutinium faciendum de omnibus navibus et batellis hujusmodi, et de personis de quibus sinistra suspicio haberi poterit, quod lane, pelles lanute, coria, panni, aut mercimonia custumabilia non cokettata nec custumata in eisdem navibus, aut aurum vel argentum in pecunia numerata, aut masa vel plata seu focalia careata seu posita fuerunt; vel si aliquae persone bullas litteras instrumenta vel processus vel aliqua alia Regi vel suditis Regis prejudicialia infra vel extra regnum Regis predictum, detuleri contra proclamaciones et inhibuciones ex parte Regis inde factas, Habendum et occupandum officium predictum quamdiu Regi placuerit, una cum medietate forisfacture predictae."

9 Novr, 20 Edw. IV, 1480. Memb. 21. Appointment of Wm. Daubeney as Searcher in the Port of London & other places adjoining the same, with the usual fees & emoluments, & also the half of all forfeit, was seized to the King's use. His substitute or substitutes may act for him.

About the same time in a "Roll of Accounts, Michaelmas, 20 Edw. IV," there is an entry that John Barker of London, Goldsmith, had received 100*l* from *William Daubeney* in part payment of 80 butts of malmsey purchased by him for the use of the King's army.<sup>1</sup>

In 1483-4 he was re-appointed to the office of Searcher of the Port to Richard III. In the Patent Roll his previous appointment to the same office under Edward V. is referred to, and he is further described as Clerk of the Jewels. In the Calr. of the Patent Rolls, Ric. III. Appx. to 9th Report of Deputy Keeper of Records, p. 34, the following particulars relating to Sir W. Daubeney are given :

1 Ric. III., p. 2, 1483-4. Membrane 20 (4) 16 Dec. Appointment of *William Daubeney*, clerk of the jewels, as searcher in the port of London, with a grant of half of all the forfeitures, in as full a manner as William Merston, esq. enjoyed the same : which office the said *William Daubeney* fills by virtue of a patent of Edward V. the bastard [entry 39], *ib.* p. 39, Membrane 7 (19).

11 Mar. Release to *William Daubeney* (or Dabeney), searcher in the port of London, of all arrears of accounts, &c. to 6 March last [entry 133].

*ib.* p. 42, Membrane 2 (24).

8 April. Appointment of John Wode, knt, Treasurer of England, Robert Brakenbury, Constable of the Tower of London, Master William Lacy, Master *William Daubeney*, and Master *Robert Ryglon*, as Commissaries General in the office of the Admiralty in England. . .

*ib.* p. 67, Memb. 17 (9). 1 Ric. III, p. 4, 1483-4.

24 April. Grant to William Dawbeney, clerk of the jewels to Edward IV., of an annuity of 10*l*. out of a farm in Watford (Northampton), (2) by the hands of Eustace of Burneby and Matill his wife, to hold the same until the gift, for life, of an office of 20*l* yearly value ; further grant in survivorship to the

<sup>1</sup> Exchequer Issue Roll, Hen. III. to Edw. VI. ed. F. Devon, Appendix, p. 500

said *William Daubeney* and Joan his wife of an annuity of 20 marks, the former patents of 22 June, 21 Edw. IV. (p. 2, m. 12), and 1 May,<sup>1</sup> 21 Edw. IV. (p. 1, m. 6), granting to them the said annuities, having been surrendered.

An order under the Privy Seal of Henry VII. in 1485 to the Treasurer and Chamberlaine of his Exchequer orders them to allow to his "beloved cousin John, earl of Oxenford," the sums of 100 marks and 100£ out of his purchase-money of 800 marks for the manors of the late Wm. Alyngton during his son's minority, and the marriage of this son: This, because the Earl had paid 100 marks to Rich. Gardlyner, alderman of London, "for so moche money by the said Richard Gardlyner late lent unto Richard, duc of Gloucester, late, in dede and not of righte, kind of England, upon pledge of a salt of gold with a cover. . . the which salt . . . was delivered unto the said Richard Gardlynere by one, *William Daubeney, knight, keeper of the juels with the foresaid pretended king* . . . and also the summe of c. li. parcell of xxiiij<sup>s</sup>. li by the said late pretended king borrowed of the maire and aldermen of our said cite of London . . . and for suertie and contentaciom of the said xxiiij<sup>s</sup>. li. the said late pretended king laide in plege to the said maire and aldermen a coronalle gold garnished with many other grete and riche juels, as by a bille indented betwix the said maire and aldremen, on that one partie, and the foresaid William Daubeney, then keper of juels of the said pretended king on that othre partie thero made, more plainly doth appere."<sup>2</sup>

In Sept. 1484 we find the following orders: "Parcelles of clothing [&c.] to be delivered by the said bishop to the said erle [of Desmond]. . . . Item, a nother lettre direct to Mr. *William Daubeney*, clerk of the kinges juelles, to delivere unto the said bisshop for the said erle of Dissemond, a coler of gold of xx<sup>ti</sup> oz., xxx<sup>ti</sup> li.—Letters and Papers t. Rich. III. & Hen. VI, ed. Gairdner, Rolls Series, 1861, p. 713.

There is no William Daubeney's will of Caxton's time at the Probate Office, but the following items culled from various sources appear to refer to Caxton's friend, and his family:

Dame Joan Dawbeny, wife of Sir Wm. Dawbeny, was buried at the Augustine Friars Church, Broadstreet Ward, London, [no date given].<sup>3</sup> John, son and heir of Sir Giles Dawbeny, is buried in the same church.

<sup>1</sup> 1 March: in the patent roll of 21 Edw. IV.

<sup>2</sup> *Memorials Illustrative of the Reign of Henry VII.*, p. 214. (Rolls Series.)

<sup>3</sup> Stowe's *Survey of London*, 1633, p. 186, col. 2.

Sir Wm. Stanley, William Dawbeney late of London, gentleman, & others were attainted of treason for rebelling against Henry VII. Act of Attainder in the *Rolls of Parliament*, vol. 6, p. 503.

Mr. Walter Rye says that this may be the same man as Sir William, because, in an official document like the above, the title of Knight conferred by the usurper, Rich. III, would probably not be acknowledged. (But compare the order under the Privy Seal in 1485, on the preceding page.)

Mr. Rye also thinks our Wm. D. was connected with the Norfolk Dawbeney. In Blomfield's *Norfolk*, Wm. Dawbeney, of North Burlingham, after 1428 bought a property which his grandson Thomas sold in 1528.

The Series of English Charlemagne Romances will be completed by the issue next year of the romances of *Roland and Vernagu* and *Sir Otuel*, from the Auchinleck MS., and the curious poem of *Rauf Coilyear* from the unique printed copy.

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE.

*Mill Hill, N.W., October 1881.*

# The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prince, Charles the Grete.

---

## [CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]

<sup>1</sup> **S**Aynt Poul, doctour of veryte, sayth to vs that al  
thynges that ben reduced by wrytyng ben wryton  
to our doctryne, And Boece maketh mencion that the  
4 helthe of euery persone procedeth dyuerceley. Thenne  
sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and  
corrobered by the doctours of holy chyrche, Neuertheles  
the thynges passed dynersley reduced to remembrance  
8 engendre in vs correction of vnlaful lyf. For the  
werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyue  
to vs ensaunple to lyue in good & vertuous operacions  
digne & worthy of helth, in folowyng the good and  
12 eschewyng the euyl. And also in recountyng of hie  
hystories the comune vnderstandyng is better content  
to the ymaginacion local than to synple auctoryte to  
which it is submysed. I saye this gladly, For oftymes  
16 I haue been excyted of the venerable man messire henry  
bolomyer, chanoine of lausanne, for to reduce for his  
playsyr somme hystories as wel in latyn & in romaunce  
as in other facion wryton, that is to say of the ryght  
20 puyssaunt, vertuous, and noble charles the grete, kyng  
of fraunce and emperour of Rome, Sone of the grete  
Pepyn: And of his prynees & barons, As Rolland,  
Olyuer, and other, touchyng<sup>2</sup> somme werkes haultayne  
24 doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght  
ardaunt courage, to the exaltacyon of the crysten fayth

Since, as St Paul  
says, "all scrip-  
tures are written  
for our learning,"

and the lives of  
the ancients give  
us an example  
how to live,

I have, at the per-  
suation of the  
venerable Canon  
Henry Bolomyer,

translated this  
history of  
Charlemagne and  
his douzeperes

<sup>1</sup> sign. A ij.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and mys-  
creaunts, whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf for to lyue  
wel. And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen  
of thys mater and the hystoryes dysioyned wythoute  
4 ordre, therfore at his request, after the capacyte of my  
lytel entendement, And after thystoryes and mater that  
I haue founden, I haue ordeyned this book folowyng.  
And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more 8  
largely enformed and al playn I had better made it, For  
I haue not sayd ony matere, but I haue therof ben  
enformed, Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrrour  
from the *Speculum Historiale*,  
hystorial, as by the canones and somme other bookes 12  
whiche make mencyon of the werke folowyng. And  
by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honoumable founde-  
ment I shal touche of the first cristen kyng of fraunce.  
For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of 16  
the frenssh men and for prouffyte of euery man, and  
after the desyre of the redar and herer there shalle be  
founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche  
the persone shal haue desyre to here or rede wythoute 20  
grete at[n]daeyon, by <sup>1</sup>the playsyr of god, to whome I  
submytte al myn entente to write no thyng that ought  
to be blamed ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion  
of euery persone. 24

As I haue before  
printed the Lives  
of Arthur, and of

Godfrey of  
Boulogne,

I now print this  
that all may be  
able to read it in  
our mother-  
tongue.

**T**henne for as moche I late had fynysshed in en-  
prynte the book of the noble & vycetoryous kyng  
Arthur, fyrst of the thre moost noble & worthy of crysten  
kynges, and also tofore had reduced into englysshe the 28  
noble hystorye & lyf of Godefroy of boloyne kyng of  
Iherusalem, last of the said iij worthy. Somme persones  
of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce  
thystorye and lyf of the noble and crysten prynee 32  
Charles the grete, kyng of fraunce<sup>2</sup> & emperour of Rome,  
the second of the thre worthy, to thende that thystoryes,  
actes, & lyues may be had in our maternal tongue, lyke  
as they be in latyn or in frenssh. For the moost

<sup>1</sup> A ij. back.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. fraunce.

- quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frenssh  
 here in this noble royaume of england. And for to  
 satisfye the desyre & requeste of my goodl synguler  
 4 lordes & special maysters and frendes I haue enprysed  
 and concluded in my self to reduce this sayd book in to  
 our englysshe, as all alonge and playnely ye may rede,  
 here, and see in thys book <sup>1</sup>here folowyng, besechyng  
 8 al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcte and  
 amende it, And also to pardone me of the rude & symple  
 reducyng, and though so be there be no gaye termes,  
 ne subtil ne newe eloquence, yet I hope that it shal be  
 12 vnderstonden, & to that entente I haue speccially  
 reduced it after the symple connyng that god hath lente  
 to me, wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke  
 hym, & also am bounden to praye for my fader and  
 16 moders soules that in my youthe sette me to scole, by  
 whyche, by the suffraunce of god, I gete my lyuyng  
 hope truly. And that I may so do & contynue I hyseehe  
 hym to graunte me of his grace, and so to laboure and  
 20 occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette  
 & dedely synne, that after this lyf I may come to hys  
 blysse in heuen. AMEN.
- ¶ <sup>2</sup>Here begynnen the chapytres & tytles of this  
 book folowyng nombred for to fynde the more lightly  
 the mater therin comprised.
- ¶ Here begynneth the first book whyche conteyneth  
 28 thre parties by the chapytres folowyng declared.
- ¶ The fyrst partye of the fyrst book conteyneth v  
 chapytres & speketh of the begynnyng of fraunce and  
 of kyng Cloys.
- 32 Of the kynges of fraunce payuymys vnto kyng cloys  
 the first crysten kyng : capitulo primo  
 How kyng cloys beyng a paynym hack to wyf  
 clotildis doughter of the kyng of bourgoyne & meruayl-  
 lously : capitulo ij

And I ask all my  
readers to pardon  
any imperfections  
in the work,

which I have done  
after my simple  
learning,

for which I bless  
my f ther and  
mother, who sent  
me to school.

The contents of  
this book.

of book I.

Pr I contains v  
chapters.

Of the first kings  
of France.

of King Cloys.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> A iij.

4 THE CONTENTS OF THE FIRST BOOK. PT. I, CH. II—PT III, CH. I.

Of the conversion of Cloys by his wife,	How the kyng was admonested of the quene clotildis affectuously that he shold byleue in the cristen fayth & other maters : ca. <span style="float:right">iiij</span>
	How kyng Clois was vyctorious on his enemies by- 4 cause he byleued in Ihesu Cryst : ca. <span style="float:right">iiij</span>
and of his baptism.	How the kyng was baptysed by saynt remyge, & in his baptesme was brought by myracle the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wyth whyche all kynges of 8 france ben enoynted at Raynes : capitulo. <span style="float:right">v.</span>
Pt II contains v chapters.	¶ The second partye of the book conteyneth v chapytres & speketh fyrst of kyng <sup>e</sup> pepyn & of Charle- mayn hys sone. <span style="float:right">12</span>
Of King Pepin.	How Pepyn by hys prudence <sup>1</sup> was chosen kyng of frau[n]ce whan the lygne of Cloys faylled in succession : capitulo <span style="float:right">primo</span>
How Charles was made Emperor of Rome.	Of kyng Charles whyche made many constytucyous 16 wyth the pope Adryan and how he was made emperour of Rome : ca. <span style="float:right">ij</span>
Of his figure,	Of the corpulence of kyng charles and of the manere of his lyuyng : capitulo <span style="float:right">iiij 20</span>
children,	To whome the kyng <sup>e</sup> Charles & his chyldren sones & daughters were dedyed : capitulo <span style="float:right">iiij</span>
and pursuits.	Of the studye of kyng Charles, & hys lyuyng <sup>e</sup> and charytable werkes, and other maters : ca. <span style="float:right">v 24</span>
Pt III contains in chapters.	¶ The thyrde partye of the fyrst book conteyneth iiij chapytres, & telleth how by denyne reuelacyon Charles delyuered the holy londe from the hondes of the hethen and myscreauntes, and conteyneth thre chapytres. <span style="float:right">28</span>
How Charles helped the Patriarch of Jerusalem,	How the patryareke of Iherusalem sente to charles that he shold gyue to hym socours after that he was caste oute by the turkes : capitulo <span style="float:right">primo</span>
	How Charles with a grete companye went for to 32 conquere the holy londe & other maters : ca. <span style="float:right">ij</span>
and brought home the holy relies.	Of the relyques whyche thempemour Charles brought fro constantynoble & fro the holy londe, & of myrales there doon : [ca.] <span style="float:right">iiij</span>



¶ Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth thre parties by chapytres ensyewyng declared. Book II contain-  
ing iii parts.

¶ The first partye of the second <sup>1</sup>book conteyneth 4 xvj chapytres and speketh of the bataylle bytwene Olyuer and Fyerabras, a meruayllous gyaunt. Pt I contains xvj  
chapters.

¶ How in a place named Mormyonde Charles ensyewed his warre ayenst the paynims, after a lytel of 8 the prologe : ca. primo

Of fyerabras how he came to exereyte charles : Of Fierabras  
[Ferumbras].  
capitulo ij

How Rycharde of Normondye sayd to themperour 12 what maner man was Fyerabras : capitulo iij

The answer of Rolland to themperour ouer sodeynly : Dispute between  
ca. iiij

How kyng charles & Rolland ben reprysed by 16 thauctour & excused somewhat vpon the debate afor-  
sayd : capitulo v Charles and Ro-  
land.

How Olyuer was dysposed to fight ayenst fyerabras How Oliver,  
against the wish  
of his father,  
undertook to fight  
with Fierabras.  
notwythstondyng that he was hurt : [ca.] vj  
20 How Olyuer was requyred by hys fader that he  
shold not fygt with the geaunt, but for al that he went  
forth : capitulo vij

How Olyuer spake fyrst to fyerabras, whych set no 24 thyng by hym, with other desputacions. viiij

How after many dysputacions olyuer ayded fyerabras to arme hym, and of the ix meruayllus swerdes, & how Olyuer named hym self by his propre name : [ca.] ix

28 How Olyuer & fyerabras began to fyght, and of the  
prayer of Charles for Olyuer, and other maters : capitulo x Of the fight,

How Olyuer made hys prayer <sup>2</sup>to god whan he felte hym hurte : Capitulo xj

32 How after a grete bataylle Olyuer gate the bame &  
dranke at his ease, & how he dyd whan his hors was  
slayn : capitulo xij and of the bottles  
of holy balm.

How fyerabras & olyuer fougt togyder on fote mer-

<sup>1</sup> A iij, bk.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

	uaylously, & the prayer that charles maad for Olyuer : capitulo	xiiij
How Oliver over- came Fierabras,	How at this bataylle fyerabras was vaynquysshed by Olyuer after that he had recouerd one of the swerdes of Fyerabras. [ca.]	4 xiiiij
	How Fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed byleued in god, and how he was borne by Olyuer, & how Olyuer was assayled of the sarasyns & tormented : ca.	xv 8
but was himself taken by the Saracens.	How Olyuer was taken & hys eyen blynfeld pye- tously, which coude not be socoured by the frensshe men : capitulo	xvj
PT II contains xvij chapters.	¶ The second partye of the ij book conteyneth xvij 12 chapytres, & speketh of the torment of the barons of fraunce & how they that were not taken went for to speke to ballant thadmyral.	
	¶ How fyerabras was founde by Charles and after 16 baptysed & heled of his woundes : ca.	j
How Oliver was thrown into prison,	How Olyuer and hys felowes were presented to ballant thadmyral and cruelly passyoned by pryson : capitulo ij	
	Of the pryson where the frensshe men were lodged 20 and how they were vysyted by fayr Florypes, <sup>1</sup> doughter of thadmyral, & of the beaulte of hyr : capitulo <sup>2</sup>	iiij
and after released by Floripas.	How the frensshe men were had oute of pryson and vysyted by the fayr floripes, & of the beaute of hyr 24 chambre : capitulo	iiij
Of the messengers sent by Charles and Balan.	How kyng charles sent to ballant thadmyral vij peres of fraunce, whyche wold not gladly haue goon thyder : capitulo	v 28
	How thadmyral sent xv kynges sarasyns to charles to haue ageyn Fyerabras, the whyche were recounted by the peres of fraunce & put to deth : ca.	vj
Of the Bridge of Mantribe.	Of the mernayllous brydge of mantryble, of the 32 tribute that must be there payed for the passage, & how with fayr wordes the frensshe men passed ouer. [ca.] vij	
	How the barons cam & spake to thadmyral, and what message they made to hym : capitulo	viiij

<sup>1</sup> A iiiij.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* capitulo.

- How by the moyen of Floripes al the frensshemen were saued & lodged to-gyder & knowen by her, & resouned & of the reliques shewed to them, & other  
 4 maters : capitulo ix  
 How lucafer, neuwe of thadmyral, vyolently entred in to the chambre & after was slayne by due naymes in blowyng<sup>t</sup> of the cole : capitulo x  
 8 How by the counceyl of floripes the frenssh men dyslodged thadmyral fro his paleys strongely by grete bataylle, & how by enchauntement a gyrdel was taken<sup>1</sup> fro his doughter : capitulo xj  
 12 How the barons were assyege<sup>d</sup> in that toure with floripes and her maydens whiche suffred grete hungre, & how the goddes were by them confounded : ca. xij  
 How the peres of fraunce came oute of the toure, &  
 16 what grete batayll they made in which they mette & recountred xx sommyers with vytaylle : capitulo xiiij  
 How guy of burgoyne was taken with the sarasyns, beten vylaynously & examyned of ballant thadmyral,  
 20 & the complayntes that floripes made for hym, & other maters : capitulo xiiij  
 How the paynems had purposed to haue hanged guy of burgoyne, seyng<sup>t</sup> the crysten men, whyche socoured  
 24 hym puyssantly. [ca.] xv  
 How the peres of fraunce tofore sayd were purueyed of vytayl, & after restored, & after assyege<sup>d</sup>, & fouzt with the paynems xvj  
 28 How the toure was brente & a quarter fyl down by enchauntement, & how the frensshe men were in grete peryl of deth & restored by assault that they made vpon the paynems : capitulo xvij  
 32 Here begymeth the thyr<sup>t</sup> parte of the second book the which conteyneth xvj chapytres & speketh how the barons of fraunce<sup>2</sup> made to them socours, and the paynems confused & destroyed.

How Floripas saved the French knights.

Of the death of Lucifer,

and the capture of the castle of Aigremont,

which was besieged by Balan.

Of the capture of Guy,

and his rescue.

Of the burning of the tower by Balan.

Pt III contains xvj chapters.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* fraunce.

- How the French determined to send Richard to Charles for help, and shewe <sup>1</sup>theyr affayres vnto kyng Charles, & how rycharð of Normondye was ordeyned for to goo to hym: capitulo primo
- Of the death of Clarion, How after that Rycharð was departed the kyng<sup>4</sup> claryon, the ryght puyssaunt kyng, rode after hym, the whiche was slayn by the sayd rycharð valyauntly, & other maters: capitulo ij
- How the hors of rycharð cam & retorneð through the exersyte of thadmyral & was seyn & knowen of the peres of fraunce, in so moche that they supposed he had ben deed, & how the brydge of mantryble was kept: ca. ij 12
- How Richard passed the river Flagot, How rycharð of Normandye passed the ryuer of flagot by myracle by the meane of a whyte herte: capitulo iiij
- How Charles was in purpos for to haue retorneð wythoute goyng ony ferther, by the counceyl of the traytre ganellon & other his felowes: ca. v 16
- and reached Charles, How after the complaynte of Charles rycharð of normandye came to hym, which recounted the grete necessytes of the peres of fraunce & in what fere they were in: capitulo vj 20
- How the French army passed the bridge of Mantryble, How by the moyen & counceyl of rycharð of Normandye with iiij other barons the stronge brydge of mantryble was wome, not wythoute payne, & what manere man was galafre: ca. vij 24
- Of Amyot the geantesse, How by force of mortalyte & of batayll Charles entred into mantryble after that Galafre was deed, not-withstandyng that alorge the traytre was contrarie to hym, & many other maters. [ca.] viij 28
- How amyot the geantesse wyth an huge grete sythe dyd gretely hyr deuoyr ayenst the cristen men, & how hyr ij sones were baptysed, & of ballant thadmyral whan he knewe the tydynes: ca. ix 32
- How the peres of fraunce were assayed more

<sup>1</sup> A iiij, bk.<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

- strongely than euer they were, and how the toure was  
quasi smyten down to the erthe & after recomforted by  
the holy relyques by them adoured, and other maters :
- 4 capitulo x
- How the frenssh men in the toure had tydynges of  
the hoost of Charles & thadmyral also, and how Ganel-  
lon bare hym meruayllously whan he was sent forth  
8 allone & what he dyd : [ca.] xj
- How charles themperour ordeyned x bataylles, &  
how they recountred the bataylles of puyssaunce of  
Ballant thadmyral, where as themperour dyd meruaylles,  
12 & other maters : ca. xij
- How in this bataylle folowyng Sortybrant the kyng  
was slayn by Reyner fader of Olyuer, and how after-  
ward thadmyral dyd meruaylles and grete ennoye to the  
16 frensshe men : capitulo xij
- How the peres of fraunce that were in the toure cam  
oute whan they sawe thoost of Charles, & how thad-  
myral was taken and holden prysoner : ca. xiiij
- 20 ¶ How ballant thadmyral for all the admonyeion that  
was made to hym he wold not be baptysed but was  
slayn, & Floripes hys doughter was baptysed & after  
wedded to guy of burgoyne, & guy crowned kyng &  
24 she quene of that contre : capitulo xv
- How Florypes gaf the reliques to themperour, & how  
they were assayed & proued by myracle, & of the  
retournyng of charles & the ende of this book : ca. xvj
- 28 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth  
ij parties by the chapytres folowyng declared.
- ¶ The first partye of the iij book conteyneth xiiij  
chapytres & speketh of the warres in spayne & of two  
32 grete geantes.
- How saynt Iames appyered to Charles, & how by  
the moyen & by the conduyte of the sterres he went in  
to Galice, & what citees he there subdued : ca. primo

Of the fortunes  
of the knights  
besieged by  
Balan,

and how they saw  
Charles coming  
to their aid.

How Reyner slew  
Sortibrant.

Of the capture of  
Balan,

and his death,  
and of the baptism  
and marriage of  
Floripas.

Book III contains  
ij parts.

Pt I contains xij  
chapters.

How at the bid-  
ding of St James  
Charles invaded  
Spain,

Of cytees gotten in spayne by Charles, & how somme  
of theym were by hym cursed: capitulo ij

Of a grete ydolle whyche was in a cyte that myght  
not be beten down, and of the sygnes & condycyons 4  
therof: capitulo iij

and of the church  
which he built to  
the saint.

Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in Galyce, & of other  
chyrcches that he dyd there do founde: [ca.] iiij

How after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken 8  
spayne & destroyed and put to deth the crysten men  
Charles recouerd it, & other maters: capitulo v

How Aigoland  
challenged  
Charles,

<sup>1</sup> How aygolant sent to Charles that he shold feably  
come to hym with lytel peple to make Iuste warre, & 12  
how Charles in halyte dissmyled spake to hym, &  
other maters: capitulo vj

How charles accompanied with moche peple retourned  
to the place forsaid & took the cite of ageune, & other 16  
maters: capitulo vij

Of the vertuous operacions that charles dyd whan  
he was retourned in to fraunce, & what barons he had in  
his compaignie, and of theyr puyssaunce: capitulo viij 20

by whom he was  
vanquished.

Of the tryewes of charles & of aygolant & of the  
deth of his peple, & wherfore aygolant was not bap-  
tysed: ca. ix ¶ Of the deth of aygolant & of his peple,  
& how moche people of the cristen men were dede by 24  
concupyscence of money, & the crysten founden dede  
by myracle: ca. x ¶ Of ferragus the meruayllous geant,  
how he bare away the barons of fraunce with out  
daunger, & how afterward rolland fouzt ayenst hym: 28  
ca. xj

Of Ferragus the  
giant,

and his duel with  
Roland.

How on the morne rolland and ferragus foughten  
to-gyder, and of their desputyng of their fayth, and by  
what meane Ferragus was slayn by rolland: ca. xij 32

How Charles went to cordube where as the kyng of  
that place & of cibylle abode hym, & of their destruc-  
tyon: ca. xiiij

- How the chirche of saint James was halowed & sacred by turpin tharchebisshop, & thother chirches <sup>1</sup>of spayne subgettes to the same, & of y<sup>e</sup> pryncypal  
 4 chyrches : [ca.] xiiij  
 ¶ The second<sup>e</sup> partye of the iij book conteyneth x chapytres & speketh of the trayson doon and made by Ganellon & of the deth of the peres of fraunce.  
 8 How the trayson was comprysed<sup>e</sup> by Ganellon of the deth of the crysten men, & how ganellon is repreue<sup>d</sup> by thauctour : ca. j  
 Of the deth of kyng marsuryus, and<sup>e</sup> how Rolland<sup>e</sup>  
 12 was hurte wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slayn and<sup>e</sup> deede<sup>d</sup> : capitulo ij  
 How Rolland<sup>e</sup> deyed<sup>e</sup> moche holyly after many maters & orysones made, and<sup>e</sup> praye<sup>d</sup> to god<sup>e</sup> moche deuoutely,  
 16 and of the complaynte made vpon hys swerde durandal : capitulo iij  
 Of the vysion of the deth of rolland<sup>e</sup> shewe<sup>d</sup> to tharchebysshop Turpyne, & of the sorowe of charles, &  
 20 how he complayned hym pyteously, & other maters. iiij  
 How olyuer was fownden slayn, and<sup>e</sup> of the deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of ganellon whyche was hydous : capitulo v  
 24 How after the thynges aforesayd<sup>e</sup> Charles gaf thankynges and<sup>e</sup> preysynges to god<sup>e</sup> and<sup>e</sup> to Saynt Denys : And<sup>e</sup> of the constitucions that he made in fraunce : capitulo vj  
 28 How Charles wente into Almayn where as he deyed<sup>e</sup> holyly, <sup>2</sup>and<sup>e</sup> of his deth shewe<sup>d</sup> to tharchebysshop Turpyne, and<sup>e</sup> of his buryeng<sup>e</sup> Imperyally : ca. vij  
 Of the recapitulacion of al this werke, and<sup>e</sup> of hys  
 32 deth at acon, & of his sepulture : capitulo viij  
 Thexcusacyon of thauctour. [ca.] ix  
 Thenuoye of thauctour : ca. x

¶ Explicit

<sup>1</sup> A v, bk.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

Of the church  
built by Charles  
to St James.

Pt II contains x  
chapters.

Of the treason of  
Ganellon.

Of the death of  
Roland.

and how Turpin  
saw it in a vision.

Of the deaths  
of Oliver and  
Ganellon.

Of the death and  
burial of Charles.

[Of the kynges of fraunce paynymys vnto kyng'  
cloys the first cristen kyng: capitulo  
primo]

Of the colonisa-  
tion of France  
by Francoys, a

companion of  
Æneas,

and of the kings  
of France after  
him.

<sup>1</sup> **A**S it is redde in thystories of the troians 4  
After the destructyon of the noble cyte of  
Troye there was a kyng moche noble named  
francoys, the whyche was felowe of Eneas, which,  
whan he departed fro Troye came in to the regyon of 8  
fraunce & began to regne in grete prosperyte: & for  
the felycyte of his name he dyd compose & do edfyfe a  
cyte whiche he named fraunce, & so folowyng all the  
regyon was called fraunce: & after, whan fraunce was 12  
enhanced & reduced to mageste ryal Priamus was the  
fyrst that regned vpon the frensshe men v yere. The  
second was marcurius xxxiij yere; The iij pharamundus  
regned xj yere; The iiij clodyus xiiij yere; The v 16  
Meroneus x yere; The vj hildericus xxvij. yere, & the  
vij was Clodoneus, the fyrst crysten kyng whyche  
regned vpon the frensshe men after thyncarnation of  
our lord cccclxxxiiij yere, of whome I entende to make 20  
a litel meneyon vpon hys meneyllous conuersaeyon.

¶ How the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to  
wyf the noble daughter of the kynge of  
burgoyne: capitulo ij 24

Of Guidengus,  
King of Bur-  
gundy, and his  
four sons.

**I**N that tyme was kyng of the burgoyngs guy-  
dengus, the whiche had iiij sones al of good  
aage, that is to wete, Agabondus, the ij <sup>2</sup>godo-  
gesylus, the iij. Hyspericus, & the fourth Godamarus. 28  
The fyrst agabondus replenysshed of al inyquyte  
put to deth by swerd his broder hispericus and after

<sup>1</sup> A vj.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.



- henge his wyf, & put a stone aboute hyr necke & drowned hyr. This hispericus had two fayre daughters, the eldest was named throne whom agabondus her vncle
- 4 bannysshed fro hys contrey & sent hir forth in habyte dyssmyled. The yonger of these ij doughters was named clotildis, whom he reteyned for hir beaute wyth hym in his hous. duryng thys the kyng clodoneus, or
- 8 Cloys in frenshe, beyng a paynym whyche byleued with his subgettes but vpon ydolles, oftymes for hys affayres sent his messagers in to burgoyne. clotildys this fayr mayde was ofte seen of the messagers of the kyng
- 12 Cloys & by-holden affectuously. and for hir grete beaulte & dyscrecyon the sayd messagers notyfied it to the kyng cloys, and whan thys kyng Cloys was ynough informed of the grete beaute & wysdom of this mayde,
- 16 whyche was crysten, he was moche enuyous to sende his herawdes vnto agabondus vncle of thys doughter for to haue hyr to maryage. Duryng those dayes the kyng Cloys had a subtyl man wyth hym named
- 20 aurelyanus, which by comaundement of hys lord wente to the place where as was thys mayde & put hym self in habyte moche poure and dyssmyled, & left his good habytes with his felowes in a wode & went moche
- 24 holyly tofore the moder chyrche of that place the day of a grete feste, & set hym self in the myddes of the poure peple for to receyue almesse lyke as other dyden. whan thoffyce was accomplyshed this mayde Clotildis,
- 28 like as she was accustomed, atte departyng fro the chyrche began to gyue almesse to the poure peple, & whan she came to Aurelian she gaf to hym in his honde a pyece of golde, & anone he as gladd & wel
- 32 contente kyssed hyr honde. whan this lady was in hyr chambre she began to thynke on that poure man that had kyssed hyr honde & sent for to seehe hym by hyr seruauunt. whan he wist it he cam to hir moche

Of Clotildis, daughter of Hyspericus, and of her great beauty.

Cloys sends Aurelian in disguise to see Clotildis.

He presents himself before her to receive alms.

She sends for him,

<sup>1</sup> A vj, back.

and asks him  
who he is,  
and his object in  
coming.

Aurelian tells her,  
and presents the  
ring of Cloys.

Clotildis says she  
cannot marry a  
pagan.

Next year Cloys  
demands Clotildis  
to wife from Aga-  
bondus,

who at first re-  
fuses, but after-  
wards consents.

Cloys and Clo-  
tildis are married.

Joyously and bare in his honde the rynge of kyng cloys  
& humbly behaued hym tofore hyr. ¶ The mayde  
began to say to hym; “saye to me wherfore dyssymyl-  
est thou thy self lyke to the poure people.” Aurelyanns 4  
answerd: “Madame, knowe ye for trouth that I am  
a messenger of the noble kyng<sup>t</sup> cloys kyng<sup>t</sup> of Fraunce,  
whiche hath sente me to you, & beyng<sup>t</sup> enformed of  
your beaute & wysdom desyreth you to be hys wyf & 8  
for to be quene,” & forthwith he <sup>1</sup>presented to hir the  
rynge of kyng cloys the whyche she took & put it in to  
the tresour of agabondus hir vnele, & sayd to the mes-  
sager that he shold<sup>t</sup> recomaunde hyr to the kyng in 12  
tellyng to hym that it was not leeful to a paynym to  
haue to his wyf a crysten woman. Neuertheles she  
prayed hym that of al this he shold<sup>t</sup> say noo worde, &  
that she wold<sup>t</sup> not doo but as the kyng<sup>t</sup> wold<sup>t</sup>. & vpon 16  
this poynt aurelianus came and shewed al to the kyng,  
wherevpon the kyng cloys the yere folowyng<sup>t</sup> sent ageyn  
his messenger aurelianus to agabondus vnele of Clotildis  
for to haue hyr to his wyf. whan Agabondus knewe 20  
thentencyon of kyng cloys he answerd to the messenger:  
“Say hardlyly to the kyng<sup>t</sup> thy lord that he hath lytel  
to do in desyryng<sup>t</sup> to haue my nyce to wyf:” but the  
bourgoynons wyse counseyllours, redoubtyng the pyns- 24  
saunce of kyng Cloys, by good<sup>t</sup> counceyl whan they had  
wel serched the tresour of Agabondus their kyng &  
founde the rynge of kyng cloys which clotyldis had  
layed therein, wherin was grauen & portrayed his ymage, 28  
wente & concluded to performe the wyll of kyng clois:  
& vpon this agabondus ful of yre delynerd Clotildis to  
aurelianus & he brougt hir with his peple with grete  
Ioye to kyng cloys which had grete <sup>2</sup>playsyr to see 32  
thys fayr mayde. And forthwyth with al solemnyte  
after the maner royal he espoused<sup>t</sup> hir after the custome  
of his lawe.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> A vij.

¶ How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the  
 quene clotildis affectuously that he shold'  
 byleue in the crysten fayth, and' other  
 4 maters : capitulo iij

**T**He fyrst nyght after the espousaylles atte houre  
 that the kyng' and' the quene shold' slepe to-  
 gyder, Clotylidis embraced' wyth the loue of god  
 8 by grete knowlege of Ihesus our lord' went and' said'  
 to the kyng' : "My right dere lord, I requyre the  
 that it please the to graunte to me a lytel demaunde  
 byfore or I entre in to thy bedde wyth the." The  
 12 kyng' sayd' : "demaunde what thou wylt For I am  
 wel contente." Clotylidis thenne sayd' to hym : "Fyrst,  
 I demaunde, requyre, and admoneste the that thou wylt  
 byleue in god of heuen Fader almyghty, whyche made  
 16 heuen and' erthe & that hath created the. And' in  
 Ihesu Cryst his glorious sone, kyng' of alle kynges,  
 which by his passyon hath redemed' the. And' in the  
 holy ghost, confirmatour and' Illumynatour of al good  
 20 werkes, procedyng' fro the fader & fro the sone, the  
 foresayd' Trynity in one onely essen[ce], to whome  
 ought to be gy<sup>1</sup>uen al honour and' all lawde & byleue.  
 Byleue ye in this holy byleue and' mageste and' leue  
 24 the ydolles made wyth mannes honde, a folysshe thyng  
 and' vayn, and' thynke for to restore the holy chyrches  
 whyche thou hast brente. Secondly, I requyre the  
 that thou wylt demaunde my parte and' poreyon of the  
 28 goodes of my fader and' of my moder of agabondus myn  
 vncle whom he dyd' put to deth falsely and' wythoute  
 occasyon, but the vengeance I leue to god." whan she  
 had said this the kyng' answerd : ¶ "Thou hast  
 32 demaunded' me a poynte & passage which is to me ouer  
 strait & hard to graunte, that is that I shold' forsake  
 my goddes by whome I gouern me, for to adoure one

Clotildis makes  
 two requests of  
 Cloys.

First, that he will  
 become a  
 Christian

and forsake his  
 false gods.

Secondly, that he  
 will demand her  
 dowry from Aga-  
 bondus.

Cloys begs to ask something else, \*

but she repeats her first request,

Cloys sends Aurelian to demand his wife's property,

Agabondus in a rage refuses to give it up,

but by the advice of his counsellors gives way,

Clotildis has a son, who is baptised,

but dies shortly after,

Cloys says it would not have died had it not been baptised,

onely god<sup>d</sup> of whome thou hast spoken to me. demaunde  
of me som other thyng<sup>t</sup> & with good hert I shal  
doo it." Clotildis answered: "as moche as is possyble  
to me to requyre I supplye & byseche the that thou 4  
wilt adoure the god of heuen maker of al, to whome  
onely is due al honour." the kyng made none other  
answer but sente anone Aurelyen his factour to agabondus  
for to haue the goodes longyng<sup>t</sup> to the quene 8  
Clotildis, & whan Aurelyen had doon his message  
Agabondus, replenysshed<sup>t</sup> with grete Ire, answered to the  
messenger that he shold<sup>t</sup> as scone haue lalle his royaume  
as ony thyng of hym. For which cause Aurelyen said 12  
to hym: "the kyng cloys my maister comaundeth the  
by me that thou make an answer vpon my demaunde  
or ellys he shalle be euyl contente." Thenne the bourgoynons  
helden a counceyl and<sup>t</sup> sayd to agabondus their 16  
kyng: "Sir kyng, gyue to your nyce of your goodes  
as reason wyl for it is ryght, And we knowe wel that  
so ought ye to doo and<sup>t</sup> to take playsyr to haue good<sup>t</sup>  
alyaunces with clois the kyng<sup>t</sup> and<sup>t</sup> wyth all the freysshe 20  
peple, to thende that they renne not on vs. For the  
people is boystous & furious and, that werse is, wythout  
mynde of god" And vpon this poynte Agabondus,  
constrayned<sup>t</sup> to the counceyl of the bourgoynons hys 24  
people, sente a grete partye of his tresour to Aurelyen  
the messenger of kyng<sup>t</sup> Cloys. In a litel tyme after the  
kyng cloys in vysityng his royaume The quene clotyldis  
was anon grete with chyld<sup>e</sup>, and<sup>t</sup> sone after was delyuered 28  
of a sone whome she dyd do baptyse, And contynuelly  
requyred<sup>t</sup> the kyng that he wold hyleue as to-fore is  
sayd<sup>t</sup>, but he in no wyse wold<sup>t</sup> here her ne do thereafter.  
And<sup>t</sup> whan the chyld<sup>e</sup> was baptyse<sup>d</sup> anone it exspered<sup>t</sup> 32  
& dyed<sup>t</sup>, wherof the kyng<sup>t</sup> was euyl contente and<sup>t</sup> sayd<sup>t</sup>  
to the quene: "yf thou haddest gyuen hym and<sup>t</sup>  
dedyed<sup>t</sup> hym to my goddes he were now alyue." The

<sup>1</sup> A vij. back.      <sup>2</sup> col. ij.

quene answerd: "for this thyng I am noo thyng per-  
 turbled in my courage, but I rendre & gyue thankynges  
 to god my creatour by cause he hath me so dygne  
 4 and worthy that it hath plesed hym to take in to his  
 royalme of heuen the fyrst fruyt of my wombe." After,  
 the yere folowyng she had ageyn another sone named  
 lodomyrus, the whyche whan he was baptysed bycame  
 8 anone so seke that it was supposed he shold deye.  
 And whan the kyng sawe it languyshe he beyng euyl  
 contente said to the quene: "and now,"<sup>1</sup> sayd he,  
 "it shal none otherwyse be of this chylde but as it was  
 12 of that other his broder, by-cause ayenst myn entente  
 thou doost thy wylle in baptysyng them." Thenne the  
 quene for the fere of the kyng prayed to god deuoutely  
 for the helthe of hyr chylde, And anone he was  
 16 guaryshed and hool.

A second son  
also falls ill after  
baptism,

but through the  
queen's prayers  
recovers.

¶ How the kyng' Cloys was victoryous of his  
 enemyes by cause he byleued' in Ihesu  
 Cryste: Capitulo iiij

20 **K**Yng Cloys after certeyn tyme began to make  
 warre mortal ayenst the Almayns, And so  
 perseueryng the <sup>2</sup>allemayns had vycторыe on  
 the frensshe men in suche wyse that they were ouer-  
 24 throwen & slayn. Thenne whan aurelyen sawe the  
 dystrectyon of the kynges peple he began to beholke  
 the kyng his lord & sayd to hym: "Syr kyng, ye see  
 tofore your eyen the mortal dystrectyon of your peple,  
 28 I requyre you that ye byleue in god almyghty whych  
 hath made heuen & erthe, I mene hym whome my lady  
 the quene adoureth, precheth, and byleneth on."  
 Whan the kyng had herde aurelyen thus speken in  
 32 grete affectyon he began to lyfte his eyen vnto heuen  
 and wepte moche largely, and wyth grete pyte thus

Clois attacks the  
Germans,

but is defeated  
with heavy loss.

Aurelian calls  
on the king to be  
converted,

<sup>1</sup> Ed. how.

<sup>2</sup> A viij.

and the king  
yields to his  
entreaties.

Clois having  
acknowledged  
himself a  
Christian prays  
to God for aid.

He gains a victory  
over the Germans.

sayd : “ O Ihesu cryst, sone of the veray god almyghty,  
on whom my wyf by-leneth and wyth al hyr hert  
precheth & notyfyeth hym to gyue remedye to them  
that ben in trybulacyons, I byseche the of ayde and 4  
socour that I may be vyctoryous of myn enemyes by  
experyence presently. I byleue<sup>1</sup> on the, and in thy  
name I shalle baptyse me. I haue demaunded my  
goddess for to helpe me but they haue doon no thyng 8  
for me, And I say they be of noo value ne of noo  
comforte whan they may not helpe them that requyre  
them. Wherefore to the as veray god and lord I requyre  
the that I may be delyuerd by thy hye pyssaunce fro 12  
myn aduer<sup>s</sup>saries.” he thus sayeng<sup>t</sup> wyth an hyghe  
voys The allemayns his enemyes vanquysshed & mur-  
dred began to flee in suche wyse that theyr kyng  
was deed, wherfore they that abode yelded them to 16  
kyng<sup>t</sup> cloys and bycemen his subgettes and sette al that  
contreie vnder hys obayssaunce & pyssaunce payeng<sup>t</sup>  
yerely trybute. Thenne after this vyctory by the  
pyssaunce of god obteyned he came in to fraunce And 20  
recounted alle to the quene hys wyf, how by Inuocacion  
dynyne and by thayde of god almyghty he had obteyned  
vyctorye.

¶ How the kyng<sup>t</sup> was baptysed<sup>t</sup> by saynt 24  
Remyge, & in hys baptesme by myracle  
was brougt the holy ampulle by an aungel  
fro heuen wherof euer after all the kynges  
of Fraunce been enoynted in theyr conse- 28  
cracyon atte cyte of Raynes : capitulo v.

Clotildis sends  
for Remigius  
to baptise Clois.

**A**fter that the quene had herde the kyng<sup>e</sup> whyche  
was conuerted vnto the crysten fayth for the  
vyctorye which he had obteyned she had grete 32  
loye And Incontynent sent after saynt Remyge byshop

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* byleuene.

<sup>2</sup> col. ij.

- of raynes, a moche holy man, whiche came to hyr for  
 to preche to the kyng<sup>1</sup> his saluacyon & the manere of  
 the crysten fayth. & whan he was comen, after that  
 4<sup>1</sup> he had wel enformed the kyng, began strongly to  
 exeyte the peple of fraunce to bylene in Ihesu Cryst,  
 And the peple gaynsayed it not. For in knowyng<sup>2</sup> the  
 errour of thydolles they began al to bylene in god &  
 8 say: "Syr kyng<sup>3</sup> glorious, it is best that ye forsake  
 thydolles and adoure the god Immortal whome the  
 quene adoureth and preyseth & so for to do all we be  
 contente." Incontynent al this was shewed to saynt  
 12 Remyge, wherof he was moche Ioyous, and cam to them  
 dylygently as a good herdman that taketh grete payne  
 to kepe the sheep fro his aduersarye; and grete playsyr  
 ought he to haue to come thyder, For his comyng<sup>4</sup> and  
 16 hys prechyng<sup>5</sup> dyd soo grete prouffyte that it made the  
 peple to be regenerate after thordynaunce of holy bap-  
 tesme, wythoute which no man may entre in to heuen.  
 wherfore the necessaryte of the saluacion of thys kyng<sup>6</sup>  
 20 enlumyned of grace, dysposed<sup>7</sup> to bylene, conioyned to  
 good<sup>8</sup> entencyon maad<sup>9</sup> affectuously saynt Remyge to  
 come, for he thought wel whan the kyng<sup>10</sup> was baptysed<sup>11</sup>  
 and byleued<sup>12</sup> in Ihesu cryst and his commaundements  
 24 that al the peple subgette to hym shold<sup>13</sup> do the same  
 wyse. And whan saynt remyge was comen and had  
 commyned with the kyng touchyng his salua<sup>14</sup>-cyon  
 [he] began to ordeyne the place for to baptys<sup>15</sup> hym  
 28 honourably, and dyd do<sup>16</sup> paynte the hystories after  
 somme poyntes of our crysten fayth moche rychely and  
 repayred<sup>17</sup> the places ryght delyceously. ¶ And on that  
 other he dyd do ordeyne & founde chirches autentykly,  
 32 & compose baptyzatoryes & frentes conuenably. whan  
 al this was done <sup>18</sup>kyng was al redy to receyue the

The bishop comes,  
 and by his  
 preaching  
 converts the  
 whole French  
 nation,

who urge the  
 king to forsake  
 idolatry.

St. Remigius  
 makes prepara-  
 tions for the  
 baptism of Clois.

<sup>1</sup> A viij. back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* to.

<sup>4</sup> The words between the asterisks are repeated in the original with slight alterations, as follow: And the<sup>19</sup>ne the kyng was al redy to receyue the holy sacrament of baptesme

He delivers an  
exhortation to  
the king.

Remigius  
declares the  
articles of the  
Christian faith.

Clois and all his  
subjects are  
baptised.

A dove brings  
from heaven a  
vessel containing  
chrisem,

holy sacrament of baptesme, to whome the frende of  
god<sup>l</sup> saynt remyge began to say by faconde manere.  
¶ “Syr kyng<sup>t</sup>, it is tyme that ye ought wyth pure en-  
teneyon to forsake the false goddes to whome tofore 4  
this tyme ye haue gyuen fayth,\* whyche ben ful of al  
vanyte and do no thyng but excersite of dampnacyon.  
And ye ought to byleue wyth ryzt humble hert in one  
onely god almyghty, the fader, the sone, & the holy 8  
ghoost, one onely & pure essence, whyche hath created<sup>l</sup>  
heuen and erthe, to whome one onely ouzt to gyue  
fayth and creaunce: and in Ihesu cryst his sone,  
whyche for the sauacyon of humayn creature <sup>1</sup>wok<sup>l</sup> 12  
take humanyte couenable for to repayre thynobedyence  
of our fyrst fader Adam. And that was conceyued<sup>l</sup> in  
the bely of the Virgyn marie by the werk of the holy  
ghoost: whyche after was sette on the crosse and took 16  
deth dolorously for to redeleme vs, was buryed<sup>l</sup> and roos  
fro deth to lyf, and after ascended<sup>l</sup> in to heuen, and  
sytteth vpon the ryght honde of the fader, and fro  
thens shal come and Iudge the lyuyng<sup>t</sup> and deed<sup>l</sup>. 20  
¶ Also ye shal byleue in holy chyrehe, our catholyque  
moder, & her ordonnayre.” and whan saynt Remyge  
had ynough enformed the kyng<sup>t</sup> and the peple of our  
fayth and byleue he baptyse<sup>d</sup> them in the name of the 24  
fader & of the sone & of the holy ghoost. And whan  
he came to enoyntyng<sup>t</sup> after the custome of the holy  
cresme whyche noo man brought, Incontynent by the  
plesyr of god<sup>l</sup> and demonstraunce myraculous, they alle 28  
stondyng<sup>t</sup>,<sup>2</sup> sodeynlye came down descendyng fro heuen  
a douue slynyng, whiche bare in hyr becke an holy  
ampull and lefte it in the same place where the holy  
cresme was, wherwyth the kyng<sup>t</sup> cloys was fyrst 32

[*printed* taptisme]. To whom Saynt Remyge began by fayr  
manere: “Syr Kyng. it is tyme that 3e ought of pure Inten-  
cion to forsake the goddes to whome here afore tyme 3e haue  
byleued on.”

<sup>1</sup> B j.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* stondyug<sup>t</sup>.



- enoynted in grete deuocyon by Saynt Remyge; whyche Ampull is presently at Raynes, of whyche holy cresse that is therein the kynges of fraunce <sup>1</sup>onelye been enoynted ones in theyr consecraeyon. ¶ In that tyme were baptysed the systers of the sayd kyng<sup>t</sup> and thre thousand men of hys excersyte, and so after all the peple of fraunce in grete Ioye and exaltacion of glorye.
- 8 ¶ The second' partye of the first book conteyneth fyue chapytres, and' speketh of the begynnyng' of kyng' Pepyn And' Charlemayn hys sone.
- 12 ¶ How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen kyng' of Fraunce when the lygnage of kyng cloys faylled' in successyon: ca. j
- 16 **T**He book preecedent maketh mencyon of kyng<sup>t</sup> Cloys the fyrst crysten kynge of the lordes of Fraunce of whome the lygnage succeeded from heyre to heyres vnto the foure and twenty kyng, which was the kyng<sup>t</sup> Pepyn of another lygnage. And the
- 20 Kynge whyche was the xxij after the kyng Cloys and of his lignage was named hildricus, the which <sup>2</sup>kyng<sup>t</sup> deuoute & contemplatyf wythoute cure to excersyse thoffyce royal of a kynge put hym self in relygyon for
- 24 to lede a solytarye lyf. ¶ In that tyme was Pepyn moche valyaunt of hys persone and moche noble prynee. And by cause that alle the kynges of fraunce haue succeeded of thys sayd Pepyn, and in especial charlemayn
- 28 his sone vpon whome this werke is comprysed, I wyl here begynne to treate the mater the whyche I entende superfycially to speke of, And lyke as the book whyche is called myrroure hystoryal compryseth. That Pepyn
- 32 the prynee on a tyme sente hys messagers to Rome to the Pope Zacharye for to haue answer vpon a demaunde, That is to wete, "whether is he more worthy to be a

with which all  
kings of France  
since have been  
consecrated.

After the death of  
Clois Hildricus  
becomes king,

but gives up  
the throne to  
become a monk.

Pepin's demand  
of Pope Zachary,

<sup>1</sup> col. ij.

<sup>2</sup> B j. back.

kyng or to be said a kyng whiche fo[r] pees and parfyght vnyon taketh on hym grete payne & trauaylle, or ellys he that retcheth of noo thyng and is abandonned and gyuen to all slouth and is onely contente to haue the 4 name onely of kyng?" Whan the pope had herde thys demaunde he remaunded to Pepyn that he by ryght reason and veray equyte ought to be called a kyng that gouerneth and ruleth hys fayt for the comyn wele & 8 contynueth it. For whyche ansuer & demaunde the Frensshe men by counceyl<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>approued consydered theyr kyng hyldryeus professed in a monasterye in lyf solytarye and contemplatyf, (And that not wythstond- 12 yng ought not to be ony thyng ayenst them that lyuen solytaryly,) how wel a kyng ought not to be solytarye, For suche as is the Kyng<sup>3</sup> suche is the Royame. ¶ For salamon sayth, yf the kyng be neelygent the peple 16 wote not what to doo, And blessyd is the londe that hath a prynce noble. Alle the frensshe men beyng wel enformed of the condycions apperteynyng to a kyng after an auctour that sayth thus: ¶ "The Prynce 20 whan he is ordeyned ought not to haue horses superfluous ne make his peple more subgette than they ought to be, and ought not to take but seruauntes propyre<sup>3</sup> and necessarye wythoute superfluyte, and not to nour- 24 ysshe ouer many houndes ne other beestes vnprouffitable but take them in mesure. ¶ And he shold eschewe multiplycacyon of mynstrellys, Tabouryns, commyn wyymen, lecherous men. ¶ And he shold not cor- 28 rupte hys subgettes by euyl exaample. He shold not breke hys espousaylles, he shold gladly rede in bookes & shold haue by hym peple wel letterd, And shold Iuge wythoute fauour. ¶ And tofore al thynges<sup>4</sup> he 32 shold adoure & serue god: he shold not gladly take yestes, & ought not gladly to chaunge hys offycers."

and the Pope's  
answer.

The duties and  
qualities of a  
king.

He should not  
keep too many  
horses or  
servants,

nor keep bad  
company.

He should be a  
good husband,  
fond of learning,  
just,

and, above all,  
religious.

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* counceyl.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* propyee.

<sup>4</sup> B ij.

- Alle thys thyng wel seen emonge them for the con-  
 seruacion of the people emonge the myscreautes which  
 were at that tyme, [they] wente and chosen for to be  
 4 kyng<sup>s</sup> of Fraunce the noble Pepyn, and fro that tyme  
 forthon the lygnage of kyng cloys regned nomore vpon  
 the freysshe men. And he was consecrate by saynt  
 Boneface, And by thauctoryte apostolyque & by Saynt  
 8 Stephen Pope with his ij sones Charlemayn & charles<sup>1</sup>  
 the grete was confermed and approued and ordeyned  
 all the kynges of fraunce in grete benedycion to suc-  
 cede fro lygnage to lygnage moost nexte. And the sai  
 12 pope gaf his maledycion to al them that were op-  
 posaunts and ayenst these thynges aforesayd. ¶ Thenne  
 after this noble kyng Pepyn made grete warre to the  
 englysshe men. And after the guyse Romayn he  
 16 ordeyned the seruyce in the chyrches of fraunce and  
 many other maters meruayllous wherof thonour is attri-  
 buted by good ryght to hym by vyctorye obteyned, and  
 was buryed in the chyrche of Saynt Denys in Fraunce.  
 20 And lefte hys heyres hys two sones afore sayd whome  
 he had goten on the noble queene berte, doughter<sup>2</sup> of  
 the grete Herclyn Cezar, of whome the lignage of  
 romayns of germayns and of the grekes haue had con-  
 24 currence. wherfore by good ryght in tyme folowyng<sup>t</sup> the  
 kyng Charles was chosen and maad Emperour of Rome.  
 And the sayd kyng Pepyn regned xvij yere in pros-  
 peryte dygne of saluacyon, and after that the broder  
 28 of the sayd Charles had regned in his partye of the  
 royaume ij yere he deyed, And thenne after alle the  
 gouvernement booldy of the royaume of fraunce abode to  
 the sayd charles as here-after shalle be more playnly  
 32 shewed.

Pepin is chosen  
king by the  
French,

and consecrated  
by St. Boniface.

He makes war  
against the  
English.

At his death he  
leaves two sons,

between whom  
his kingdom is  
divided.

On the death of  
his brother  
Charlemagne  
becomes sole  
king.

¶ Of kyng Charles after that he had maad  
 many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan,

<sup>1</sup> *Ed. repeats* and charles.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

& how he was emperour of Rome: capi-  
tulo ij

His labours in  
the service of the  
church.

At the invitation  
of Pope Adrian  
Charles visits  
Rome.

He lays siege to  
Padua,

and takes it.

A general Council  
is held at Rome.

**T**His noble Charlemayn, otherwyse called Charles the grete, the whiche for the gretenes of hys 4 body, puyssaunce, and opperacions virtuouses by merite is called grete as I haue sayd, whyche after the deth of hys brother was<sup>1</sup> onely kyng of Fraunce. A lytel whyle after that the Pope <sup>2</sup>adryan regned & dyd grete dyligence to strengthe & corobere the crysten fayth in annulling the heresyas and constytutyng ymages for representacyon of sayntes in chyrches. And te many other labours merytoryes adioyned in the 12 seruyce of god & of holy chyrche The kyng charles ayenst the myscreauntes taryed not to confounde them but had vyctorye of them in dyuers<sup>3</sup> maners, & the pope adryan, whyche was wel enformed that thys Charles 16 was a stronge pyler of the chyrche and protectour of the fayth, sente for hym that he shold come to Rome. And whan he came to pauye there he taryed & sette hys syege and soiourned a lytel tyme, And after wyth 20 a fewe of hys people departed & came to rome. And there he was receyued affectuously and vysyted many places deuoutely. And after whan he retorned he took pauye, And whan he had all doon his playsyr 24 he retorned to Rome. And wyth the Pope adryan he assembled many bysshoppes and abbottes [to] the nombre of an hondred & liij where they ordeyned many constytucyons vpon the fayt of the vnyuersal chyrche. 28 And in that synode for the grete holynes of charles The pope and al thassystemes gaf hym power for to ordeyne bisshoppes & archebisshops <sup>4</sup>in al his contrees and prouynces. And al them that so shal be ordeyned he 32 shal conferme and the rebellys that shal gaynsaye them he shal curse and theyr goodes be confysked. This

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* he was.    <sup>2</sup> *P.* ij, back.    <sup>3</sup> *Ed.* dyners.    <sup>4</sup> *col.* 2.

noble charles wyth hys two sones, that one named  
 Pepyn & that other lowys, And the xij pyeres of  
 fraunce, whyche al had promysed fydelite one to that  
 4 other for to Ieoparde theyr lyf for the crysten fayth.

In that tyme many mortal warres duryng the lyf of  
 kyng Pepyn & of charles and after that the royaume  
 of lombardye was destroyed and delyuerd of the mys-  
 8 creauntes, And maad pees not wythoute grete trauayll  
 for to come from fraunce in to lombardye by cause of  
 the danzerous countre. whan alle thys was termyned  
 to hys playsyr he reduced alle ytalye vnder the trybute  
 12 of the royaume of Fraunce. In suche wyse that whan  
 ytalye was thus destroyed he went to Rome for to  
 gyue thankynges and laude to god moche deuoutelye  
 for victorie that he had and for excusyon doon vpon  
 16 the enemyes of the fayth. And there with the pope  
 Adryan he maad many constytueyons whyche by ryzt  
 equitye ought wel to be obserued. And after he beyng  
 thus in Rome victoryous hys sone Pepyn was ordeyned  
 20 & consecrate kyng<sup>1</sup> of the ytalyens, And hys sone  
 lowys was ordeyned and consecrate kyng vpon guyan.  
 thys doon the Romayns whyche of grete aneyaunte were  
 of grete apporte after that the emperour was by them  
 24 put to deth Constantyn his sone wold haue regned for  
 themperour, whyche was not wel in the fauour of the  
 senatours and other Romayns; the whyche beyng in this  
 poynte, after that they had taken delyberacyon of grete  
 28 counceyl, seeyng the grete valure and noblesse of kyng  
 Charles, whyche was so parfyght in alle noblesse  
 hardynesse, prudence, & other vertues as I shalle touche  
 hereafter alle playne, that by consente of eueryche he  
 32 was chosen emperour of Rome wyth grete loange &  
 exaltacyon of Ioye Innumerable, And by the honde  
 of Pope Leo he was crowned emperour with alle  
 honoures that myght be comprysed. And al wyth one

After many  
 bloody wars he  
 reduces Italy  
 under his power.

His son Pepin is  
 consecrated king  
 of Italy, and his  
 second son Louis  
 king of Guienne.

Charles is chosen  
 Emperor of  
 Rome.

<sup>1</sup> B iij.

voys gaf to hym laude and honour, And called hym Cezar & August by a symylytude of valure in contem-  
placyon of grete playsyr that they had maad hym kyng<sup>t</sup>  
of ytalyens.

4

¶ Of the corpulence of kyng Charles, and' of  
the maner of hys lyung' : capitulo iij

Of the good  
works of Charles  
during his reign  
of 33 years.

<sup>1</sup> Charlemayn Kyng of Fraunce after that he was  
Emperour he dyd many meruayllous werkes and 8  
regned<sup>t</sup> emperour thyrte yere, And had thenne  
regned vpon the frensshe men xxxij yere. And in  
the cont[r]ye of Rome he edyfyed many cytees and  
restored good townes & many other thynges whyche 12  
may not well be recounted by cause of his merueyllous  
werkes. Neuertheles for to knowe what man he was  
his werkes wytnessen : as moche as toucheth the xcercyte  
of hys persone Turpyn the holy man archebysshop of 16  
Raynes whych lyued that tyme and was oft tymes in the  
companye of kyng<sup>t</sup> Charles sayth that he was a man  
wel faryng<sup>t</sup> of hys body & grete of persone and had hys  
syght and regarde fyers & malyceyous. ¶ The lengthe 20  
of hys persone conteyned eyght feet after the mesure  
of his feet, which were merueyllously long ; fatte, and  
massyf was he of his sholdres and raynes wythoute  
haung the bely otherwise than wel a poynte. The 24  
armes and thyres he had ample and large : he was a  
subtyl knyght & ryght wyse actyf and moche fyers, and  
of alle hys membres he was of ryght grete strengthe.  
he had the face deduyte in lengthe and hys berde was 28  
a foot longe : <sup>2</sup> he had hys nose reysed vpon a roundnes :  
A fayr regarde and countenaunce had this man : he had  
the face of a large fote brode ; he had the eyen like a  
lyon sparklyng lyke a cole by furyous regarde, his 32  
wynbrowes grete. Assone as he byhelde a man in  
angre eche man had of hym fere and drede in openyng<sup>t</sup>

According to  
Turpin

Charles was  
more than 8 feet  
high, stout,  
broad-shouldered,

and large of limb,

with a beard a  
foot long.

His face was  
long and fair :  
his eyes bright  
and sparkling.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> B iij, back.

- his eyen. The gyrdle of whyche he was gyrde was viij  
fote longe wyth-oute that that henge doun fro the bokle  
to the pendaunt. whan he took hys repaast he was  
4 contente wyth lytel brede, but as touchyng the pytaunce  
he ete at his repaast a quarter of moton, or ij hennes,  
or a grete ghooes, or a grete pestel of porke, or a pecok,  
or a crane, or an hare all hool: he dranke wyn sobrelly  
8 wyth a lytel water therin. Of hys strengthe is not a  
lytel thyng to speke of, For he wold smyte a knyght  
armed wyth one stroke of a swerde and cleue hym from  
the coppe of the hede doun to the sadel. And yf he  
12 had bytwene hys handes iiij hors shoen wyth oute  
ouermoche prouyng<sup>1</sup> hys myght he wold ryzt them oute  
and breke them in pyeces. And more ouer wyth one  
hande he wold take a knyght al armed and lyfte hym  
16 vp to the heyght of hys breste lyghtly. And he had  
in hym thre thynges moche honourable: Fyrst, in  
yestes ye<sup>1</sup>uyng he was ryght large, lyke vnto Tytus  
themperour sone of Vaspasianus, which was so prodyal  
20 that it was not possyble to hym to gyue that whyche  
he promysed. And whan it was demaunded why he  
promysed thyng that he myght not gyue, forthwyth  
he answerd that a persone ought not departe fro a prynee  
24 desolate ne heuy, nor with-oute to obteyne somme  
thyng. Secondly, Charles was so sure in Iugement  
that no man coude reprehende hym, and also he was  
pyetous & mereyful vnto cristen men after the qualyte  
28 of the persone & the occasyon of the trespaas. And,  
thyrdly, in his wordes he was moche wel aduysed:  
whan he spake he thought strongely on that he sayd &  
whan one spake to hym he remembered the manere for  
32 to compryse thentenyon of the spekar.

His waist was  
8 feet round.

At his dinner he  
could eat a  
quarter of  
mutton, or a  
goose, or a  
peacock, or a  
hare.

His strength  
was wonderful.

He could lift an  
armed knight  
with one hand.

He was liberal to  
all.

just and merciful,

and careful in his  
language.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

¶ To what thyng kyng Charles hys sone and  
hys doughters were Instructe and' taughte  
to doo : capitulo iiij

**D**Ame bertrode moder of Charles ful of grete sey- 4  
ence in grete prosperyte of lyf and in honour  
wexeð olde and fynysshed hyr dayes, and  
ordeyneð bookes for to excersyse the artes lyberalle.  
¶ Of <sup>1</sup>whome fyrst charles took gladly payne for to 8  
estudy, And in the tyme of Infancye he maad seyence  
to be taught to hys sones and doughters, and after whan  
they knewe their bylene he made them to studye in the  
senen artes lyberal. And whan the sones were of age 12  
for to ryde on horsback after the guyse of Fraunce he  
made them to bere armes and to luste for texcersyse  
the warre whan it shold be nede, and whan they dyd  
not that he made them to hunte al maner wylde beestes 16  
and dyd them to do other esbatements longyng to  
chyualry contynuely. After this he made his doughters  
to spynne & sowe and to occupye them in other  
honourable werkes to thende that by ydlenes and 20  
slouth & faute of occupacyon they shold not haue  
ocasyon to falle in thougt dysordynate for to haue  
Inclynacyon to synne and vye. and whan he was not  
occupyed in maters of charge and weyghty he wold 24  
employe his tyme in wrytyng somme newe thyng to  
thende that he wold not be ydle, accordyng to the  
pystle of saynt poule, whiche admonesteth vs to do  
alwaye somme good, by cause þat our enemye the fende 28  
holde vs not in ydlenes for to folowe his entencion  
dampnable. And he dyd do make in his palays in  
Aeon in Almayn a <sup>2</sup>chyrche of our lady compryseð of  
meruayllous beaute & moche rychely ordeyneð, and 32  
wrought, and in grete honour enhaunced in sygne of a  
parfyght crysten man. For after that one loueth the

Charles had his  
sons taught  
religion, science,

joustyng,  
the art of war,  
and hunting.

His daughters  
were taught to  
spin and sew,  
and other suitable  
accomplishments.

Charles was never  
idle, but fond of  
study.

He built at Aeon  
a splendid church  
to our Lady.

<sup>1</sup> B iiij.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.



lord and that is gyuen to hym the werkes desirous to  
meue other to doo to the lord lyke as hym self and in  
lyke wyse shold perseuere in the amplyfycacyon of hys  
4 contreye that sythe the deth of hys fader Pepyn he  
doubled by puyssaunce in the royaume of fraunce.

¶ Of the studye of kyng charles, of hys lyuyng',  
of hys charytable werkes, and' other ma-  
8 ters : capitulo v.

**A**fter that Charles was Instructe in gramayre &  
other scyences morall & speculatyf, alwaye he  
continued in them : And by ardaunt desyre  
12 frequented the bookes composed vpon the crysten fayth  
for to be protectour and defendour of the chyrche, the  
whyche he vysyted on mornynge and on euenes & in  
the nyght oftymes. and at good festes he faylled not  
16 to doo gretely hys deuoyr in sacrifyses & oblacions :  
And also gaf largely almesse for the loue of god, and  
was alway redy to socour the poure people in the largest  
wyse. For he socoured not onely <sup>1</sup>the poure folke of  
20 his owne contreye with his hauoyr & goodes but in  
many other places beyonde the see he sente golde &  
syluer and vytayll after the necessyte of the place : as  
in surrye, in egypt, in affrique, in Iherusalem, & other  
24 contreyes : as he that sayeth : "golde and syluer is not  
myn." To euery man he desyred amytye and pees.  
Of body he was moche ample & boystous of stature  
well apparysaunt, the coppe of hys heed rounde, the  
28 heeres in grete reuerence, & the vysage loyous. he had  
the voys clere & of grete force, & at his souper he ete  
not for the moost parte sauf rosted veneson, whyche  
aboue alle other flesshe he loued and vsed at his souper.  
32 Alwaye he loued redars for to rede cronycles or other  
thynges contemplatyues, as he that wold as wel fede  
the soule whiche is perpetual of spyrituel fode, for to

Of the religious  
habits of Charles,

his alms-giving,

both at home and  
abroad.

He was large of  
body, and of a  
pleasing  
countenance.

He loved to hear  
books read,

<sup>1</sup> B iiij, back.

especially the  
*De Civitate Dei*  
by Augustine.

He sent  
commissioners to  
study and report  
on the state of his  
kingdoms, and  
the government  
and laws of other  
countries.

Aaron, king of  
Persia, sends him  
as a present an  
elephant,

mayntene it in vnyon of grace toward god his maker,  
as of refeccyon of the body for to conserue the lyf,  
And emonge al other bookes he delytet strongly in  
the bookes of saint austyn, especyally in that whyche 4  
is named de ciuitate dei. & he dranke not ouer ofte,  
For at souper he dranke not but thre tymes. In somer  
tyme gladly after mydday he wold ete a lytel fruyt &  
drynke ones & wold goo reste hym al naked in his 8  
bedde two<sup>1</sup> or thre houres. In the nyght he brake his  
slepe foure or v tymes and walked in hys chambre.  
Thus Charles perseuerd<sup>2</sup> in felicyte ryal and emperyal,  
& sente oueral thorough hys empyre hys messagers and 12  
grete counceyllours<sup>3</sup> for to vysyte hys prouynces and  
good townes, for to be enformet of the gouernours of  
them for to do to eueriche Iustyce and reson; and  
made many constytucyons & lawes accordyng to the 16  
places, and commaunded them to be obserued and  
kepte vpon grete payne. Semblably the sayd Charles  
sente thorough al the world for to knowe ouer al the  
gouernement, That is to wete, for to knowe the mer- 20  
uayllous faytes that were doon in the world, And also  
for to lerne the lyf of sayntes of whom the festes were  
halowed and made of them bookes for tabyde in eternal  
memorye. & every day he dyd doo put in wrytyng that 24  
whyche he dyd, In suche maner that after the wrytyng  
that he themme fonde Were founde more than thre  
hondred festes of sayntes one tyme of the yere, wherfor  
he excersyeyng his spyrituel werkes he was bylound & 28  
dere reputed of euery body. In that tyme Aaron the  
kyng of perce for the magnyfycece of charles sente to  
hym an Olyphaunt merueyllously grete for a synguler  
4yeste and many other thynges precyouses. ¶ Thys 32  
Charles for hys grete holynesse and noblesse was in  
suche renomme of honour and of vertues. On a tyme

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* perseuerd.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* counceyllours.

<sup>1</sup> B v.

aaron the kyng<sup>d</sup> of Perse sente to hym emonge other  
 yeftes the bodyes of saynt Cypryan and<sup>t</sup> of saynt and the relies of  
 several saints.  
 speratus and<sup>t</sup> the heed<sup>t</sup> of saynt Panthaleon marters in  
 4 to Fraunce.

¶ The thyrd<sup>e</sup> parte of the fyrst book conteyn-  
 eth thre chapytres, and<sup>t</sup> speketh how by  
 reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd<sup>e</sup> the  
 8 holy londe fro the honde of the paynims.

¶ How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to  
 Charles for socours after that he was de-  
 iecte and<sup>t</sup> caste oute of the Turkes: capi-  
 12 tulo primo.

**I**T is redde that in the tyme that charles was em-  
 perour of rome the patryarke of Iherusalem was soo  
 oppressyd<sup>t</sup> of the paynims by mortall warre that  
 16 vmethe he myght saue hym self. And thus whan he  
 knewe nomore what to do He had<sup>t</sup> in remembraunce the  
 noble charles and<sup>t</sup> he beyng<sup>t</sup> enformed<sup>t</sup> of hys holynes,  
 for socour he sente to hym the keyes of the holy sepul-  
 20 cre of our lord Ihesu Cryst of Caluarye and of the  
<sup>1</sup>cyte, And wyth that he sente to hym the standart of  
 the fayth as to the pyler of crystente and<sup>t</sup> defendour of  
 holy chyrche. After thys the patryarke came to con-  
 24 stantynoble vnto themperour constantyn and<sup>t</sup> to hys  
 sone Leo & brought wyth hym Iohan of naples preste  
 and<sup>t</sup> another whyche named<sup>t</sup> hym self Dauyd archeprest,  
 whome themperour Constantyn sent incontynent to  
 28 charles, And<sup>t</sup> wyth them tweyne he ordeyned<sup>t</sup> for to goo  
 wyth them two other whyche were named<sup>t</sup> ysaac and<sup>t</sup>  
 Samuel, & delyuerd to them a lettre wryton with his  
 owne hande for to bere to charles. And the sayd<sup>t</sup> Con-  
 32 stantyn had<sup>t</sup> wryton in one parte of the lettre thus:

“On a nyght me semed that I sawe tofore my bedde a telling him that

he has been ordered in a vision to call on him for help against the Saracens,

and recounting the vision which had appeared to him,

He sends the letter by messengers.

Charles is greatly affected by the letter, which he orders to be published abroad.

yonge woman moche fayre stondyng<sup>1</sup> ryght vp, whyche touched me softly and<sup>2</sup> sayd<sup>3</sup> to me with swete wordes : ‘Constantyn, whan thou knewest thaffayre & doying of the paynyns whyche holden the holy londe by grete 4 affectyon, thou hast prayed<sup>4</sup> god<sup>5</sup> for to haue helpe. lo ! what thou shalte doo. Pourehace that thou mayst haue wyth the charles the grete kyng<sup>6</sup> of the gallyens, whych is protectour of holy crystente and<sup>7</sup> defendour of holy 8 chyrche.’ And<sup>8</sup> after the same lady shewed<sup>9</sup> me a knyght armed<sup>10</sup> in al his body and<sup>11</sup> spores on hys heles, & had<sup>12</sup> <sup>1</sup>hys shelde rede, gyrded wyth hys swerde, & had<sup>13</sup> his sleue of purple, & helde a spere moche grete, And<sup>14</sup> 12 the heed<sup>15</sup> of yron whyche was on hye caste in to the ayer grete flambes of fyre : & he helde in his honde a bacynnet al of golde shynnyng<sup>16</sup> and<sup>17</sup> he was auncient, wyth a longe berde, ryght fayre of vysage and<sup>18</sup> longe of body : 16 he had<sup>19</sup> eyen shynnyng as ij sterres, and<sup>20</sup> hys heerys began to waxe whyte, and<sup>21</sup> after was wryton : ‘O thou August that neuer refuseth the comandements of god, enioye the in Ihesu Cryst, & in thy mynde alwaye yelde to hym 20 thankynge : be enclosed in Iustyce lyke as thou hast be reclaimed<sup>22</sup> in honour. Ihesu Cryste gyue the grace to perseuere<sup>23</sup> and<sup>24</sup> kepe alwaye the commandements, of god as thou oughtest to doo formerly.’” And<sup>25</sup> as it is 24 wryton themperour Constantyn in hys tyme had<sup>26</sup> deiected the paynyns oute of Iherusalem senen tymes, wherfore whan he myzt nomore he sente his messagers to kyng<sup>27</sup> Charles Whyche at that tyme was at parys. And<sup>28</sup> whan the messagers had<sup>29</sup> presented the letters and<sup>30</sup> he had<sup>31</sup> seen them he began to wepe moche greuously in contemplacyon of pyte of the holy sepulchre of our lord<sup>32</sup> so holden of the paynyns. After this he sente for tharche- 32 bysshop Turpyn and<sup>33</sup> maad<sup>34</sup> hym to preche <sup>3</sup>openlye the pyteous tydynge whyche were thenne presentlye comen,

<sup>1</sup> B v, back.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. preseuere.

<sup>3</sup> col. 2.

the whyche wel herde and vnderstood the peple alle  
generally were enclyned to goo thyder

¶ How Charles with a grete companye wente  
4 for to conquere the holy lande, and many  
other maters : capitulo ij

8 **A**fter that thys whyche I haue tofore sayd was  
publysshed The kynge dyd do make an edyct  
and dyd do crye it thorgh out al the contreye,  
that every man that myzt bere armes shold be redy for  
to goo wyth hym ayenst the paynyns, and he that wold  
not come shold be bounde for a good somme of money  
12 for to hyre souldyours that shold goo. Thys doon was  
neuer seen tofore in so lytel tyme so moche peple  
assembled as thenne were founden. And whan they  
were al departed in the name of god, full of one grete  
16 fayth in grete hope to obteyne vycторыe vnder the con-  
duyte of Charlemayn capitayne of the fayth. And  
whan they had ryden a grete longe waye they came in  
to a grete wode of buseage in whyche they myght not  
20 passe vnnethe in two dayes, and yet wyth grete payne,  
and Charles thought to passe it in one daye : wherefore  
he & his hoost entred wythin the sayd wood which was  
ful of dyuers wilde beestes, as Gryffons, beres, lyons,  
24 Tygres, and other beestes. whan they were thus in that  
grete wode and the nyght came on they were al  
abashed & troubled wythout knowyng whych waye  
they shold holde, And Charles commaunded that they  
28 shold loke yf they myght see or knowe any habytacyon,  
but they were ferre fro any and oute of their ryght  
waye, and by force were dryuen to dyspose them to  
slepe in that estate. And whan they were al in reste  
32 the kyng charles beyng in his dormytorye, trustyng of  
the ayde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the  
psalter, And whan he came to the poynte that he shold

He orders all  
who can bear  
arms to assemble.

An enormous  
army comes  
together, and  
they start for  
the Holy Land.

They lose their  
way in a forest.

Charles prays to  
God for help.

say the vers folowyng "Deduc me domine in semita  
mandatorum tuorum, quia ipsam volui," he sayeng thys  
there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of eueriche  
that were about hym whyche sayd wyth an hye voys : 4  
"kyng, thyn oryson is herde." Thenne alle they that  
were presente were moche troubled, and notwythstound-  
yng<sup>t</sup> al thys the kyng contynued to say the psalter  
vnto "Educ me de custodia animam meam," & all thus 8  
whyle he sayd the byrd began more strongly to crye  
and say ¶ "O frensshe man, what sayest thou? <sup>1</sup>O  
frensshe man, what sayest thou?" And after that the  
Kyng<sup>t</sup> and hys companye wente and folowed the byrde 12  
whyche conduyted them vnto the ryght waye whyche  
they had lost the day tofore, & somme of the pylgryms  
sayd that after in the same contreye were suche byrdes  
so doying. But whan charles & hys grete puyssaunce 16  
were nyghe theyr enemyes they were moche troubled  
of theyr comyng & the crysten lordes were gretely  
reioysed of theyr comyng. For wythoute cessyng<sup>t</sup> he  
rested not tyl that he had reconerd the contreye of 20  
crysten men and expelled alle the paynyns whyche  
moch redounded to hym grete honour & vycторыe.  
And in retournyng<sup>t</sup> he demaunded of theemperour of  
Constantynoble lycence to departe & of the other patry- 24  
arkes & archepreestes. And theemperour helde hym an  
hole day. And for remuneracyon the sayd emperour for  
thonour of kyng charles on the morne tofore the yates  
of the cyte dyd do ordeyne many bestes of dyuers maners 28  
& dyuers colours, & grete quantyte of gold and syluer  
and of precious stones, to thende that he shold take it  
for somme rewarde for the grete good that he had doon  
in theyr contreye. But assone as charles knewe therof 32  
he took counceyll of hys people what he ought to <sup>2</sup>doe  
in takyng of the precyous & ryche yestes or to retourne  
in to fraunce wythout takyng of any thyng, And there

A bird comes and  
tells him his  
prayer is heard,

and afterwards  
guides them to  
the right road.

Charles clears the  
country of  
Saracens,

and prepares to  
return home.

The Emperor  
collects a large  
number of valu-  
able presents for  
him,

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> B vj. back.

vpon his barons counceilled hym that he shold take no  
 thyng for hys laboure, For he had doon no thyng but  
 for the loue of god onely : And he beyng wel content  
 4 of thys ansuer commaunded that noo persone vpon grete  
 payne shold take noo thyng of the Iewellys aforesayd.

but Charles re-  
 fuses to accept  
 any of them.

¶ Of the relyques that themperour charles  
 brought fro constantynoble and' fro the  
 8 holy londe, and' of the myracles that were  
 doon : capitulo iiij

12 **W**Han themperour of constantynoble and the  
 patryarke of Iherusalem knewe that charles  
 wolde take no thyng of the good aforesayd,  
 he was admonested that he shold take somewhat of them,  
 & whan he was thus constrayned he bysought them that  
 for the loue of god myght be gyuen vnto hym somewhat  
 16 of the relyques of our lord and of hys holy passyon.  
 Whan thys was demaunded It was commaunded to fast  
 euery man thre dayes for to be the more enclyned to  
 deuocyon and for to vvyte the holy relyques, and in  
 20 espeece were ordeyned xij persones by grace which  
 shold treate & see the relyques. Whan it came to  
 the thyrde day the noble Charles by grete contrycyon  
 confessyd hym to tharchebysshop Turpyn. After  
 24 that moche reuerently they beganne to synge the  
 letanye wyth somme psalmes of the psalter. And  
 there was the prelate of naples named daniel, whyche  
 in grete reuerence opened the coffre wherin was the  
 28 precyous crowne of Ihesu Cryst and there sprange oute  
 of the same so grete an odour that all they that were  
 presente thought to be in paradys. Theyne charles ful  
 of hool and very creauce of fayth kneled down to the  
 32 grounde and stratched hym on therthe, & moche  
 strongly prayed our lord that for the glorye of hys

He asks, instead,  
 for some relics of  
 Our Lord.

The Emperor  
 gives him the  
 sacred crown of  
 thorns.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

name presently wold<sup>e</sup> renewe the myracles of hys holy  
 passyon and gloryous resurrexyon.<sup>1</sup> & assone as he had<sup>e</sup>  
 praye<sup>d</sup> in a moment the crowne began to florysshe, &  
 a meruayllous swete odour yssued<sup>e</sup> out of the floures, 4  
 soo ryzt delycyous that eche man supposed<sup>e</sup> that hys  
 vestementes & clothyng<sup>e</sup> had<sup>e</sup> comen oute of heuen.  
 ¶ Thenne after thys daniel took a sharpe knyfe kutting  
 wel purifyed<sup>e</sup> to cutte the said crowne and<sup>e</sup> in cutting<sup>e</sup> 8  
 alwaye more & more the sayd<sup>e</sup> crowne flouysshed<sup>e</sup> and<sup>e</sup>  
 the odour smellyd the more habundantly. And of the  
 2 floures charles put a parte in a reposytorye, and in a  
 lytel coffre he put the thornes of the crowne, and wept 12  
 so habundantlye that whan he wende to haue gyuen to  
 tharchebysshop Ebroin the floures he wythdrewe hys  
 honde & supposed<sup>e</sup> that the sayd<sup>e</sup> Ebroin<sup>3</sup> had<sup>e</sup> holden  
 them in hys honde, & they were in the ayer houyng by 16  
 myracle & abode there by themself the space of a grete  
 houre. And after whan he had<sup>e</sup> gyuen in keypyng<sup>e</sup> the  
 sayd<sup>e</sup> thornes to the sayd<sup>e</sup> Ebroin he sawe the coffret in  
 thayer whyche was full of floures whyche abode there by 20  
 them self, whiche some after were conuerted<sup>e</sup> in to manna  
 and<sup>e</sup> in that manere they ben at Saynt Denys in fraunce.  
 And it hath be the oppynyon of many that thys was of  
 the manna that god sente in to deserte to hys people. 24  
 Thenne were there shewed<sup>e</sup> myracles For al seek people  
 that were there present were heled<sup>e</sup> of al theyr maladyes  
 by the odour of the floures aforesayd<sup>e</sup>, and the peple  
 that entred in to the chirche by grete vyolence of presse 28  
 of peple cryed<sup>e</sup> verytably that day was a day of helthe  
 & resurrection, for by the sauour of tho mellyfluous  
 floures alle the cytee was purifyed and replenysshed of  
 grace: for thre hondred<sup>e</sup> & one seek man by compte 32  
 were heled<sup>e</sup> & guarissed of their maladyes. ¶ Emonge  
 al other ther was one seek of xxiiij yere & thre  
 monethes, whyche was blynde, deaf, & dombe, but at

A delicious odour  
 issues from the  
 crown.

Charles deposits  
 the thorns and  
 flowers in a coiler,

where they are  
 turned into  
 manna, and  
 now are preserved  
 at St. Denys.

Three hundred  
 and one sick  
 persons are healed  
 by the scent of  
 the holy relics.

One who had been  
 blind, deaf, and  
 dumb for over 24  
 years.

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* resurrexyon.    <sup>2</sup> B vij.    <sup>3</sup> *Ed.* Ebroin.    <sup>4</sup> col. 2.



- moment<sup>1</sup> whan the thorne was drawen fro the crowne  
 he took hys syght, and whan it was layed in ageyn he  
 recounerd his heeryng. And in florysshynge of it he  
 4 was restored to his speche. ¶ After thys the sayd  
 daniel took a nayll of which the precyous body of our  
 lord in his passyon had be perced and in grete reuerence  
 was put for a relyque in alabastre, & in takynge oute of  
 8 it a chylde was heled, whiche of hys lyfte syde was  
 drye and Impotent fro his byrthe & he ranne hastelye  
 to the chyrche and cryed at the houre of none and said  
 that he beyng in an extasye was heled and guarysshed  
 12 and tolde the manere. ¶ Also there was gyuen to the  
 kyng Charles a pyece of the holy crosse and the holy  
 sudarye, and therwith the smocke of our lady & the  
 clothe wherin our lord was wrapped, and also the arme  
 16 of saynt Symeon ; and al reuerently in precyous pyxes  
 & caasses he henge them aboute hys necke. and in  
 passynge by a castel there was a chylde newe dede  
 whom kyng charles touched with the reliques that he  
 20 bare & anone the chylde was reysed to lyf. And whan  
 he came to Acon in Almayne, <sup>2</sup>whyche is a moche fayr  
 cytee where as kyng charles had made his paleys moche  
 fayr & ryche and a ryght deuoute chapel in thonour of  
 24 our lady, wherin hym self is buryed. There atte laste  
 were guarysshed & heled blynde men and seek men of  
 the feures wythoute nombre & xij demonyaks, viij  
 lazars of the palesey, xv of myshapen, xv crokebacked,  
 28 lij of the fallyng sekene, lxxv of the gowte, many of  
 them of the same place & many of other maladyes.  
 And it was ordeyned that in the moneth of Iul at  
 Acon in the cyte that al peple myght come & see the  
 32 forsayd relyques which kyng charles had brought fro  
 Iherusalem and constantynoble. And more ouer was  
 establysshed that one day of the weke of the fastynge of  
 ymbre dayes and in the moneth of Iul shold be made

and a child,  
 a cripple from  
 his birth,  
 are healed by  
 the relics.

The Emperor  
 gives Charles a  
 piece of the cross,

and the holy  
 napkin and other  
 relics,

with which he  
 performs numer-  
 ous miracles.

They are  
 deposited at Acon,  
 where they are  
 shown.

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* meynng.

<sup>2</sup> B vij. back.

this demo[n]strance and notyfycacyon. And in this constytucion was Pope Leo Tharchebyssshop Turpyn Achylleus byssshop of alexandrye And Theophyle of anthyocke & many other bisshoppes & abbottes, whyche 4 werk was moche vertuous & ful of helthe.

¶ Here begynneth the ij book of this present werke, whyche conteyneth thre parties by chapytres folowyng<sup>1</sup> declared<sup>2</sup>. 8

¶ The fyrst partye of the second book conteyneth xvj chapytres and<sup>1</sup> speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer & Fyerabras a meruayllous geaunte. 12

¶ How in a place which was called<sup>1</sup> mormy-onde charles abode folowyng<sup>2</sup> the warre ayenst the paynems, after a lytel prologue.

¶ The fyrst chapytre. 16

I haue spoken tofore in the fyrst book superfyceally of the first kyng of fraunce baptysek, in descendyng<sup>1</sup> after my purpoos vnto Kynge charles of whome may not wel be reconyted the valyaunce of hym and<sup>2</sup> of 20 his barons, whych were named & called pyeres of fraunce. Of whome & of their behanyng<sup>3</sup> I shal make mencion after that I shal mowe conceyne by trouthe, but this that I haue tofore wryton I haue taken it oute 24 of an autentyke book named "myrrour hystorial" and<sup>4</sup> in auneynt cronycles, And<sup>5</sup> haue onelye translated<sup>6</sup> them oute of latyn in to frensshe. And<sup>7</sup> the mater folowyng whyche shal be the second book is of a 28 Romaunce maad<sup>8</sup> of thauneynt faeyon wythoute grete ordynaunce in frensshe wherof I haue been eneyted<sup>9</sup> for to reduce in prose by chapytres ordeyned, which book after *somme* <sup>2</sup>and<sup>3</sup> moost comunely is called<sup>4</sup> "Fyera-bras," by cause that this Fyerabras was so mernayllous a geaunte as I shal make meneyon whyche was van-

All the first book has been translated from the *Speculum* *II* *storiale*;

the second book I have translated from an old Romance, called "Fierabras,"

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> B viij.

- quysshed by Olyuer, And at the laste baptysed & was after a saynt in heuen. And in effect it speketh of that bataylle and of the relyques conquered whiche
- 4 had ben taken of rome and were in the puyssaunce of the admyrall whyche was fader of fyerabras. wherefore in thys book folowyng I ne entende but onely to reduce thauncyent ryme in to prose & to deuyde the
- 8 mater by chapytres in the best ordynauce that I shal conne, wythoute to adiouste any thyng that I haue not founde in the book competent, & in lyke wyse as I shal fynde I shal reduce. And thys book is applyed to
- 12 thonour of Olyuer one partye, Not-wythstondyng that there ben many other maters. For I suppose that of eueriche of the barons pryncypal of themperour Charles whyche ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xiiij, and
- 16 pyeres of Fraunce, whyche were capytaynes of thexecer-cyte and moche stronge and valyaunte of theyr persones, & were grete lordes and noble. But of the lordes valyaunte capytaynes were more than xiiij after that I
- 20 fynde. Fyrst there was rolland, Erle of Cenonia, sone of myllon Erle and of dame berthe propre syster of kyng Charles: After hym was Olyuer Erle, sone of Reyner of gennes, which Reyner was also at thexecersyte
- 24 of kyng Charles: After hym Rychard of Normandy, Garyn duck of Lorayn, Geffroy lord of bourdeloys, Hoel Erle of Nauutes, Ogyer the danois, kyng of denmarke, Lamberd prynce of bruxellys, Naymes Duk
- 28 of bauer, Thiery due of ardanne, Basyng of beneuoy, Guy of bourgoyne, Caudeboy kyng of Fryse, Ganellon whych dyd the treson at the ende of the iij booke at rounceyuale, Sampson duk of bourgoyne: Also there
- 32 was Ryol du mauns, Alory, & guyllermet the scot and many other that were subgettes to Charles. And not-wythstondyng that they were not alwaye with hym They that I haue tofore named were alwaye redy for to

and have only reduced the ancient rime into prose,

without adding anything.

The Peers of France, though commonly said to be 12 or 13,

were more than that number.

They were Roland,

Oliver,

Richard,

Garin, Geoffrey,

Howel, Ogier,

Lambert,

Naymes,

Thiery, Basin,

Ganellon,

Sampson,

Raoul, Aloris, and Guyllermet.

doo his commaundement. And the moost parte of them that I haue tofore named were wyth hym contynuelly.

¶ Of Fyerabras how he came to exerce the-  
cersyte of Charles : capitulo [j] 4

Fierabras, son of  
Balan, was a  
mighty giant. (50)

He was king of  
Alexandria, (53)  
Babylon, Russia,  
and Jerusalem.  
(66)

This Fierabras  
rides furiously  
up to the camp of  
Charles, (76)

wishing to find  
some Christian  
to fight with him.

**T**He admyral of spayne named ballan, a paynym moche grete & puyssaunt of body and of peple, had a sone <sup>1</sup>named Fyerabras the moost meruaylous geaunt that euere was seen borne of moder, for of 8 the gretenes & hugenes of hys body and also of his strengthe to hym was none like. the whyche was kyng of Alexandrye & helde vnder hym the contree of babylone vnto the rede see, and he was lord of roussye, 12 & of coulloygne, & more ouer vnder hym was Iherusalem, & reteyned the holy sepulchre of our lord Ihesu Cryst : & by hys grete puyssaunce entred on a tyme in to Rome where he dyd moche euyl & bare away the 16 holy crowne of our lord & the holy nayles & other relyques ynoughe, Of whome thys book shal in thende recounte how they were reconerred. And he was called Fyerabras of alexandrye, whyche after that many warres 20 & bataylles were maad in Mornyonde bytwene the paynyms and the excersyte of Charles Thys fyerabras moche dyssolute came rydyng by grete furour for to fynde somme cristen man for to fyght ayenst hym ; & 24 came vnto the lyces of Kynge Charles moche furious and eschauffed as he shold fyght al armed and wel fournysshed of wepen, & was ryght euyl contente that he fonde no persone to whome he myght fyght, & nygh 28 vnto the lyces he went to beholde the armes of themperour charles <sup>2</sup>whyche were of the aygle shynnyng, And he sware by Mahomet his god & by his myzt that he wold neuer departe tyll he had foughten & 32 made batayll to somme crysten man. And he seeyng

<sup>1</sup> B viij. back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

that no man cam to hym began to crye with an hye  
 voys : “ O kyng of Parys, coward withoute hardynesse,  
 sende to Iuste ayenst me somme of thy barons of  
 4 fraunce the moost stronge & the mooste hardy, as He challenges  
Roland or  
Oliver, (96)  
 Rolland, olyuer, Thyerry, or ogyer the danoys ; &  
 swere to the by my god Mahon that I shal not refuse  
 vnto the nombre of vj or vij that they shal be receyued  
 8 of me. and yf thou make to me reffuse of thys that I or any six or  
seven French  
knights. (102)  
 of the demaunde I promyse the that tofore or it be nyȝt  
 thou shalt of me be assaylled & dyscomfyted & I shal  
 smyte of thy heed as meschaunt withoute ony fayllyng ;  
 12 and after I shal lede with me Rolland & Olyuer vnhappy,  
 meschaunt, & caytyfs. For oultragiously & folyly as euyl  
 and olde thou hast enprysed to come in to thys contreye  
 wherfro thou shalt haue cause hastely to departe.” These  
 16 wordes or semblable spoken Fyerabras wente hym vnto  
 the shadowe of a tree and laye there & dysarmed hym  
 of the armes of whyche he was cladde, and bonde his  
 hors vnto a tree. and whan he was thus at his ease he  
 20 began to crye <sup>1</sup> with an hye voys : “ o charlemayn,  
 kyng of Parys, where art thou now whome I haue  
 thys day so ofte called wythoute more lenger delaye  
 sende to Iuste ayenst me rolland or Olyuer, of whom  
 24 thou makest so grete counte and been so valyaunte, or  
 ogyer the danoys whom I haue herde preyse. And yf  
 peraventure one of them dare not come allone hardyly  
 late come the two or thre or foure of the moost valyaunt-  
 28 est and that they be courageous hardy and wel armed.  
 And yf the four dare not come late come fyue, For  
 vnto the nombre of vj of the moost valyauntest of thyn  
 excersyte I shal not refuse. And I thynke not to  
 32 retorne tyl they be confused and destroyed by me. for  
 be ye sure that it shal neuer be to me reproche that I  
 be fugytyf for ony freusshe man lyuyng. I haue here  
 tofore put to deth by the valyaunce of my persone ten

He takes off his  
arms and lies  
down under a  
tree, 90,

and repeats his  
challenge with  
threats.

He declares he has  
already slain ten  
kings in single  
combat. (108)

<sup>1</sup> C j.

kynges of grete pyssaunce, and that they coude not  
resyste ageynst my strengthe in no wyse.

¶ How Richard of Normandy sayd to  
Charles what maner man Fyerabras was : 4  
ca. iiij

Charles enquires  
who the strange  
knight is. (115)

**A**ssone as fyerabras had fynnyshed hys wordes the  
Emperour Charles whyche <sup>1</sup>wel had herde hym  
meruaylled moche of hys langage, And demaunded 8  
Rychard of Normandy what was that Turke that so had  
cryed wyth soo hye a voys vpon the valyaunce of hys  
persone. For kyng Charles sayd : “I haue wel herke-  
ened what he hath said that he shal not fayle to fyght 12  
ayenst vj of the moost valyauntest of myn excersyte.”  
To whome Rychard Duke of normandy ansuerd : “Syr  
kyng, thys is a man meruayllous ryche and one of the  
strengest borne of moder : And he is a sarasyn of so 16  
grete fyerste that he ne preyseth kyng ne erle ne none  
other persone of the world.”

Richard tells  
him. (120)

Charles swears  
that one of his  
knights shall  
accept the  
challenge. (127)

¶ Whan Charles vnderstood hym he began to clawe  
his heed, And sware by Saynt Denys of fraunce that 20  
he shold not ete ne neuer drynke tyl one of the pyeres  
of fraunce shold goo Inste ageynst hym, And demaunded  
of Rychard of Normandy how thys Paynym was  
named. ¶ Rychard answerd : “syr Emperour, this 24  
paynym nameth hym self Fyerabras, which is moche to  
redoubte and hath done moche harme to <sup>2</sup>crysten men.  
He hath slayn the Pope, hanged abbottes, monkes, and  
nonnes, and hath defiled chyrches. ¶ And he hath 28  
robbed & taken awaye the holy crowne of our lord and  
many other relyques <sup>3</sup>for whome ye take grete payne.  
And he holdeth Iherusalem in grete subiectyon And  
the holy sepulere wherin go was buryed.” Wherupon 32  
Charles ansuerd : “of thys that thou hast sayd to me I

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. or.

<sup>3</sup> C j, back.

am more angry than I was, but knowe thou for certayn  
 I shalle neuer haue Ioye tyll that my desyre be accom-  
 plysshed and that he be vaynquysshed." And of that  
 4 fayt al the frensshe men were commoened and troubled  
 And ther was not one that presented hym for to goo to  
 hym. And whan charles sawe that noo persone was of  
 courage for to goo and fyght agenst thys geaunt Fyera-  
 8 bras He sayd to Rolland: "My dere neuewe, I praye  
 that thou dyspose the for tassaylle thys turke & that  
 thou doo there thy deuoyr."

and that he will  
 never rest till  
 some one does  
 so. (129)

Charles asks  
 Roland to accept  
 the challenge,  
 (143)

¶ Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour  
 12 sodeynlye and' what it was: capitulo iiij

**W**Han themperour Charles had spoken thus cur-  
 toysly vnto his neuewe Rolland, Folyly & wyth-  
 oute reason Rolland answerd hym thus: "Fayr  
 16 vncle, speke neuer to me therof, For I had leuer that ye  
 were confused and dysmembred than I shold take  
 ar-mes or hors for to Iuste lyke as ye say. For on the  
 last day that we were so nyghe taken of the paynyns,  
 20 that is to say of moo than fyfty thousand, we yonge  
 knyghtes bare the burthen and suffred many mortal  
 strokes, of whych olyuer my felowe is quasi hurt vnto  
 the deth. For yf ye had not be socoured of vs the hole  
 24 destructyon had been of vs and thende: & whan we  
 repayred and were in our lodgys for to take reste at  
 euen, whan ye were wel dronken ye maad auaunte  
 openlye that the olde and auneyent knyghtes whyche  
 28 ye had brougt wyth you for to ayde vs had moche better  
 borne them in the fayt of arnes and had more stronge  
 bataylle than the yonge knyghtes. ¶ And every man  
 knoweth wel how I was that euenyng assembled and  
 32 wery of tranaylle that I took in that day. And by my  
 faders soule that was euyl sayd of you. ¶ And now it  
 shal be knowen how the olde & auneyent knyghtes shal

but Roland re-  
 fuses, (145)

reminding Charles  
 that he had  
 sneered at him  
 and his com-  
 panions the pre-  
 vious night. (148)

Charles in a rage  
strikes him in  
the face with his  
gauntlet. 166/

Roland draws his  
sword 168  
on his uncle.

Charles orders  
him to be  
seized, (176)

but no one dares  
to approach  
him. (181)

here them, for by god whyche ought to haue al in his  
subjectyon there is noo yonge man in my companye that  
euer shal be in my fauour and loue yf he take vpon hym  
to Iuste ageynst the Paynym." Also sone as Roulland 4  
had spoken that worde Themperour hys vncle hanyng  
moche Indignacion therat <sup>1</sup>smote hym thwarte the vysage  
wyth hys ryght gauntelet<sup>2</sup> that hys nose breste a blood  
habundauntly of the stroke. Thenne Roulland in a 8  
grete furye sette honde on hys swerde when he sawe  
hys blood, and had smeton hys vncle yf he had not be  
lette by them that were presente. And whan Charles  
sawe thentencyon of Roulland he was meruayllously 12  
abasshed & sayd: "O god of heuen, who wold haue  
thought that I shold haue had vylonye of Rollan my  
neuue whyche been knytte to-gyder in one fayth ayenst  
our aduersaryes! And he cometh remnyngt agenst me 16  
wyth affectyon mortal—He that is moost nexte of my  
blood and lignage that here is present, And that more  
sommer shold socoure me than any other! ¶ Now I  
beseche God that on the crosse snifred<sup>3</sup> passyon that this 20  
day he be punysshed as he is worthy." And this said  
in a grete furour he comaunded the frensshe men &  
sayd to them anone: "take ye hym, for I shall neuer  
ete tyl he be delyuerd to deth." Whan the frensshe 24  
men vnderstood the commaundem[en]t of Charles for to  
haue accomplysshed it that one loke vpon that other  
for to see who wold sette fyrst honde vpon hym. And  
whan Roulland sawe the fayt he withdrewe hym a litel 28  
a-parte <sup>3</sup>wyth hys swerde in hys honde, cryengt with an  
hyghe voys and sayengt to theym: "yf ye be wyse holde  
you styлле, For I make a-vowe to god that yf any of you  
mooue to come to me I shal make of hys heed two 32  
partes." wherfore there was not one that durst ne that  
was soo hardy to meue ageynst hym in malyce but were  
ryght sory & euyl contente of theyr debate. and there

<sup>1</sup> C ij.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. gauntetet.

<sup>3</sup> col. 2.



vpon the noble Ogier came swetelye to Roulland and  
 sayd to hym : " Syr Roulland, me semeth ye doo not  
 wel for to angre thus your vnele the emperour, whom  
 4 by reason ye ought aboue alle other to loue and defende  
 & also supporte." Roulland answerd, whyche thenne  
 was refrayned of hys Ire : " Syr Ogier, I promyse you  
 for a lytel fayt I was determyned to a grete outrage  
 8 wythoute aduys and enclyned, wherof now I am sory  
 and me repenteth."

Ogier interposes  
 and settles the  
 quarrel. (182)

¶ How the kyng charles and' Roulland' been  
 repreued' by the auctour and' somwhat  
 12 excused' vpon the debate aforesayd' : ca. v

**V**Pon the debate of themperour and Rolland hys  
 neuewe I wyll a lytyl tarye, and speke fyrst to  
 1 the kyng Charles, whyche haste be Instructe  
 16 syth thyn Infaney in alle sciences ful of maners digne  
 of commemoracyon : whiche knewest the constaunce of  
 the auneynts and the mutabylyte of the yonge peple.  
 why saydest thou on the euene that the auneynt and  
 20 olde knyghtes in the warre of that day had borne them  
 better than the yonge knyghtes ? And thou knewest wele  
 that Olyuer was gretely hurte by hys valyaunce, in  
 suche wyse that he kepeth hys bedde. And also Rol-  
 24 land thy neuewe had borne the grete burthen of the  
 bataylle. And yf he had spoken folily thou oughtest  
 to haue supported hys fyrst moeuyng whiche is not in  
 the puyssaunce of a man. yf thou haddest taken aduys  
 28 at the work that sayth : " Vindictam differ donec per-  
 transeat furor : That is to say thou oughtest to dylate  
 thy vengeaunce tyll the furour be passed, Thou sholdest  
 not haue smyton Rolland, Sythe whan he sayd enyl it  
 32 was wythout aduys of grete dyerescyon. thou smotest  
 hym semblably, wythout aduys he drewe hys swerde

The author's  
 reproof of Roland  
 and Charles.

Charles ought to  
 haue remembered  
 the noble deeds of  
 Roland, and  
 his youth,

and should haue  
 restrained his  
 anger, even  
 under pro-  
 vocation.

ayenst the, And though thou haddest not smeton hym  
 thou myghtest well haue reprehended hym of his offence.  
 Thou oughtest to remembre ecclesyastes whyche sayth :  
 "Nichil agas in operibus iniurie:" whan <sup>1</sup>a man re- 4  
 ceyneth wronge & Iniurye it is not good that he doo  
 that whyche he may doo. And also it is whan a per-  
 sone hath wel doon hys deuoyr, And of hym of whome  
 he ought to haue hys thanke and preysyng<sup>t</sup> is blamed, 8  
 of soo moche the more is he euyl contente and wrothe.  
 For hys fayt is reputed for nought. In lyke wyse was  
 it of Rolland whyche thought more to haue be alowed  
 & preysel for the grete deuoyr that he dyd than to here 12  
 that the Emperour sayd that tholde knyghtes had doon  
 better than the yonge. but now I wyl retorne to the, O  
 Rolland, whiche hast been so noble. Fro whens cometh  
 in the suche audaeyte to speke ageynst thyn vncle 16  
 whyche hath allwaye doon so wel to the that hys werkes  
 been worthy to be remembre<sup>d</sup>? To hym which is  
 emperour Kynge of Fraunce and lord of so grete creneur,  
 and to thyn vncle as taken debate and ansuerd out- 20  
 rageously was it not reason that thou oughtest to suffre  
 hym, and he not the? yf he smote the wyth hys gaunte-  
 let by maner of correctyon oughtest thou to drawe thy  
 swerde to hym? Thou hast not in remembraunce the 24  
 obeyssaunce of ysaae whyche he had to hys fader: thou  
 were not aduysed of thys that thapostle saith: "ye  
 yonge men <sup>2</sup>kepe your courage And put not the furour  
 therof in exersite." yf the Emperour for hys dysporte 28  
 preysed thauncyent knyghtes yet sayd he not that thou  
 haddest not doon wel. ¶ And Saynt Poule sayth in  
 hys epystle, that a man shold not repreue hym that is  
 more auweyent than hym self, but a man ought to en- 32  
 tretene and supporte hym as his fader. but the dede is  
 suche that a persone reputeth not an Iniurye to hym  
 sayd to be lytel ne yf he be hurte that he be pacyent:

Roland ought to  
 have remembered  
 the respect he  
 owed to his uncle,

according to the  
 words of St. Paul:  
 'Rebuke not an  
 elder, but entreat  
 him as a father.'

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> C iij.

wherefore it is good<sup>e</sup> to thynke tofore or he speke it, And gladly to doo ne say thyng<sup>e</sup> but yf it be good<sup>e</sup>.

¶ How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agenst  
4 Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was  
hurt, after many wordes : capitulo vj

8 **M**Oche wroth was Charles wyth Rolland<sup>e</sup> hys  
neuwe And sayd<sup>e</sup> to hys Peres of Fraunce :  
“ Lordes, O how I am in dyuers thoughtes of  
my neuwe Rolland<sup>e</sup>, whyche wold<sup>e</sup> haue Iniuryed<sup>e</sup> my  
persone, To whome I had<sup>e</sup> more affyaunce than to ony  
man lyuyng<sup>e</sup> ! I wote neuer whome I ought to loue, ne  
12 whome I ought to hate. And yet further<sup>1</sup>more I haue  
noo man now present for to Iuste ageynst thys Paynym  
that hath chalenged<sup>e</sup> me.” ¶ Thenne aroos vp tofore  
hym Naymes the Duc of bayyers whych sayd to the  
16 kyng : “ Syr Emperour, I praye you & requyre that ye  
leue these wordes noyouses. Alle shal be wel And  
another shal goo Iuste ageynst the sarasyn.” But neuer-  
theles the kyng<sup>e</sup> was in grete thought, For there was  
20 none that wold<sup>e</sup> goo ne take it on hym. ¶ Incontynente  
the tydynges of the debate of charles and<sup>e</sup> Rolland<sup>e</sup> were  
brought to Olyuer, whyche was in another place seek  
in hys bedde. And also how Fyerabras was comen  
24 And that there was no persone present wyth the kyng<sup>e</sup>  
for to Iuste ayenst hym. And hereupon the noble erle  
Olyuer, replenysshed<sup>e</sup> wyth a noble courage and wyth  
an ardaunt desyre for to playse the kyng<sup>e</sup>, whan he had<sup>e</sup>  
28 herde these tydynges aroos oute of hys bedde and<sup>e</sup> began  
for to scratche an<sup>d</sup> strayne hys armes and<sup>e</sup> to fele yf it  
were possyble to hym to bere armes.

And he thus dooyng<sup>e</sup> his woundes began newly to  
32 opene that the blood<sup>e</sup> sprange oute of the dystresse.  
¶ And not wythstondyng<sup>e</sup> alle that as he that sette not  
moche therby

Charles appeals to his knights to settle who shall accept the challenge. (190)

Naymes tries to cheer him. (196)

Oliver hears how none can be found to accept the challenge. (206)

He calls for his arms. (210)

His wounds break out afresh.

For the grete loue and desyre <sup>1</sup>that he had to the kyng<sup>e</sup> [he] dyd do bynde his woundes the beste wyse he myght and after sayd to garin his squyer that he shold brynge hym his armes, For he wold arme hym 4 for to goo Iust ayenst the saresyn. To whome garyn sayd: "syr Olyuer, in thonour of god take pyte of your owne persone. For me thynketh ye wil willynggly slee your self." Olyuer sayd to hym: "do my commaunde- 8 ment no man ought to tarye to seehe his honour and anauncement and renomme. And wyth good ryght I may employe my self for to serue my prynce and syn- guler lord, and sythe that I see that noo freusshe man 12 anaunceth hym I shall not faylle at the poynte, for the comyn prouerbe sayth: 'At nede a man knoweth his frende.' Now anone brynge to me myn armes wyth- oute more taryeng<sup>e</sup>." And so Olyuer dyd doo arme 16 hym by the sayd Garyn his squyer, whiche sette on his legge barnays, his hawberke, his helme, and his har- nays necessarye. And whan he was alle furnysshed he took his swerde named hauteclere, the whyche swerde 20 he moche loued.

After brought he hym his hors the moost speeyall that he loued whyche was named Ferraut despaygne. And whan he was brought tofore hym alle saddled <sup>2</sup>and 24 brydded The Ioly and gentyl Olyuer sprange in to the saddle wythoute settinge foot in the styrop, and sette his shelde at his ease and in his honde a myghty spere & sharpe whych garyn took to hym. And after 28 smote the hors wyth the spores so harde that in the lepyng<sup>e</sup> he maad his hors to bowe vnder hym. It was a good syght to see Olyuer on horsback wyth a moche fyers countenaunce. And they that were presente by- 32 sought Ihesu Cryst our redemar that he shold take hym in his kepyng. For in that day he shold fyght ageynst the moost stronge and moost fyers paynym that euer

and his esquire  
remonstrates with  
him, 220.  
but in vain.

Oliver insists,

and Garin helps  
him to arm, 234

and brings him  
his house. 240)

Oliver mounts,  
(241)

takes his arms,

<sup>1</sup> C iij. back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

was born of moder or euer was in thys world, That is  
 Fyerabras of Alexandrye, sone of the admyral Ballant  
 of spayne, of whome we shalle see by the playsyr of  
 4 god the termynacyon after. ¶ He beyng thus on  
 horsback in grete poynt vpon hys vysage and vpon his  
 body he maad the sygne of the crosse in the name of  
 Ihesus and commaunded hym self to the wyll of god, commends him-  
 self to God, (256).  
 8 whyche that day shold be to hym in comforte and ayde  
 after hys good entencion. And of enery man he was  
 byseen and knowen that he had hys hert hole in hys  
 body for to do grete feat of armes: & so rode forth and rides  
 to Charles's  
 tent. (257)  
 12 vnto the lyces of <sup>1</sup>themperour Charles with whom was  
 the Due naymes, guyllam de scot, Gerard de mondy-  
 dyer, and Ogyer the danoyes, wyth other barons of  
 fraunce<sup>2</sup>: & emonge alle other there was Rolland moche Roland regrets  
 his refusal of the  
 challenge. (260)  
 16 sorouful of the wordes that he had ayenst his vnle the  
 kyng, for gladly he wold haue doo the bataylle yf he  
 had not wythsayed it tofore the kyng whan he was  
 requyred. Thus Olyuer beyng seen tofore Charles was  
 20 moche alowed & preysed of one and other & moche  
 affectuously byholden. And the said olyuer put down  
 his helme and byhelde the lodgyce of the kyng, And  
 reuerently came & saleded hym, and after sayd to hym: Oliver salutes  
 the king,  
 24 "Noble emperour, puyssaunt, redoubted, and my syn-  
 guler lord, I beseche you to here me ye know wel that  
 there ben iij yeres past that I haue been in your  
 seruyce and haue had of you no rewarde ne wages. I  
 28 you supplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde  
 me wyth a yefte that I shal desyre." To whom the  
 kyng ansuerd: "Olyuer, noble erle, I assure to you by  
 my fayth that I shal do it wyth a good wyll. And  
 32 assone as we shall be in fraunce there is neyther cyte,  
 borugh, ne castel that ye wyl haue ne none other thyng  
 that to me is possyble & faysyble that shal be denyed  
 to you." "Syr kyng," said <sup>3</sup>Olyuer, "I am not comen

<sup>1</sup> C iijj.

<sup>2</sup> *Lit.* Freunce.

<sup>3</sup> col. 2.

and demands to be allowed to accept the challenge of Fierabras. (257)

Charles remonstrates with him. (252)

Charles positively refuses his permission to Oliver,

but Ganellon insists that,

according to the law, Oliver must fight Fierabras.

Charles is obliged to consent,

to you for to demaunde suche thyng. But I demaunde  
and requyre of you the bataylle ayenste the paynym so  
oute of mesure. And at thys houre I graunte to you  
alle my goodes and seruyces & for this yefte to be quyte 4  
of them." whan the frensshe men had herde Olyuer  
they were all abasshed of hys prowesse & eche of them  
loked on other and said emonge them: "A! saynt  
marie, what hath Olyuer founden, whyche is hurt quasi 8  
to deth & wyl now goo to fyght and bataylle?" "O  
Olyuer," answerd charles, "thou hast loste thy wytte,  
For thou knowest wel that wyth a spere heed square  
and shiarpe thou hast be hurte and wounded mortally 12  
and now thou wylt abandonne thy self to a gretter  
daunger mortall. beware! Retorne, and take thy reste.  
For truste well that for noo thyng I shal suffre the to  
do that fayte sythen that thou arte not presently in 16  
helthe of thy body." Vpon thys poynte aroos ganellon  
and Andrewe the traytres that dyd the trayson as the  
laste book shall make mencyon.

¶ And Ganellon sayd: "Syr Kyng, ye haue or- 20  
deygued in Fraunce that it, whyche by ij of vs is  
lugeð, ought to be holden, and so is it that we ij Iuge  
& ordeyne that Olyuer shalle goo and doo<sup>1</sup> the bataylle."  
wherfore the kyng ful of maltalente, wyth coloure 24  
chaunged, answerd: "Ganellon, thou arte of euyl dys-  
posyeyon wythoute spekyng that whyche is honourable.  
Sythe it so is he shal doo the bataylle & it may none  
otherwyse be but that he be dede. But I swere to the 28  
my trouth that yf he be taken or put to deth al the  
gold of the world shal not saue the but that thou shalt  
dye a vylaynous deth & I shal destroye thy lygnage."  
"Syr Emperour," sayd Ganellon, "god and our lady 32  
kepe me;" & after the traytre sayd to hym self secretly:  
"God forbede that euer Olyuer reterne but that he haue  
hys heed smyton of." and whan thempour sawe that

<sup>1</sup> C. iij. back.

he myght not gaynsaye but that olyuer shold<sup>1</sup> goo and  
 doo the bataylle ayenst Fyerabras he sayd: "I praye  
 god<sup>1</sup> of the fymamente gyue the grace to do wel & that  
 4 thou mayst retorne wyth Ioye," And took hys ryght  
 gloue and threwe it to Olyuer, the which he receyued<sup>1</sup>  
 wyth grete desyre & wylle in thankynge hym ryght  
 humbly and takynge leue of al moche swetely.

and gives Oliver  
his glove.

8 ¶ How Olyuer was requyred<sup>1</sup> by his fader  
 reynner that he shold not fyght wyth the  
 geaunt, but for al that he went forth:  
 ca. vij

12 **W**Han that Olyuer was lycenced<sup>1</sup> for to goo do  
 hys bataylle and was redy to departe, Reyner  
 of genes hys fader came to the kyng and by  
 grete compassyon kneled down at hys feet and sayd:  
 16 "Syr kyng, I crye you mercy haue pyte of my sone  
 and me. I say as for me ye wyl al dyscomforte me  
 whan I see that my sone gooth to perdyceyon seeynge  
 the daunger that hys persone is in. I say also that ye  
 20 take pyte of his presumptuous yongthe, of hys desyre  
 ouer couetous, and of hys body wounded<sup>1</sup> daungerously.  
 ye knowe wel that a man that is hurte so sore and that  
 hath loste of hys blood may not wel endure bataylle."

Reyner appeals to  
Charles not to  
allow Oliver to  
fight,

24 But Reyner loste hys payne, For the kyng had gyuen  
 to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence, And not-wyth-  
 stondynge these wordes doubted<sup>1</sup> no thyng but that he  
 shold wel do hys denoyr and valyauntly. And yet  
 28 ageyn reynner requyred the kyng and sayd: "Syr kyng,  
 in thonour of hym that for vs deye<sup>1</sup> on the crosse  
 suffre not my sone to Iust. Alas! whan I shal haue  
 lost my sone where shal I become? and ye may wel  
 32 fynde other for to take thys bataylle in honde." Them-  
 perour Charles answerd: "Reyner, ye knowe wel that

but in vain.

Reyner again  
protests and  
appeals.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

Oliver bids his  
comrades fare-  
well.

Charles gives him  
his blessing.

I may not gaynsaye that I haue to hym graunted. For  
in sygne of ly-leence I haue gyuen hym my gloue,  
wherof Olyuer was contente." & thenne Olyuer sayd  
wyth an hye voys tofore alle the people: "Syr kyng, 4  
and alle ye barons, I beseche you alle of a yefte, that  
is that I requyre you yf I haue mesprysed or mysdoon  
in dede or in worde ony ayenst you that in the name  
of god ye pardonne me." whan the frenssh men herde 8  
hym so speke There was none but that he wepte ten-  
derly, and soo takyng<sup>t</sup> hys leue wyth his standard<sup>t</sup>  
reysed<sup>t</sup> The kyng<sup>t</sup> blessyd hym in makyng the sygne of  
the crosse, And wepyng comaunded hym in the kepyng 12  
of the fader of the sone & of the holy ghost.

¶ How Olyuer spake to Fyerabras, whyche  
sette noo thyng by hym, with other dis-  
putacions: capitulo viij 16

Oliver rides up to  
Fierabras, (344)

and demands his  
name. (351)

Fierabras tells  
him, and boasts  
of his exploits.  
(352)

O Lyuer departed & rode forth on hys waye & taryed  
not tyl that he cam where as fyerabras was, which  
was al vnarmed and laye in the shadowe, and  
whan Olyuer had aresonned hym The paynym turned 20  
his heed ayenst hym and dayned<sup>t</sup> vnnethe to loke on hym.  
For he settet<sup>t</sup> nought by hym by-cause he was so lytel  
of stature to the regarde of Fyerabras. And thenne  
Olyuer said to the sarasyn: "Awake, thou, <sup>2</sup>thou hast 24  
thys day so ofte called vs that I am come hyther. And  
I praye the that thou telle to me thy name." Fyerabras  
answerd<sup>t</sup> to hym: "by Mahoun, my god, to whome I  
owe honour I am the moost ryche man that is in the 28  
world borne. Fyerabras of alexandrye am I named: I  
am he that thou knowe that dyd<sup>t</sup> doo destroye rome  
your cyte, & slewe the Pope and many other and bare  
awaye the relyques that I there founde, For which ye 32  
take grete payne and laboure to reconer them. And



furthermore I holde Iherusalem that fayre cyte, and the  
 sepulere in whych your god rested." Olyuer answerd :  
 "by my fayth, I haue gladly herde the say that whyche  
 4 thou hast sayd. And yf it be trouthe that thou hast  
 sayd for certeyn now thou mayst repute thy self well  
 vnhappy and myschaunt. Now wythoute more talkyng<sup>1</sup> Oliver bids him  
 make the redy and arme the . seest thou yonder the arm himself.  
 8 frensshe men that doo no thyng but byholde vs ? (384)  
 wherfore depresshe the, or<sup>1</sup> by the god on whome I by-  
 leue I shalle smyte the there as thou lyst." whan Fyer-  
 abras herde that he spake soo hardyly he began to  
 12 lawhe and sayd : "I am wel admeruaylled fro whens  
 that cometh to the suche presumpeion to speke so  
 hastyly, but for trouthe I shal not remeue fro hens  
 tyll <sup>2</sup>I knowe who thou arte and of what lygnage.  
 16 And whan thou hast tolde to me thy name thou shalt  
 see me armed." Olyuer answerd to hym : "O paynem, Fierabras asks his  
 know thou for trouthe that or it be nyght thou shalt name and rank.  
 knowe what I am. by me sendeth to the charles the (388)  
 20 Emperour, my redoubted lord, that for the conservacion<sup>3</sup> Oliver calls on  
 of thy body and the saluacyon of thy soule thou leue Fierabras to  
 the creaunce of thy god Mahoun, & of other ydolles, renounce Maho-  
 whyche ben but abusyon and decepeyon : whyche haue met, (395)  
 24 neyther wytte, ne reason, ne feelyng, ne good vnder-  
 stondyng . wherfore that thou enelyne the to consente and repeats the  
 and thynke fro hens forth to byleue in god almyghty articles of the  
 the holy Trynyte, the fader, the sone, and the holy Christian faith.  
 28 ghooost, iij persones in one essence & of one wyll : (398)  
 whyche hath made heuen & erthe and al that there  
 in dwelleth : whyche for our saluacion wold be borne  
 of the vyrgyn marie. & whan thou shalt haue this  
 32 byleue wyth the holy sacrament of baptesme, which is  
 vpon this establysshed, thou mayst come to the glorie  
 eternal. and yf thou do not lyke as I haue taught the

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* For.

<sup>2</sup> C v, back.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* consecration.

Fierabras is surprised at his presumption, (102)

and asks him to describe Charles and the douzepares. (108)

Oliver tells him that Charles is without an equal,

and again challenges him. (125)

I am here redy to doo bataylle ayenst the, and of two thynges thou must doo that one. Fyrst, that thou departe oute of thys contree as ouercomen & to bere nothyng with the, or thou must <sup>1</sup>come and fyght ayenst 4 me For teuhaunce thy body & to susteyne thy fals lawe." Fyerabras answerd: "whatsomeuer thou arte thou arte ouer presumptuous to haue Inteneyon for to fyght ageynst me. For surely yf thou see me on 8 fote wythoute armes thou shalt be wel hardy yf thou tremble not for drede to approche me. But by the godd in whome thou bylenest Say to me what man is Charle- mayn, For it is long sythe I herde hym fyrst preyed 12 and redoubted in many contrees: and also that I may haue tydynges of rolland & Olyuer, of Ogger the danoyes and of gerarde de mondydier, For by my trouthe I wold fayn be acqueynted with them." Olyuer ansuerd: 16 "Paynym, vpon that thou me demaundest I telle to the that Charles themperour is so grete a maystre that there is no man in the World may compare to hym, as wel for the valure of hys persone, of hys counceyl, & of hys 20 maners, as of hys pyssaunce and rychesses Innumerable of regarde. Of hys newewe Rolland he is wythoute pere, Olyuer lytel lasse than he; and as for the other freusshe men emonge al people humayn they be valy- 24 aunte men. but thyse wordes haue noo place here, depesshe the and arme the, For by the godd on whom I bylene yf thou <sup>2</sup>auaunce the not I shialle smyte the wyth thys swerde of stele." Fyerabras began to lyfte vp hys 28 heed and sayd: "By my godd mahomet, yf I thought not that it shold be my dyslionour I shold now smyte of thy heed." Olyuer ansuerd: "I praye the leue thys pletyng, For or it be euen thou shalt knowe what I am, 32 For certeyn I haue enteneyon to plunge my swerde in thy bely." where vpon Fyerabras was not wroth, so moche noble was he, and rested hys heed vpon hys

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> C vj.

shelde and sayd to Olyuer: "I sette not therby, but I praye the telle to me thy name & thy lygnage."

Pierabras asks Oliver his name. (441)

Olyuer sayd to hym: "my name is garyn, and am borne in perrogort, sone of a man called Iosue, whyche

Oliver tells him he is Garin, a poor knight. (443)

came that other day in to fraunce where I was adoubed knyght by the noble kyng Charles and am ordeyned for to defende hys ryght & also to fyght ayenst the.

8 wherfor conclude wythoute more taryeng & arme the & take thy hors, for I am redy to doo the bataylle yf thou be soo hardy to abyde me." Fyerabras wold not consente to the bataylle, For hym thought that olyuer was

12 to litel to Iuste ayenst hym and sayd to hym: "Garyn, I demaunde of the wherfore is not comen hyther rolland ne Olyuer or Gerard or Ogyer, whyche been of so grete renomnee<sup>1</sup> as I haue herd say?" Olyuer answered:

Fierabras asks him why Ogier or Oliver has not come to meet him. (451)

16 "The cause wherfore they be not comen to the is for they sette nought by the & they haue desdayn to come, but I am comen to the as he that taketh noo regarde to theyr Inteneyon and shal do the bataylle ayenst the yf thou wylt abyde it. But I swere to the by saynt Petre the appostle of Ihesu Cryst that yf thou arme the not I shal smyte the to the deth wyth this darte that I holde in my honde." "Garyn," answerd Fyerabras, "I

Oliver says it is because they despise him. (457)

24 shal say to the that sythe I was adoubed knyght I Iusted neuer but ayenst a kyng, an erle, or a baron of grete valure, and thou art departed of a lowe hous for to say that I shold haue adoo wyth the: it shold be to me ouer grete dyschonour yf thou were put to deth by me. but for the goodwylle that I knowe in the whych is moche noble I am contente that thou smyte me and I shal falle down to therthe, and take thou my hors & my shelde and goo thou to kyng Charles and say to hym that thou hast vaynquysshed me. And yf I do this for the I do to the grete amytye And thou oughtest for this tyme to be contente." ¶ On whiche wordes Olyuer coude

Fierabras says he never fights except with a king or a noble. (463)

but offers to give up his horse and shield to Oliver. (479)

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

not haue pacyence but that he sayd to hym : " Thy fayt  
lyeth in noo thyng but in wordes full of <sup>1</sup>folysse pre-  
sumpsyon. I am of thys intencion that byfore euen-  
songe tyme I shal make thy hede flee from thy sholdres. 4  
Oliver threatens  
him. (184) I am none hare ne wylde beest for to be aferde, And  
thou knowest the comyn prouerbe that sayth that there  
is a tyme of spekyng and tyme of beyng style, And of  
one and that other one may be reputed a fool. Now 8  
come of & depesse the of that I haue sayd the or  
ellys I shal slee the." Fyerabras answerd : " I desyre  
ne praye the of no thyng but that thou sende to me  
Rolland or olyuer or one of thother knyghtes of the 12  
Fierabras asks for  
one of the douze-  
peres. rounde table. And yf one of them be not hardy for to  
come, late come ij or iij or iiij attones For by me they  
shal not be refused." In makynge these desputacyons  
Olyuer which sore was hurte the day tofore his woundes 16  
He sees the blood  
run from Oliver's  
wound, (187) opened by force of rydyng and of chauffyng & bledde  
sore so that fyerabras sawe the blood renne down by is  
knee, And demaunded of hym fro whens came that  
blood that soo renneth down to therthe : " I trowe thou 20  
and asks if he is  
wounded? Oliver  
says, "No." be hurte." Olyuer sayd : " I am not hurte but my hors  
is harde atte spore wherof he is bloody." Fyerabras be-  
hele & sawe it was not of the hors and answerd :  
" Certes, garyn, thou sayest not sooth for thou art hurte 24  
in thy body & I knowe it wel by the blood that cometh  
down by thy knee : but see what I shal do for the :  
there been two flagons hangyng on the saddle of my hors  
whyche ben full of the bawme that I conquered in 28  
Therusalem, & it is the same of whyche your god was  
enbawmed wyth whan he was taken down fro the  
crosse and layed in hys graue. hye the, and goo  
drynke therof, & I promyse to the that Incontynent 32  
thou shalte be hole and thezme thou shalt mowe defende  
the wel wythoute daunger." ¶ Olyuer ansuerd that  
he wold not & that he sayd was folye. Thenne

Fierabras offers  
to cure him with  
the holy balm,  
(510) but Oliver re-  
fuses.

<sup>1</sup> C vj. back.<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

fyerabras ansuerd that he was a fool wythoute reason,  
And that it myght happe to repente hym.

¶ How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded'  
4 arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous  
swerdes, And' how olyuer named' his name :  
ca. ix

8 **W**Han fyerabras had long abyden lyeng' wyth-  
oute arysyng' for Olyuer he satte vp and' after sayd : " Garyn, I demaunde the wyth-  
oute hydyng' of what strengthe is Rolland & Olyuer  
that been soo moche redoubted' of paynems, & of what  
12 gretenes ben they of ? " Olyuer answerd : " as towelhyng  
to rolland he is a lytel lasse of body than <sup>1</sup> I am, but of  
courage he is right hardy to fyght and' so chyualrous  
that there is no man lyuyng in the world lyke to hym.  
16 For he neuer faught yet ayenst ony man in the world  
but he vaynquysshed' hym. and as for Olyuer thou  
mayst wel appereyue that he is a man moche semblable  
and' lyke to me and of the same gretenes that I am."  
20 Thenne sayd Fyerabras : " by the fayth that I owe to  
my god appollyn & to Termagaunt thou tellest to me a  
thyng wherof I am moche abasshed'. For yf they  
were suche foure as thou tellest to me, I wolde not refuse  
24 them ne leue them tyl I had put them to deth wyth my  
swerde." Olyuer coude no lenger forbere ne haue  
pacyence vnto the delayes of fyerabras but made redy  
to smyte hym, wherfore Fyerabras sayd to hym : " thou  
28 wylt haue no pyte on thyn owne persone,<sup>2</sup> By mahoun  
my god yf I aryse & take my hors Charles thy kyng' ne  
alle thy goddes<sup>3</sup> shal not redeme the but that thou shalt  
Incontynente be slayn. For onely yf thou see me tofore  
32 the on my feet thou shalt be moche corageous yf thou  
tremble not for fere."

Fierabras asks  
him to describe  
Roland and  
Oliver. (525)

Oliver tells him.

Fierabras says he  
would not be  
afraid of four  
such. (536)

<sup>1</sup> C vij.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* personr.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* goodes.

Oliver at last  
induces Fierabras  
to rise. (516)

He is 15 feet  
high.

He bids Oliver go  
back and send  
Roland, or Ogier,  
(562)

but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras asks  
Oliver to help him  
to arm.

Oliver does so.

Was not this a  
noble example of  
chivalry and  
courtesy?

¶ Olyuer answerd: "thou hast vaunted the ouer-  
longe to doo thyng whiche thou neuer sawest in thy  
lyue. For better it were to speke by mesure, for by  
ouer <sup>1</sup>moche spekyng<sup>2</sup> otherwyse than trouthe may 4  
brynge the soone to myschyeff." Herof was fyerabras  
strongely despyteous And roos on hys feet in a grete  
fyersnes, whyche was by comyn estymacyon xv foot  
longe. And yf he wold haue be baptysed and byleue in 8  
Ihesu Cryst ther had neuer be seen a man of his valure.  
And whan he was a-foot he had grete dysplaysyr by  
cause he had not a valyaunte man to Iuste agenst hym,  
and sayd to Olyuer: "In trouthe I haue grete pyte of 12  
thyn affaire for the noblesse of the courage that I see in  
the. I am yet contente for this present tyme that thou  
retorne And sende to me Rolland, or Olyuer, or Ogyer,  
or Gerard de mondydier, and expressly say to Olyuer 16  
that I shall not passe thys anauntgarde tyl I haue  
conquerd hym." Olyuer myght no lenger abyde the  
paynym for yf it had not be for hys honour he had  
smyten hym dyuers tymes vnarmed. And whan he 20  
must nedes fyght Fyerabras called Olyuer and prayed  
hym that he wold helpe to arme hym. Olyuer de-  
maunded yf he myght truste hym. Fyerabras ansuerd:  
"helpe me hardyly, For I swere and assure the that 24  
neuer whyle I lyue shal I be traytour to no man  
lyuyng." And vpon that promyse olyuer dyd his  
diligence <sup>2</sup>to arme hym, and he took fyrst lether of  
arabye and cladde hym therwyth, & after hys cote & 28  
his habergeon of stele wele boucled & polysshed: &  
after sette on hys heel an helme garnysshed wyth  
precyous stones rychely. But wel consydered the  
facyon of thys paynym and of this cristen man there 32  
was grete loyalte & curtosye bytwene them whyche  
were assembled for to make mortal warre and eche to  
slee other, and yet they dyd eche to other synguler

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> C vij. back.

seruyce. Fyrst, the paynym had grete pyte for to  
 destroye Olyuer For he was not hys pere ne egal to  
 the regarde of hys persone. And on that other parte  
 4 whan he sawe hym hurte and the blood descende to  
 therthe he wold haue gyuen to hym of the precyous  
 bawme. Semblably Olyuer, whan he fonde hym dys-  
 armed he had slayne hym wythoute grete payne yf he  
 8 had wold, and after he was soo curtoys that he ayded  
 to arme hym that shold fyzt ayenst hym. ¶ O, what  
 grete loyalte of noblesse was bytwene them whyche  
 were of fayth and creaunce contrarye! I suppose that  
 12 god shold be wel pleased yf there were suche confyaunce  
 emonge crysten men and so ful of naturel noblesse.  
 But I retorne ageyn to my mater. Whan Fyerabras  
 was wel armed he than-<sup>1</sup>ked moche Olyuer, And after  
 16 gyrde hys swerde named plourance.<sup>2</sup> and in the arson  
 of his sadyl he had tweyne other of whom that one was  
 named baptysme and that other grabam, the whyche  
 swerdes were maad in suche wyse that there was none  
 20 harnoys but they wold breke and cutte a-sondre. And  
 who that wyl demaunde the manyer how they were  
 made & by whom [I wyl saye] after that whyche I  
 haue founden by wrytyng. ¶ On a tyme there were  
 24 thre brethern of one fader engendred, of whome that  
 one was named Galaus, that other Munyfycaus, & the  
 thyrd was called Agnisiax. These iij brethern made  
 ix swerdes, eche of them thre. Agnisiax the thyrd  
 28 brother maad the swerde named baptesme, whiche  
 had the pomel of gold and wel enameld, & also  
 plourance,<sup>2</sup> and after Grabam; whyche thre swerdes  
 fyerabras had as I haue sayd. Munyficans, that other  
 32 brother, made another swerde whyche was named  
 durandal, Whyche Rolland had. that other was called  
 sauuognye and that other Cortan whyche Ogger the  
 danoy had. ¶ And galaus, that other brother, maad

Would that there  
 were such between  
 all Christian  
 men!

Fierabras takes  
 his three swords,

made by one of  
 three brothers,

by another of  
 whom Durandal  
 and Cortan were  
 made,

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* plousance.

and by the third  
Joyous and  
Floberge.

Fierabras takes  
with him the two  
vessels of balm.

Of the nature of  
his horse.

Fierabras wishes  
Oliver to retire.  
(556)

Oliver refuses.  
(565)

Fierabras con-  
fines Oliver on his  
faith and loyalty  
to reveal his true  
name. (637)

the swerd that was named Floberge, another called haulteclere, and that other Ioyouse, whyche Charle- mayn had for a grete speecyalte. and these <sup>1</sup>iiij brethern aforesayd were smythes & wrought the sayd swerdes. 4  
And in thys poynte Fyerabras mounted on hors backe And took hys two barylles by hym ful of bawme, And henge aboute his necke his shelde whiche was heuy and bended wyth yron and stele by meruayllous strengthe. 8  
And in the myddle of the same shelde was paynted hys god Appollyn. and after that he had commaunded hym to hys god he took his spere in hys honde, whyche was sharpe & mortally heded with stele. It was meruaylle 12  
to see the corpulence of the sayd Paynym which sat on hys hors named feraunt of spayne, grete, thycke, & pommeltyd, whyche had a speecyall condycyon : For whan his mayster in fyghtyng put to the grounde hys aduer- 16  
sarye this hors maad gretter warre wythout comparyson than hys mayster. and thus they beyng on horsback Fyerabras sayd to Olyuer : “O garyn, gracyous and curtoys, yet I admoneste the for the gentylnesse that 20  
thou hast doon to me that thou wilt retorne without fyghtyng, For I haue pyte of thy valyaunte courage.” Olyuer answerde : “alwaye thou spekest of grete folye for I shal not departe for to be in daunger to be dys- 24  
membred. For I am not he that thou wenest to make aferde : for <sup>2</sup>by the helpe of the blessyd Ihesus thys day shalt thou be yelden or deed or lyuyng vnto charles the emperour.” Whan Olyuer had so spoken Fyerabras 28  
was meruayllously abasshed of thys man that wold not lete for menace that he maad to hym, but wold haue the bataylle ayenst hym & sayd to hym : “Thou art a crysten man and hast grete fayth at the mysteryes by 32  
you ordeyned, but I coniuere the by the fonte in whyche thou were baptysed, and by the fayth that thou hast gyuen to the crosse wheron thy god henge and was

<sup>1</sup> C viij.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.



naylled, And by the loyalte that thou owest to charles  
 themperour, to rolland, and to the other pyeres of  
 fraunce, thou say and telle to me the veryte of thy ryght  
 4 name and of thy lygnage." Olyuer answerd: " Certes,  
 Paynem, he that enduced the to speke to me in suche  
 wyse hath wel taught the, For gretter ne more hyely  
 myghtest thou not adiure me. Wherfore knowe thou  
 8 that I am Olyuer the sone of Reyner, the Erle of Genes, Oliver tells him,  
(659)  
 the moost especyal felowe of rolland, and am one of the  
 twelue peres." " In fayth," sayd Fyerabras, " I alwaye  
 thought wel that thou were another than thou saydest  
 12 to me, seen thyn ardaunt courage and that I coude not  
 make the aferde vpon the fayt of bataylle. And how,  
 sir Oliuer, <sup>1</sup>are ye hurte in the body? it shold be grete  
 dyshonour for me to ouerecome you in bataylle & destroye  
 16 you. For I acounte you but a dede man whyche shold  
 be a grete reproche, wherfore retorne ageyn for we haue  
 don for this tyme: For alle the golde in the worlde I  
 wold not doo suche a shame as to Iuste ayenst you."  
 20 Thenne ansuerd Olyuer: " certeynlye ye shal. For by  
 my hede whan we shal be assembled ye shal haue no  
 courage to Iape ne playe wyth me for I shal make you  
 wel to fele that I am noo dede man." And after Olyuer  
 24 admonested hym swetely in this manere and sayd:  
 " O paynym, or we procede any ferther now I admonest  
 the that thou byleue in god of heuen almyghty whiche  
 hath made the and fourmed, to whome al thyng owen  
 28 honoure and synguler creaunce. For he that taketh  
 not aduys is borne in an euyl houre. And forsake  
 Mahoun and thy goddes ful of abuse and decepyon, &  
 dyspose the to be baptysed, & thou shalt haue to thy  
 32 frende the grete charles and a speeyall felowe of Rolland  
 the chyualrous. And furthermore al the dayes of my  
 lyf I shal neuer forsake thy companye." fyerabras  
 ansuerd to hym: " thou remembrest a grete folye.

wherupon Fiera-  
 bras presses to  
 retire on account  
 of his wound.

Oliver again begs  
 Fierabras to be-  
 come Christian.

<sup>1</sup> C viij, back.

The Saracen  
refuses.

For for no thyng<sup>1</sup> I shalld not bylene in your god ne shal<sup>1</sup> forsake ne abandoune Mahoun. But on thys day yf thou arte frende of rolland, as thou sayest, so desplaysaunt ne sory was he neuer as I shal make hym for 4 the."

¶ How Olyuer and fyerabras began to fyzt, & of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, & of other maters : capitulo x 8

Pierabras offers  
Oliver some of  
the balm,

but he refuses it.

The fight begins.  
(602)

The French pray  
for Oliver's  
success,

and especially  
Charles.

At the first onset  
their spears are  
broken,

Fyerabras & olyuer were longe on horsback and it was so that fyerabras wold not lete hys hors renne ageynst Olyuer, But sayd : "my frende, I praye the þat thou drynke of my barylles & by the 12 vertue of the bawme that is therein Incontynent thou shalt be heled & shal mowe wel defende thy self ayenst me." "God forbede," sayd olyuer, "that by drynke thou be conquerd of me but by franke bataylle and 16 harnoyss fourbyssed." And thys sayd they lete theyr horses renne wyth a grete courage for to Iuste at vter- aunce. And as they came that one ageynst that other the frensshe men whyche were in their lodgys had grete 20 fere and drede leste it shold mysfalle to Olyuer. And emonge al other charles al wepyng sayd : "O blessyd Ihesus, I requyre the that at this stroke thou haue pyte of Olyuer my<sup>2</sup> baron in suche wyse that I may see hym 24 ageyn alyue & in helthe!" and after feruently came in to hys chapel hydynge his vysage wyth hys mantel and kneled before the crosse and embraced the crucifyx wyth grete teeres, sayenge : "My lord god, of whome I 28 see here the remembraunce, I byseeche the to helpe Olyuer, whyche for the exaltacon of the crysten fayth is in daunger." Thus in contemplayon of Charles fyerabras and olyuer gaf so grete strokes vpon theyr 32 sheldes that the hedes of their speres were by force bowed and entied that the fyre sprange out on al

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> D j.

sydes, and the shaftes of theyr speres were trouchonned that the pyeces flewe in the ayer. The reynes of the brydles of theyr horses wente oute of theyr hondes.

4 Bothe tweyne were so astoned of the stroke and theyr eyen so troubled that in a grete whyle they knewe not on whos syde they were torned, and after that bothe were comen to them self Fyerabras drewe plouraunce

and both are stunned.

8 hys swerde that henge by hys syde, And Olyuer took hantleclere meruayllously shynnyng & cam vpon Fyerabras and on hyghe on hys helme gaf hym so grete a stroke that the floures and precyous stones wherof it

Oliver cuts off a part of Fierabras' helmet, 616.

12 was ennobled and garnysshed made to flee to the ground; and with the same stroke in descendyng he touched hys sholder, but the lether of capadoce saued hym. And the paynym was smyton so harde and sore

16 that bothe hys feet were oute of the styroppes and almoost was ouerthrowen, wherof the frensshe men sayden al wyth one voys: "A! saynt marye, what a stroke hath Olyuer gynyen<sup>2</sup> to thys paynym!" "ye,"

and nearly unhorses him.

20 sayd rolland, "meruayllously he smote hym! ¶ Now wolde god of heuen," sayd Rolland, "that I were now vnder the shilde of my gentyl felowe Olyuer, For of me or of the paynym shold shortly be seen the ende."

24 ¶ To whom the Emperour answerd: "Ha! euyl gloton, I hane wel herde the spoken felon coward. It is not now tyme that thou so say, For atte beginnyng thou woldest not goo, wherof many tymes shalt thou be of

28 me reproched." vpon whych thyng rolland ansuerd no thyng but that he shold do as it plesed hym. fyerabras al astoned of the stroke & replenysshed of grete wrath with his swerd named plouraunce came wyth a course

Fierabras strikes Oliver on the helmet,

32 vpon olyuer, & gaf hym a stroke<sup>3</sup> vpon his helme so sharply that he trenched moo than ve maylles, and hurte euyl hys hors and smote of the spore of his foot & a parte of hys thye, wheroute the blode ranne

and wounds his horse. (591.)

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* gynyen.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* steoke.

Oliver calls on  
God and the  
Virgin for help.

Fierabras again  
offers to let him  
go,

on account of his  
wound,

but Oliver defies  
him. (597)

habundantly & the swerde of fyerabras <sup>1</sup>was al bloody :  
of whiche stroke olyuer was moeued & troubled that he  
had fallen ne had hys sadel haue been, For he was  
bowel afterward that he was al to broken. And his 4  
hors began to halte of the stroke & whan he was comen  
to hym self wyth an hye voys began to crye : ¶ “O  
lord god, my creatour, o what an euyl stroke haue I  
receyued ! O vyrgyn marye, moder of Ihesus, haue 8  
pyte of me ! For ouer fyersly cutteth the swerde of  
thys paynym. yene me grace that I may ones haue  
hym :” and made vpon hym self the sygne of the  
crosse. & after fyerabras sayd to hym : “Olyuer, by 12  
Mahoun my god, wyth thys stroke I maad the aferde :  
now mayst thou wel fele how I can playe, & I haue no  
meruaylle though thou commaunde the to thy god, but  
I am euyl contente that I haue hurte the ouer sore with 16  
þ<sup>e</sup> stroke. ¶ Neuertheles be sure that thou shalt not  
see the *same* goo to reste for thou begynnest now  
to chaunge colour and thy fyerce manere : neuer-  
theles I am contente that thou retorne, and that shall 20  
be for the the best tofore thou knowe more fully my  
strengthe : for I warne the of one thyng that whan I  
see my blood yssue out of my body thenne doubleth  
my myght and my strengthe. And I wote wel that 24  
charles loueth <sup>2</sup>the not moche whan he sendeth the to  
me, yf he had lodged the in a fayre bedde & whyte  
slietes thou haddest been moche better.” whan Olyuer  
herde hym so saye he was replenysshed with a feruent 28  
courage & began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd : “O  
Paynym, dysmesured al day thou vauntest the for to  
bryng me to thende of my dayes. I praye to god  
almighty that he wyl reioye my courage. kepe the wel, 32  
I deffye the ! we hane ouer long pleted.” vpon these  
wordes they ranne to-gydre, smytyng meruayllously  
eche other vpon their helmes in suche wyse that boucles,

<sup>1</sup> D j. back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

naylles, and crochettes, precious stones, or faueryes, and  
 floures been hewen, broken, and flowen to the ground.  
 the fyre yssued oute largely, makynge grete bruyt with  
 4 the swerdes vpon their harnois. In this whyle Charles  
 was in grete medytacyon and thought that the quarele  
 of Olyuer was trewe and Iuste and that god ought to  
 preserue hym, and whan he thought that Olyuer myght  
 8 deye As Inpacyent of a perfayte fayth he sayd: ¶ “O  
 glorious god, for whome we take payne, I praye the to  
 conserue oliuer that he be not slayn ne taken. For I  
 swere by the soule of my fader that yf he be now slayn  
 12 of thys paynym that neuer in fraunce in any chyrche  
 shal clerke ne preest be reuested ne enhabyted, but I  
 shal do brezne monasteryes, chyrches, aulters & cruce-  
 fyxes.” “Alas,” sayd Duc naymes, “Syr kyng, leue  
 16 these wordes vayne and ydle, & praye god for Olyuer  
 that he be in his ayde for hys holy mercy.” Al thys  
 whyle persenerd the ij champions fyghtyng and smyt-  
 yng eche on other in suche maner that Fyerabras wyth  
 20 hys swerde brake the cercle of Olyuers helme and made  
 hym falle on hys vysage, and hys hors had be slayn yf  
 he had not lepte a syde. and Olyuer was hurte in hys  
 body and speccially in the breste and had thenne loste  
 24 soo moche of hys blood that he was moche feble,  
 whyche was no merueylle, seen that he had resysted  
 ageynst the moost terryble man that euer was borne of  
 moder.

Their armour is  
cut to pieces.

Charles prays for  
Oliver's success,

and vows if he is  
killed every  
church shall be  
burnt.

Naymes reproves  
him.

Oliver is very  
weak from loss of  
blood.

28 ¶ How Olyuer made his prayer to god' whan  
 he felte hym hurte : capitulo xj

32 **O**lyuer the noble erle beyng in this malancolye of  
 the grete woundes that he had in hys body took  
 his recomforte sayeng in this manere: “O glory-  
 ous god, cause & begynnyng of al that is aboue & vnder  
 the firmamente, which for your owne playser fourmed

Oliver offers up a  
prayer,

<sup>1</sup> D ij.

our fyrst fader Adam and<sup>t</sup> for <sup>1</sup>hys companye gauest  
vnto hym Eue, by whome al humayn generacyon is  
conceyued<sup>t</sup>, gynyng<sup>t</sup> to them lycence to ete al maner  
fruytes reserved<sup>t</sup> onely one, of whyche Eue by the 4  
recounting the  
fall of Adam,  
moeuyng of the serpent caused<sup>t</sup> Adam to ete, wherefore  
they loste paradys, & by the seductyon of the fendes of  
helle many haue ben deceyued<sup>t</sup> & dampned : wherof ye  
had<sup>t</sup> pyte of the perdyeyon of the world<sup>t</sup> and<sup>t</sup> came for 8  
to take flesshe humayn in the wombe of the glorious  
the annunciation,  
vyrgyn marye by thammeyacion of the holy Aungel  
Gabryel, and<sup>t</sup> were borne as it pleased<sup>t</sup> you. And<sup>t</sup> anone  
after the thre kynges camen to adoure & make obeys- 12  
saunce and<sup>t</sup> wyth golde, encence, and<sup>t</sup> myrre made to  
you their presentes. After for you herodes made to be  
the slaughter of  
the innocents,  
slayne many chyl dren, whiche now been in Ioye per-  
manable. And whan ye were in age by you deter- 16  
my ned<sup>t</sup> ye went in the world<sup>t</sup> prechyng<sup>t</sup> to your frendes.  
Thenne afterward by thenuyous Iewes ye were hanged  
the Crucifixion,  
on the crosse, in whiche so hangyng longyus the knyght  
by the Induction of the Iewes pereyd your syde ; & 20  
whan he hyleued in you & wesshe hys eyen with your  
precious blode he reconerd his syzt fayre & clere &  
cryed you mercy wherby he was saued. After by your  
frendes ye were layed in the holy sepulture : <sup>2</sup>the thyr<sup>t</sup> 24  
the Resurrection,  
day after aroos and<sup>t</sup> took ageyn lyf and<sup>t</sup> descended<sup>t</sup> in to  
helle, And<sup>t</sup> took out Adam and<sup>t</sup> Eue and al them that  
were worthy to haue paradys. And<sup>t</sup> the day of your  
and the  
Ascension,  
meruayllous ascencyon ye ascended<sup>t</sup> in to heuen in the 28  
presence of al your apostles. Thus my god<sup>t</sup>, my maker,  
as thys is trouthe and<sup>t</sup> I byleue it verayly and<sup>t</sup> firmly,  
be ye in my comforte ageynst thys myscreaunte that I  
may vaynquyssh<sup>e</sup> hym in suche wyse that he may be 32  
saued<sup>t</sup>." And<sup>t</sup> this said he blessyd hym with his swerde  
in makyng the sygne of <sup>p</sup> crosse in the name of god<sup>t</sup>  
the holy trynyte, and<sup>t</sup> smote his hors vpon the hope of

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.<sup>2</sup> D ij. back.

the helpe of god, and Fyerabras sayd to hym lawhyngt :  
 "Olyuer, fayre frende, I praye the that thou hyde not  
 fro me the oryson that thou hast said now, for by my  
 4 god termagau/t I wold gladly here it." "Now wold  
 god of heuen," sayd Olyuer, "that thou were in suche  
 grace that thou sholdest bylene it also fermly as I doo,  
 For I assure the I shold loue the thenne as moche as I  
 8 doo Roulland."

Fierabras laughs  
 at him,  
 and asks what his  
 prayer has been.

¶ And Fyerabras ansuerd to hym : "by my god  
 Mahoun and Termagaunt, thou spekest now of a moche  
 grete folye?"

12 ¶ How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd'  
 the bawme & <sup>1</sup>dranke therof at hys case,  
 and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors  
 was slayn : capitulo xij

16 **F**yerabras beyngt wroth of the wordes of oliuer in  
 grete Ire sayd to hym : "kepe the wel fro me, for  
 I deffye the!" "I am redy," sayd Olyuer, "for  
 to god I commaunde me." & so thenne they recountred  
 20 to-gyder so sharply and so hard strokes they gaf that  
 the fyre myzt haboundantlye be seen sprynge oute of  
 theyr harnoys. Theyr horses bowed vnder hem and  
 the erthe trembled of the bruyt in the medowe vnder  
 24 mormyonde. Fyerabras took hys swerde in hys honde  
 and smote Olyuer there as he was cnyl hurte in the  
 breste vnder the pappe, & of that stroke the eyen  
 tornek in hys heel, And had hys face alle chaunged.  
 28 And thenne ageyn he cryed on god and on the virgyn  
 marie that he wold saue his soule. Fyerabras by grete  
 curtosye sayd to hym : "Olyuer, vnderstonde me,  
 descende down surely and goo take of the bawme and  
 32 drynke at thyn ease, and anone thou shalt be al guar-  
 ysshed and hole, and thenne mayst thou the better

The struggle is  
 renewed 602 so  
 fiercely that the  
 ground shakes.  
 (607)

Fierabras wounds  
 Oliver in the  
 breast.

Fierabras again  
 offers Oliver some  
 of the holy balm,

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

defende the ageynst me and thou shalte recoure newe  
 but Oliver refuses strengthe." But olyuer for noo thyng that he coude  
 it. do though <sup>1</sup>he shold dye he wold not, For by trewe  
 fighting he wold haue it. And anone came that one 4  
 ageynst that other and smyten in suche wyse that  
 Oliver pierces Fierabras' thigh. Fyerabras was hurte daungerously, For olyuers swerde  
 entred in to his thye an halfe foot depe, and of the  
 blood that yssued oute alle the grasse was reed. And 8  
 when he sawe hym so hurte he dranke of hys bawme  
 and was anone al hool, wherof olyuer was moche sorow-  
 ful, by cause therof he coude make none ende of thys  
 paynym. And the frensshe men that saw this made 12  
 to god their prayers deuoutly that he wolde conserue  
 that day Olyuer, And in especyal Charlemayn whiche  
 emong al other loued hym moast entyerly. But whan  
 Olyuer sawe the paynym al hole & for the bawme 16  
 so comforted, by the ayde of god he came to hym  
 and smote hym vpon the helme soo harde that the  
 stroke descended vpon the sadel & cutte the corde by  
 Oliver cuts the cord by which the vessels are tied. whych the barylles were bounden and fastned, and the 20  
 hors of fyerabras was aferde of the stroke and made a  
 lytel course by the playsyr of god. Thenne Olyuer or  
 the paynym toke ouy hede bowed to the grounde and  
 took vp the barylles & dranke at hys ease and largely, 24  
 & anon he was al hole & reconfermed in newe strengthe,  
 & thought that <sup>2</sup>yf by aduenture fyerabras were more  
 hurte by hym and myght ageyn haue hys barylles  
 that in thende it myght euyl happe and come to hym. 28  
 wherfore he beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer took the  
 barylles & threwe them therin whych were anone  
 sonken. And as it is redde at alle the festes of saynt  
 Iohan these ij barylles ben shewed aboue the water 32  
 euydently. whan fyerabras sawe that the barilles were  
 loste all most for angre he was oute of hys mynde &  
 by grete reproche sayd to Olyuer: "O euyl man that

<sup>1</sup> D iij.<sup>2</sup> col. 2.



thou arte, thou hast loste my barylles whyche were  
 more worth than al the golde in the world: but I  
 promyse the that or it be euen they shal to the ben  
 4 dere solde, For I shall not cesse tyl I haue smyton of thy  
 heed:” and thys sayeng<sup>e</sup> he came ayenst hym, but  
 Olyuer as he that doubteth hym not soo moche as he  
 dyd tofore eschewed hym not but put hym at the  
 8 defence wyth his shielde to auoyde the stroke. Neuer-  
 theles Fyerabras smote hym so hard þæt hys helme was  
 desmaylled & braken, but he was not hurte, & the  
 stroke descended so inpytuously þæt he cutte asondre the  
 12 necke of oliuers hors, & [he] fyl to grounde and the<sup>me</sup>  
 was Olyuer on fote. but a grete myracle it was of the  
 hors of fyerabras that maad no semblau<sup>te</sup> <sup>1</sup>to renne  
 vpon hym as he had ben taught, lyke as I haue sayd  
 16 byfore, but helde hym styлле above hys propre custome.

Fierabras reviles  
 him for doing so,

rushes at him,

and breaks his  
 helmet,

and kills his  
 horse. (588)

¶ How Fyerabras and’ Olyuer foughten to-  
 gyder afote merveyllously, and’ of the  
 prayer that Charles maad’ for Olyuer:  
 20 capitulo viij

**M**Oche sorouful were the freysshe men whan they  
 sawe Olyuer on fote, and wold haue armed  
 hem for to socoure hym, But Charles wold not  
 24 consente for to mayntene hys honour & hys trouthe.  
 ¶ And thenne kyng<sup>e</sup> Charles kneeled down to therthe &  
 maad his prayer to god that he wolde comforte Olyuer  
 whyche was thus dyspourueyed of his hors. whan  
 28 Olyuer sawe hym self on fote he was moche sorouful &  
 came a foure paas nyghe vnto Fyerabras, and sayd to  
 hym: “o kyng of Alexandrye, thou hast borne the  
 foule this day ageynst me. In the morning thou hast  
 32 so moche preysed thy self that thou hast sayd yf v  
 knyghtes came ageynst the thou woldest abyde and

The French wish  
 to help Oliver,

but Charles for-  
 bids them.

Oliver reproaches  
 the Saracen for  
 killing his horse.  
 (598)

<sup>1</sup> D iij, back.

conquere them, and<sup>l</sup> thou knowest that the kyng that sleeth an hors ought to haue no parte of therytage.”

Fierabras declares it was accidental, and offers to give him his own horse, but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras jumps off his horse, and they fight on foot.

Reyner appeals to Charles to send help to Oliver, or at least to pray for him.

Fyerabras ansuerd: “I knowe wel that thou <sup>1</sup>sayest trouthe, but I dyd it not wyth my wylle. Neuertheles 4 to thende that thou be not enyl contente wyth me I shal descende down of my hors & shal gyue to the my hors pomel<sup>l</sup>: And<sup>l</sup> I promyse the thou shalt be well horse<sup>l</sup>. And<sup>l</sup> knowe thou that neuer in my lyf 8 I was so abashed<sup>l</sup> as whan he sawe the at erthe that he strangled<sup>l</sup> the not, for I neuer put man to the erthe and thys hors present but that anone he was by hym slayn & dede.” Olyner ansuerd: “I promyse the that I shal 12 neuer take thyn hors but yf he be first by me conquered<sup>l</sup> and<sup>l</sup> Iustly wonne.” wherupon fyerabras was soo moche noble that for the valyaunce of Olyner sayd<sup>l</sup>: “Certeyn for the noblesse that I knowe in the I wyl do that I 16 neuer dyd for man:” and<sup>l</sup> sprange of his hors & stode a-foote & was contente to fyght ayenst hym a foote, by-cause he had<sup>l</sup> no hors of hys owne. and the sayd<sup>l</sup> fyerabras was moche heyer than Olyner. and by 20 one accorde they Instel<sup>l</sup> afoote that one ayenst that other so meruayllously that it was wonder that bothe tweyne remayned<sup>l</sup> not in the felde a-swonne of the trauaylle that they toke. Thus contynuen<sup>g</sup> the bataylle 24 which coude take none ende they spaken many reproches and<sup>l</sup> despytous wordes that one of theym vnto <sup>2</sup>other. The kyng Charles seyng<sup>l</sup> thys had<sup>l</sup> grete pyte on Olyner. Thenne the Erle Reyner, fader of Olyner, whyche was 28 moche sorouful came & kneled<sup>l</sup> at the feet of Charles and<sup>l</sup> sayd<sup>l</sup>: “O noble emperour, in thouour of god<sup>l</sup> take remors of my sone whome I see lykly anone to dye. Atte leste make prayer to Ihesus our maker that he be in ayde to 32 hym that I may see hym ryghe to me in helthe.” ¶ Incontynent Charles seyng<sup>l</sup> thys sayd<sup>l</sup>: “O lord<sup>l</sup> god<sup>l</sup>, yf ye suffre that Olyner be ouercome and<sup>l</sup> that my ryght at

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.<sup>2</sup> D iiij.

thys tyme be loste and defyled, I make auowe that al  
 crystyante shal be destroyed. I shal not leue in  
 Fraunce chirche ne monasterye, ymage ne aulter." &  
 4 after kneled down with bothe his knees<sup>1</sup> to the grounde  
 & prayed in this manere: "My creatour, whyche for  
 our sauacyon was borne of the glorious vyrgyn marie  
 in bethleem, as I wel by-leue, that of your glorious  
 8 byrth al the world was enlumyned, whiche abode in thys  
 world ful xxxij yere & more, & made atte begynnyng  
 Adam and Eue, of whom we ben comen, & that was in  
 paradys tenestre a place moche delectable. And there  
 12 by you were alle fruytes abandoned to them except one  
 onely, whyche was of knowyng good & euyl, as it plesed  
 you to ordeyne: of <sup>2</sup>whiche adam ete & was dysobey-  
 saunt, for whom to the reparacion of his misdede & for  
 16 to redeme hym fro eternal captyuyte & vs also ye were  
 contente to take the deth in the tree of the crosse, after  
 that the traytour<sup>3</sup> Iudas solde you for xxx pens: & on  
 a friday ye were payned & your handes & feet mortally  
 20 naylled, & crowned with a moche sharpe crowne of  
 thornes: and after Longyus smote you in the ryght  
 syde to the hert, whiche was blynde & after that he  
 had leyd on hys eyen of your precyous blood he sawe  
 24 moche clerey: & after ye descended in to helle & toke  
 out your frendes, & sythe aroos fro deth to lyf, & tofore  
 al your apostles ye ascended in to heuen & lefte for  
 your lyeutenant saynt Peter thapostle in erthe; and  
 28 ordeynest baptesme for the regeneracyon of vs and to  
 make vs crysten for to haue saluacyon. O lord, as alle  
 thys is truthe and that I byleue it stedfastly, so on thys  
 day be thou in ayde and socoure vnto Olyuer for to  
 32 preserue hym that he be not slayn ne vaynquysshed."  
 ¶ He thys sayeng & other deuoute wordes in hys  
 secrete oratorye Our<sup>4</sup> lord sente to hym an aungel fro  
 heuen whyche sayd to hym: ¶ "O Charles, Emperour

Charles at first  
threatens to de-  
stroy every church  
if Oliver is killed,

and then prays  
for Oliver's suc-  
cess,

recounting the  
Fall,

the Crucifixion,

the piercing of  
our Lord's side  
by Longius,

the descent into  
hell,

the Ascension,

and the ordination  
of Baptism.

An angel appears

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* knees.

<sup>2</sup> *col.* 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* traycour.

<sup>4</sup> *Ed.* Out.

and tells him that Oliver will be the victor.

Fierabras aims a stroke at Oliver,

which he dodges, and wounds the Saracen.

Oliver's sword flies out of hand.

He tries to recover it, but cannot

through fear of Fierabras.

The French are eager to help Oliver, but Charles will not allow them.

of noblesse, knowe thou for trouthe that I am sente from <sup>1</sup>god for to say to the that thou doubte no thyng of Olyuer, for wythout faylle he shal wynne the bataylle; though it be late, but he shal vaynquyssh the paynym." <sup>4</sup> thys sayd, the aungel departed and charles thanked god deuoutelye for hys glorious medytacyon. Neuertheles after many bataylles bytwene fyerabras and Olyuer maad, and grete menaces by grete furour, wyll- <sup>8</sup> yngt to haue gyuen to Olyuer a grete stroke oute of mesure. But Olyuer whyche sawe the stroke comyng deuannced hym in suche wyse that he gaf two euyl strokes to Fyerabras, wherof Fyerabras was passyng <sup>12</sup> angry vpon Olyuer, and Olyuer on hym, so that bothe were ryzt actyf neuer to departe tyl that one of them were vaynquysshed and destroyed. & at that tyme Olyuer was soo coueytous in smytyng that his honde in <sup>16</sup> whiche he helde hys swerde was a-slepe and swollen for the payne that he had of smytyng; and he desyryng to smyte hys enemye at vtterance hys suerde flewe a-ferre fro hym out of his hande, wherof he was sore moened <sup>20</sup> and abashed—and it was no meruaylle—and moche courageously ranne for to take vp his swerde, And layed hys shilde on hys hede for to preserue it. But not wythstandyng the paynym smote <sup>24</sup> <sup>2</sup>hym twyes so myghtyly that he brake hys shilde in dyuers places and hys hauberke, so that he was sore astonyed for that tyme And doubted soo moche the paynym that he durst not take hys swerde: and moche sodeynlye the frensshe <sup>28</sup> men which sawe so Olyuer dyspoureied of his swerde armed them anone and were in purpoos to renne vpon the sarasyn for to socour olyuer. but Charles wold not consente that any man shold goo sayeng to them that <sup>32</sup> god is almyghty for to saue and mayntene hym in hys good ryght, for yf he had not gaynsayed it more than xiiij thousand men were thenne redy for to haue rescowd

- hym. and notwithstandyng al thys the paynym dyd  
 but laughe & said to Olyuer: "In trouthe, Olyuer, I  
 haue opteyned vpon the a lytel of myn entente, but  
 4 wherfore darst not þou take thy swerde I knowe now  
 wel that thou art ynough vaynquysshed sythe that thou  
 art so aferde that thou darst not stoupe for all the  
 tresour of the worlde. and I am wel contente for t.  
 8 apoynte wyth the that is that thou renye the fayth that  
 thou holdest, the baptesme that thou hast receyued &  
 the god in whom thou byleuest, and for whome thou  
 hast had al thys payne, & byleue in Mahoun, my god  
 12 ful of bounte, & <sup>1</sup>I shal suffre the to lyue & more ouer  
 I shal be contente to gyue to the my sister to wyf to  
 whom thou shalte be rychely maryed. Hyr name is  
 Florypes, the fayrest of moder borne, & after we shal con-  
 16 quere Fraunce or thys yere be paste, And of one of the  
 royames I shal crowne the kyng." Olyuer ansuerd to  
 hym: "Paynym, thou spekest to me of grete folye, for  
 god forbode that ener I shold be of entencion to forsake  
 20 my god, whyche hath created & fourmed me, and his  
 holy sacrements which haue been establysshed for my<sup>2</sup>  
 sauacyon, for to byleue in mahoun and in thy goddes  
 ful of abusyon: whiche haue neyther strengthe ne  
 24 vertue but cause of dampnacyon." Fyerabras sayd to  
 hym, "by mahoun my god, thou art alwaye moche  
 obstynat that ne for payn ne for torment thou wylt not  
 denye thy fayth, & of one thyng which is more grete  
 28 thou<sup>3</sup> mayst wel auauerte the. For neuer was I of  
 persone so trauailed ne greued as I am of the. ¶ Thou  
 oughtest wel to be prayse. I am contente that thou  
 take thy swerde hardly and surely for withoute com-  
 32 petent wepen thou mayst not preuaylle ne more than a  
 woman." Olyuer answerd: "Paynym, I can not say  
 the contrarye but that thou offrest to me seruyce and  
 bounte, but for the<sup>4</sup> valewe of x thousand marke of

Fierabras mocks  
at Oliver,

and offers, if he  
will renounce  
Christianity, to

give him his sister  
Florypes in mar-  
riage.

Oliver says, "God  
forbid!"

Fierabras declares  
he never met any  
one so obstinate.

Fierabras then  
offers to let him  
pick up his sword,

<sup>1</sup> D v.    <sup>2</sup> Ed. for my.    <sup>3</sup> Ed. then.    <sup>4</sup> col. 2.

but Oliver refuses, *gohde* I wyl not take it, ne for to deye therfore. For yf I had recouerd my swerde by thy curtosye And it happed that thou were vnder my puyssaunce and thou thenne demaundest of me amytye & frendshyp & thenne 4 [1] put the to deth it shold to me be vylete and reproche. And at thys tyme my lyf and my deth be in the wyll of god to whom I haue gyuen my self ouer. But and yf I may wynne my swerde thou shalt bye it dere & here 8 deye, For other thyng shal thou not haue." ¶ "By my fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "thou art moche surquydrous & glorious, wherfore be thou sure that shortely thou shalt be confused descomfyte and matte." 12

and declares he  
will win it back  
in fair fight.

¶ How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was vanquysshed by Olyuer after that he had recouerd one of the swerdes of fyerabras :  
capitulo viiij 16

Fierabras comes  
against Oliver,

who, looking  
round in fear,

sees the Saracen's  
horse, on which  
are two swords.

He runs and seizes  
one, Baptism,

**W**Han Fyerabras herde that oliuer was so fyers of fayt and of courage he had grete meruaylle. For he wold not haue hys swerde but yf he myght by Iuste warre conquere it, wherfore the paynym 20 dysmesurably came ageynst hym and helde in hys hande plorance hys swerde. Thenne it was no meruayle though olyuer was aferde to abyde hys enemye he beyng dyspourueyed of swerde & of shelde, For that 24 was broken in two partyes. but as it playsted to god he lokd besyde hym & sawe the hors of fyerabras and on the arson of the sadel were ij other swerdes of whych I haue spoken afore. And anone Olyuer ranne ryght 28 quykely and took one of the swerdes which was named baptisme, whyche had the blade moche large and shone meruayllously, & after came ageynst the paynym & put tofore parte of hys shelde suche as was lefte. and whan 32 he was nyghe hym he began to say : "O kyng of

<sup>1</sup> D v, back.

Alexandrye, now is tyme to compte. For I am pour-  
neyed of your swerde of whych I shal make you wroth  
& kepe you wel from me for I haue deffyed<sup>e</sup> you."

and defies  
Fierabras,

4 Thenne whan Fyerabras sawe it and<sup>e</sup> had<sup>e</sup> herde hym so  
speke anone began to chaunge colour and sayd: "O  
baptym, good<sup>e</sup> swerde, I haue kepte the many a day for  
one of the beste that euer henge by my syde or by any  
8 mans that is lyuyng<sup>e</sup>." And after behelde olyuer sayeng<sup>e</sup>:

"By my god<sup>e</sup> Mahoun, I knowe the a man of grete  
fyerste. I wold that thou woldest take thyn owne  
swerde and<sup>e</sup> late me<sup>1</sup> haue myn and<sup>e</sup> thenne late vs fyght

who asks him to  
give up Baptism,  
and take his own  
sword in ex-  
change,

12 as we haue begonne." "by my hede," say<sup>e</sup>th Olyuer,  
"that shal neuer be by my wylle, for tofore I make  
any pacte with the I shal assaye and<sup>e</sup> approue thys swerde  
vpon thy persone. kepe the wel fro me For ouer long  
16 haue we sermoned<sup>e</sup>." Thys sayeng<sup>e</sup> & other thynges

but Oliver refuses,

Olyuer came as a lyon hungry ayenst fyerabras & smote  
hym fyrst, but he myzt not attayne hym on the hede  
but that he recountred first the shilde of the paynym,

20 whyche he brake and<sup>e</sup> al to-frussched<sup>e</sup> euyl that the half  
flewe in the felde. Thenne fyerabras was sore aferde of  
that stroke For aboue alle thys the swerde wyth that  
stroke entred<sup>e</sup> nygh half a foot within therthe. Thenne

and with a blow  
breaks the shield  
of the Saracen.

24 olyuer blessyd hym that had<sup>e</sup> forged<sup>e</sup> that swerde and<sup>e</sup> so  
wel tempred<sup>e</sup>, and<sup>e</sup> after many menaces rygorous they  
were in partye descouered<sup>e</sup> of theyr helmes. And whan

They both lose  
their helmets.

Olyuer sawe the Paynym Fyerabras in the vysage fyers  
28 and<sup>e</sup> courageous he sayd: "O lord<sup>e</sup> god<sup>e</sup> of heuen, maker  
of heuen & of erthe, that thys paynym is noble and<sup>e</sup> ful  
of cruelte. Now wold<sup>e</sup> god<sup>e</sup> that Charles had<sup>e</sup> hym in  
his power and<sup>e</sup> yf he wold<sup>e</sup> be baptysed<sup>e</sup> Rolland and<sup>e</sup> I  
32 shold<sup>e</sup> be hys pryue felowes. O glorious vyrgyn marie  
moder of god<sup>e</sup>, praye our lord<sup>e</sup> Ihesu Cryste thy sone  
2that he gyue grace to thys sarasyn that he may bylene  
in the cristen fayth, for by hym it may be moche

Oliver is astonish-  
ed at the appear-  
ance of Fierabras,  
and prays for his  
conversion.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> D vj.

enhanced." Fyerabras answered in this manere:  
 "Olyuer, leue suche wordes: telle me yf thou wilt  
 fyght like as thou hast enterprysed." "ye," sayd  
 olyuer, "kepe the wel fro me for I deffye the," and 4  
 ranne vpon hym: and Olyuer was smyton fyrst vpon  
 his shelde by suche fiersnes that he smote his shelde in  
 pyeces nyghe to hys fyste, and it was meruaylle that he  
 cut it not of: wherfore Fyerabras sayd that he had 8  
 put hym in suche caas that he shold not longe lyue in  
 this world. Olyuer sayd noo worde but came with his  
 swerde ayenst the paynym Fyerabras moche furiously.  
 ¶ Thenne the paynym that sawe þ<sup>e</sup> stroke come threwe 12  
 hys shelde ayenst olyuer wherfore anone it was quartred,  
 and was so astoned that the eyen in hys heed were al  
 troubled of the payne and the fyre was seen sprynge  
 oute of the swerdes and sheldes moche habundantlye. 16  
 and thus in smytyng<sup>e</sup> fyerabras sayd in this manere:  
 "now is the houre come that thou shalt neuer haue ayde  
 of thy god Ihesus in whome thou byleuest, [but] that  
 anone thou shalt be deed sythe thou felest thy self ouer- 20  
 comen. And Olyuer anone answered: "Ihesus is wel  
 myghty <sup>1</sup> for to shiewe hys pyysaunce. But anone thou  
 shalt knowe that Mahoun ne Termagaunte shal not  
 mowe ayde the ne be so myghty but that thou shalt be 24  
 deed, I shal wel gyue the knowleche." And herupon  
 came that one vpon that other. And olyuer was smyton  
 on the helme al vnto the flesshe in suche wyse that al  
 that the swerde araught it share and passed thorough, & 28  
 thenne he sayd to olyuer: "I swere to the by my god  
 that I haue wel araught the and smyton. Neuer shal  
 charles ne Rolland see the be thou wel sure." Olyuer  
 answered: "O Fyerabras of alexandrye, be not thou so 32  
 proude for or I departe fro the I shal rendre the dede  
 or vaynquysshed, & god graunte to me that whyche I  
 haue alwaye desired!" And therupon eche smote

Fierabras smites  
 Oliver on his  
 shield,  
 and breaks it in  
 pieces.

Oliver cuts the  
 Saracen on his  
 shield,

and nearly stuns  
 him.

They abuse each  
 other. 701.

Fierabras wounds  
 Oliver 732 and

declares his time  
 has now come.



other so merueyllously that the bodyes of them bothe  
 swette for anguysshe and payne. Fyerabras smote  
 olyuer vpon the helme soo harde that the stroke came  
 4 to the flesshe, and yf god had not wrought he had be  
 slayn at that tyme. wherfore Olyuer as a man enraged  
 came ayenst the paynym & the sarasyn lyfte on hyghe  
 hys s̄helde so that he was al dyscouerē vnder the arme  
 8 and hys flanke was there vnarmed. Olyuer was wyse  
 & took good hede and came lyghtly & smote <sup>1</sup>fyerabras  
 in hys flanke so myghtyly & contynued in suche wyse  
 that he thrested his swerde in one of hys flankes wel  
 12 depe, & hys swerde hym self & the place was alle bybled  
 of the blood. Thus was Fyerabras hurte in suche  
 manere that almoost hys bowellys yssued oute of his  
 bely, For thenne at that stroke olyuer employed al his  
 16 strengthe for to make an ende of the bataylle so longe  
 foughten.

Oliver aims a  
 blow at Fierabras;  
 who, raising his  
 shield too high,  
 leaves his side  
 uncovered. (737)

Oliver thrusts his  
 sword in between  
 the ribs,

so that the Sara-  
 cen's bowels al-  
 most fall out. (745)

¶ How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' by-  
 leued' in god', and' how he was borne by  
 20 Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylled'  
 of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv

**A**fter that the Paynym was smyton and hurte  
 mortally as I haue sayd, And he seyng that he  
 24 myght nomore resyste ayenst Olyuer, by the  
 vertu of god he was enlumyned in suche wyse that he  
 had knowleche of the errour of the paynyms and lyfte  
 vp hys eyen vnto heuen and began to escrye the holy  
 28 trynyte and the grace of the holy ghoost. And after  
 looked on Olyuer and sayd to hym: "O noble Olyuer  
 & valyaunt knyght, in thonour of god on whome thou  
 byleuest and to <sup>2</sup>whome I consente I crye the mercy  
 32 and requyre the that I dye not tyl I be baptysef &  
 yelden vaynquysshed vnto Charles the Emperour

Fierabras finding  
 himself vanquish-  
 ed begs for mercy,

(753, promising  
 to become a  
 christian,

and to be bap-  
 tised, 755)

<sup>1</sup> D vj. back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

whyche so moche is redoubted. For I shal byleue in  
 the crysten fayth & shal yelde the relyques for whyche  
 ye be assemblyd and haue taken soo moche payne.  
 And I swere to the that yf by thy defeaute I dye sarasyn 4  
 I make the culpable of my dampnacyon, And yf thou  
 take not me in to thy garde I shal lose my blood.  
 Thou shalt see me deye tofore thyn eyen wherfore in  
 the honour of god haue pyte on me." Olyuer had so 8  
 moche compassyon of hym for hys soor that he sore  
 wepte, and after he layed hym in the shadowe vnder a  
 tree and there bounde his mortal woundes in suche  
 wyse that he staunched hys bledyng. And after the 12  
 paynym prayed hym that it myght plesse hym to bere  
 hym awaye For hym self myght not goo. but whan  
 Olyuer sawe that he was so heuy he sayd that it was  
 not to hym possyble to bere hym. Fyerabras enforced 16  
 hym self moche & came nyghe to hym, "O noble and  
 redoubted Erle Olyuer, in the honour of god lede me  
 to charles or I be dede for I am nyghe at myn ende,  
 for al my body bledeth. take that hors and mounte 20  
 theron and come as nyghe to me as thou may and yf I  
 may lye thwart tofore the vpon the sadel thou mayst  
 lede me ; & take my swerde by thy syde. ¶ Now  
 hast thou foure that been moche worthe. and hys and 24  
 depresshe the, For thys day in the mornyng I lefte in  
 the wode that thou there seest here by fyfty thousand  
 men whyche been al my subgettes, & comanded them  
 that none shold moeue tyl I were retorneð fro the 28  
 bataylle." Whan Olyuer vnderstood hym he was al  
 afrayed and abasshed for fere, but not wythstondyng  
 he sayd : "Syr kyng, sythe that it plesse you I am  
 contente," & took hym thwart the hors as it was sayd 32  
 & went forth on the waye in grete sorowe. And  
 sodeynly departed out of the wode where as were the  
 subgettes of Fyerabras a moche fyers paynym named

- bruyllant of Mommere. And after hym Sortybrant of  
 nonymbres, and the kyng of Mantryble; after hym  
 maradas, Pynan, & Tenebras, & wel fyfty thousand  
 4 sarasyns after. whan Olyuer sawe theym come he smote  
 the hors wyth the spores but the charge was so heuy  
 that he myȝt not goo so faste as his enemyes came to  
 hym. Whan the frensshe men sawe the paynyns come  
 8 in so grete nombre anon lyghtely they armed them.  
 And emonge other rolland, Gherard of mon<sup>1</sup>dydyer,  
 Guyllam the scot, naymes of bauyere, Ogier, Rychard  
 of normandye, Guy of bourgoyn, Geffroy lantigny,  
 12 Basyn, the due Thyery of ardeyne, And Aubert, And  
 senblably Reyner of genes fader of Olyuer faylled not.  
 Olyuer saw alonge the medowe and sawe come to fore  
 thother brullant of mommyere which rode on an hors  
 16 as swyft as a grehounde and made grete bruyt emonge  
 the other, For it semeð as it had be thonder and  
 tempeste; and bare in hys honde a faus dart with a  
 grete hede of stele square and sharpe whyche was alle  
 20 enuenymed wyth the blood of a crapauld and was  
 ryght dangerous. whan Olyuer sawe him he was al  
 amoeued and abashed and sayd to Fyerabras in thys  
 manere: "Sir kyng, ye must needs descende; I may  
 24 no farther conduyte you, wherfore I am meruayllously  
 sory and dysplaysaunt. For I knowe that I must nedes  
 be oppressyd; ye see it wel. And yf they may  
 attayne I shal be put to deth, And Charles shal neuer  
 28 see me whyche shall be to hym grete dyscomforte."  
 Thenne anone Fyerabras cryed with an hye voys: <sup>2</sup> "O  
 noble Olyuer, wyl ye now leue me? Ye haue conquerd  
 me, to you I am yeuen and yelden. it shal not be  
 32 reputed noblesse determyned whan <sup>3</sup>I am youres and  
 ye forsake me. Alas poure sorouful and caytyf that I  
 am, yf I deye paynym what shal come of me? Virgyn  
 marie, moder of god, haue pyte on me vnworthy that I

The Saracens  
break out of the  
ambush. (812)

Oliver spurs his  
horse, but in vain.

Roland and others  
rush out to his  
help.

Oliver being hard  
pressed,  
tells Fierabras he  
must set him on  
the ground.

Fierabras begs  
him not to leave  
him.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* weys.

<sup>3</sup> D vij, back.

am to retorne me to you!" And after he sayd to  
 Olyuer: "I am conquerd by the and have promysed  
 to the that I shal be baptyse. Yf thou leue me thou  
 oughtest lytel to be preyse." Olyuer ansuerd: "Fy- 4  
 erabras, thou spekest as a knyght. But I anowe to god  
 and to the courte of heuen that I shal not leue the, I  
 shal take the bataylle in honde for the and shal deffende  
 the as longe as I shal be on lyue: thou mayst wel truste 8  
 therto." & there vpon he took the hauberk of the  
 sarasyn and wyth suche as he mygt haue he armed  
 hym, & prestly he abylded hym and put on his heeld an  
 hatte of fyne stele, and helde hys swerde drawen named 12  
 haultelere, wyth whiche he coude wel helpe hym. &  
 herupon came anone brullant wyth his fans darte &  
 atteyned Olyuer in the breste & gaf hym an euyl stroke  
 so that the dart brake. the same said fyerabras: "Syr 16  
 Olyuer, ye haue doon ynough for me, For ye be hurte.  
 late me descende down and laye me a-parte out of the  
 waye to thende that I be not defoulled of these sara-  
 syns, ne taken and destroyed." Therof had Olyuer 20  
 grete compassyon & layed fyerabras in the shadowe of  
 a pynapple tree ferre out of the waye. and whan he wold  
 haue fledde he sawe aboute hym wel x thousand sarasyns  
 and sayd: "Alas! god Ihesus, my creatour, thou 24  
 knowest myn enteneyon. I requyre the to gyue me  
 grace that I deye not at thys tyme present vnto the tyme  
 that for the exaltacion of thy fayth I may be wyth Rol-  
 land my felawe:" & in the name of Ihesus drewe out 28  
 haultelere and came in to the waye, & the first that he  
 recountred was the sone of the grettest lord that was  
 there, and gaf hym suche a stroke that he clefte hym to  
 the breste and [he] fyl down dede. & Olyuer was abyll 32  
 & delyuer, and took fro hym hys shielde whiche was al  
 newe: for in the bataylle tofore maad he had loste hys,  
 & also he had his spere & lete hys hors renne emonge

Oliver promises  
 not to desert him,

and arms himself  
 in Fierabras'  
 armour. (868)

Brilliant charges  
 at and wounds  
 him in the breast.

He sets Fierabras  
 down (825), and  
 tries to escape,

but seeing it is in  
 vain,  
 utters a prayer,

draws his sword,  
 and turns to meet  
 the Saracens. 833

the myscreauntes. And atteyned at the fyrst stroke He slays Clargys, and three others.  
 Clorgys & smote hym vnto the hert. And in retorning<sup>t</sup>  
 he slewe thre sarasyns & they ranne tofore hym as sheep  
 4 tofore the wulf whiche is hongry. Thenne came on  
 hym marabas, Turgys, Sortybrant of conymbres, and  
 the kyng Margaris, and they cryed with an hye voys  
 to-gydre: "by Mahoun our god, thou frensshe man thou He is surrounded,  
 8 shalt not escape vs; kepe the wel <sup>1</sup>for by vs thou shalt  
 deye!" And thenne cam Olyuer emonge his enemyes and  
 smote and slewe on al sydes. And the sarasyns smote on  
 hym in suche wyse that it was grete mervaylle that he  
 12 was not slayne and ouercomen but by force of <sup>2</sup>shotte  
 and of strokes hys hors was slayn vnder hym. And and his horse slain under him. (891)  
 he beyng on the erthe as sone as he myght he aroos  
 and beyng afoot sette hys shelde tofore hym whyche he  
 16 had gotten, and helde fast haultelere whyche was alle  
 hys comforte for to socoure hym. And alwaye whome He defends himself bravely.  
 he raught fyl down and was slayn. It is not redde in  
 any book that euer any man so hurt as he was bare hym  
 20 so wel and dyd so grete portemente of armes.

¶ How Olyuer was taken & blynfeld' pyteously,  
 & myght not be socoured' by the  
 Frensshe men: ca. xvj<sup>3</sup>

24 **O**lyuer was a[l]lone on fote emonge the sarasyns  
 ageynst whome he made grete resystence & mer-  
 uayllous: but it is not a thyng possible that he  
 myght escape fro theyr handes, for wyth glaues, with  
 28 swerdes and with faus dartes of yron they pressyd hym  
 so sore that hys shelde was perced in <sup>4</sup>moore than xxx  
 places: & whan hys hauberk was broken & perced wyth  
 foure sharpe dartes they perced and wounded hym in  
 32 his body mervayllously. Wherefore by veray force &  
 for feblesse he fyl to the erthe & there they took hym His shield is broken, 896  
his coat of mail cut to pieces.  
He is overpowered, bound, & blindfolded. 906)

<sup>1</sup> D viij.    <sup>2</sup> Ed. and.    <sup>3</sup> Ed. xvij.    <sup>4</sup> col. 2.  
 CHARL. ROM. III. G

moche outerageously, and after blynfelde hys eyen & bonde hym straytely soo that he myȝt not see, ne wyst not where he was & they sette hym vpon a good hors & bonde hym surely. And whan thys valyaunt olyuer 4 was thus dyspoureied fro al helpe, fro al syȝt, fro al hope, and fro al comferte, it is good to wete that he was in grete desplaysaunce, For he knewe not what they wold doo wyth hym. Thenne wyth an hye voys by a compas- 8 syon of hert he sayd: "O Charlemayn kyng of noblesse Emperour of valure, where art thou now & knowest thou not where I am? seest thou not what I do? remembreth not me, Noble felawe Rolland? thou art 12 all a slepe, am I deaf or how I may not here the? is there none of you crysten that remembreth me?" These and suche other complayntes makynge the kyng Maradas sayd to hym: "Frensshe man, whatsomeuer 16 thou be thou spekest of folye, For I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged." These sarasyns ranne wyth olyuer, hys eyen blynfelde and hys hondes<sup>1</sup> straytly bounden, in the garde of four fals tyraunts. Thenne vpon thys in 20 especyal came Rolland, Thyerry, & al the peres & charles hym self also, but thys was ouer late for to saue Olyuer. wyth grete cryes they cryed on god & on al the sayntes of heuen. And wyth grete Ire Rolland smote 24 Corsuble in the brest, Gherard of mondydyer came ayenst Turgys, Ogier smote athenas, And Rychar Amanedys; Guy of bourgoyne atteyned brullant.

There was none of the peres of fraunce but that ouer- 28 threwe hys man and made so grete dyscomfyte of the sarasyns that they were al empesshed to holde them to-gyders and to goo theyr waye, but the other paynyns that conduyted Olyuer wente alwaye forth. And in 32 thys bataylle was slayn guyllam, gualtier, & other ynow of valyaunte peple & many other of the moien peple & others, and laye on the grounde. And gherard de mon-

<sup>1</sup> D viij, back.

He cries on  
Charles for help,  
(912)

and on Roland,  
(913)

Maradas mocks  
him. (914)

Roland and the  
other douzeperes  
charge the Sara-  
cens: (932)

each kills a Sara-  
cen. (945)

Guylam, Gual-  
tier, and others  
are slain (965),  
and

- dydier, the sone of Duke Thyerry, and geffroy langeuyn they bonde dylygently to theyr horses & rode awaye wyth them hastily. but whan charles sawe theym thus
- 4 ladde for angre he loste almoost hys wytte, And wyth an hyghe voys cryed : “ saue, kepe, and socoure the barons. O knyghtes desloyal, that ye be slowe ! yf they lede awaye the barons <sup>1</sup> neuer shal ye fare wel.” whan the
- 8 Frensshe men herde Charles thus moened as enraged smote theyr horses wyth theyr spores and wente down of a mountayn. And there was Rolland fyrst that helde hys swerde durandall drawn for tauenge hym fyersly,
- 12 and hym that he atteyned was sure to passe by the deth. For he was al enraged by cause that they ledde awaye his felowe Olyner, & smote a paynym that he clefte hym to the myddle of hys body. at that tyme
- 16 rolland bare hym myghtely : by cause of the multytude of the paynyns he myght not passe forth for to socoure the barons prysonners and chaced them more than v myle ferre & coude not approche them. & thenne
- 20 were many good knyghtes deed, morfounded, and very. And not wythstondyng Rolland sware that he wold neuer retorne tyl the barons of fraunce were taken fro the handes of theyr enemyes. But he myght not do it,
- 24 For the nyght came on & wyst neuer whyther to goo. The sarasyns that were tofore went fleyng alwaye at theyr playsyr. ¶ Thys seyng Charles wyst not what he shold doo ne say, For he doubted that the paynyns
- 28 made a wache & a ryere garde for to close them, ¶ And therfore by force they must leue the felde in ryzt grete <sup>2</sup> dysplaysyr & anguysshe ; and so al they retorne.
- The second’ partye of the second’ book con-  
 32 teyneth xvij chapytres & speketh of the tormente of the barons of fraunce, & how they that were taken spaken to ballant thadmyral of spayne.

Gerard and Geof-  
frey taken prison-  
ers. (973)

The French try to  
rescue them. (982)

Roland in the  
front.

They chace them  
for more than five  
miles,

till night came  
on, (1013)

when they were  
compelled to turn  
back. (1020)

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> E j.

¶ How Fyerabras was fownden by Charles,  
and after was baptysed' and' heled' of his  
wonde : ca. primo

On his way back  
to the camp  
Charles finds  
Fierabras lying  
under a tree.  
(1037)  
He reproaches  
him.

**A**fter that charles knew that he myght not haue 4  
ageyn Olyuer ne the other prysoners it was force to  
hym to retorne wyth hys people for the nyght was  
thenne to them greuous ; & also in retornynge they  
fonde fyerabras vnder a tre languysshynge, to whom þe 8  
kyng said : O unhappy paynym, I ougt wel to hate the  
for by the been my men prysonners and loste. thou hast  
take fro me oliuer one of the best byloned that I had  
emonge al thumayn creatures : hym þat hath be synguler 12  
to mayntene my good name. & by the in the ende in  
stede of Ioye thou yeldest me sorowe." whan fyerabras  
vnderstode hym he sore syghed & sayd : "O ryche  
emperour & noble, the moost myghty of human lygnage, 16

Fierabras begs for  
mercy, (1042)

In thouour of god I crye the mercy & pardone me.  
It is trouthe that Olyuer hath conquerd me, I shal not  
hyde it, and I haue promysed hym that I shal be  
crystned. I haue left & forsaken al my goddes and yelde 20  
me to Ihesus the creatour of the world. And I requyre  
the yet that I may be baptysed, and yf I were heled of  
my woundes I shal enhance to my power the crysten  
fayth & many sarasyns shal be maad crysten ; and by 24  
my moyan the holy sepulere & the holy reliques shal  
be delyuerd, for whome ye take grete payne and  
trauaylle. And also I make an oth to you by god in  
whom I now beleue that I am more heuy & sory for 28  
Olyuer that noble knyzt whiche is taken prysonner  
than I am for my body whyche is mortally wounded, &  
by the grace of god we shal haue hym ones ; wherfore  
conclude we that I be crystened, For yf I deye sarasyn 32  
it shal be to you reproche." ¶ And vpon thys Charles,  
whyche had grete compassyon on hym, made hym to be  
borne in to hys lodgyng by his barons, and whan they

promises to be-  
come Christian,  
(1046)

and to give up the  
holy relics. (1056)

Charles has pity  
on him and causes  
him to be carried  
to the camp.  
(1067)



- saw hym so hugely membre<sup>d</sup> they al were abasshed of  
his gretenes and largenes, for whan he was vnarmed he  
was one of the semelyest men that euer was. ¶ And  
4 al the Frensshe men gaf grete loes and honour <sup>1</sup>to  
Olyner that had foughiten & ouercomen suche a man ;  
and as he was vnclouted partye of hys woundes opened  
and began to blede wherof hys hert faylled & fyl down  
8 a-swoune, & rolland anone lyfte hym vp. And in al  
haste they made redy a fonte, & sente for tha[r]che-  
byssshop Turpyn and Naymes, which were moche Ioyous  
of this that the paynym shold be crystend. & after that  
12 the baptesme was redy the godfaders gaf hym another  
name & was named floren, (but as longe as he lyued he  
was called Fyerabras,) and thenne he was layed in a  
bedde honourable. And at the laste ende of hys dayes  
16 he was a saynt and god shewed for hym myracles, and  
is now called Saynt Floren of Roye. And thenne  
anone charles made hym to be vysyted by his medycynes  
& surgyens wel expert, & sercheden al his woundes, and  
20 as god wolde they fonde none of his bowellys entamed  
ne hurt, wherfore the leches were sure for to delyuer  
hym al hole wythin ij monethes next after comyngt.  
In makyng thys vysytacion the Emperour charles was  
24 present & sayd to fyerabras : “ yf now olyner & the  
other barons were here present tofore the we shold wel  
be contente.” And charles was thenne al peneyf and  
heuy moche thynkyng vpon hys ba<sup>2</sup>rons prysoners, but  
28 he maad no more semblaunte.

All the French  
admire his size  
and figure. (1076)

He is baptised  
and named  
Floren. (1087)

After his death he  
became a Saint.

Charles orders his  
own physicians  
to attend to him.  
(1092)

They assure him  
that Fierabras  
will be well in  
2 months. (1097)

¶ How Olyner & his felowes were presented  
to ballant thadmyral and' cruelly passyoned  
in pryson : capitulo ij

- 32 **T**He Sarasyns after they had the barons of fraunce  
tofore named for prysoners they taryed not but  
ranne tyl they came in to a ryche cytee named

The Saracens  
carry Oliver  
and the other  
prisoners to  
Aigremore. (1114)

<sup>1</sup> E j, back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

Agrymore ; and at the entre of the sayd cyte they sowned and blewe vp trumpes makynge grete bruyt. whan ballant thadmyral, fader of Fyerabras, sawe them he came vnto them & fonde there brullant of mommyer, 4  
 to whome he sayd : “ O brullant my frende, telle to vs of your tydynges, how ye haue borne you in my warre and affayres. haue ye taken Charles the emperour whyche so moche is redoubted, & his peres of fraunce be they 8  
 dysecomfyted?” Brullant sayd to hym : “ O syr admyral, the tydynges that I brynge you been alle otherwyse, and of lasse valewe than ye say. by Charles the kyng we haue been almost defeated and dyscomfyted. For 12  
 of hys puyssaunce it is a meruayllous thyng. Fyerabras your sone is with hym vaynquysshed by one of his barons and is made crysten, & he was taken vaynquysshed & dyscomfyted in loyal batayl without doying 16  
 ony treson.”<sup>1</sup> whan thadmyral vnderstode this he fyl to therthe al in a traunse, And or he came ageyn to hys mynde it was a grete whyle for the sorowe that he had of hys sone. and whan he was releued he cryed wyth an 20  
 hie voys : “ O dolaunt vnhappy that I am ! ha ! poure caytyf ! what shal bycome of me ? O Fyerabras, my ryght dere sone and heyer, whyther art thou gone ? Fro whens cometh thys trespaas ? wherfore were thou 24  
 taken whyche neuer in bataylle were wery ne had reproche ? ¶ O what euyl tydynges been brought to me of the ! yf he be crysten I am sory that he lyueth : I had moche leuer that he were dysmembred and put to 28  
 deth : ” & thenne as a man feble for sorowe fyl down to the grounde and cryed : “ O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe bruchart ? sythe my sone fyerabras the ledar and captain 32  
 of all, yf it be trewe that he be lost I shal smyte oute the brayne of Mahomet the god whiche hath promysed to me so moche good, to whome I haue gyuen my self and yolden.” Thus sayenge alle in a rage he tormented

<sup>1</sup> E ij.

Balan enquires  
what tidings they  
bring. (1124)

Bruillant tells  
him of their  
defeat. (1129)

and of Oliver's  
victory over  
Fierabras. (1132)

Balan laments  
over his son,  
(1131)

and threatens to  
smash his gods.

- hym self greuously vpon the grounde.<sup>1</sup> And whan  
 thadmyral was a lytel coled of hys grete yre He de-  
 maunded of Brullant: "whiche is the knyzt that hath  
 4 vaynquys-<sup>2</sup>shed fyerabras my sone?" brullant answerd:  
 "Syr admyrall, your sone hath be conquerd by yonde  
 knyght:" in shewyng Olyuer whiche was so fayr & wel  
 formed & membred & had emonge al other his eyen  
 8 bended. Now anone sayd thadmyral of spayn: "hye  
 you & brynge hym to me for I shal neuer ete tyl he be  
 dysmembred." whan the frenssh men vnderstode that  
 he wold do put Olyuer to deth, whiche was al theyr  
 12 comforte, begonne to wepe greuously, & olyuer whiche  
 vnderstode it sawe them waylle he recomforted them  
 sayeng, in suche manere that the sarasyns wyst not  
 what they sayd, "My lordes & my brethern, ye knowe  
 16 our necessite, yf thadmyral myzt know that we be of  
 the peres of fraunce our lyues shal be sone termyned,  
 for no thyng shal he take pyte of vs but that we shal  
 deye shamefully. wherfor I praye you that we al say as  
 20 I shal begynne:" to whome alle the other frensshe men  
 prysonners dyd consente, & wold say & do lyke as he  
 counceyllid them. after that thadmyral had comanded  
 them to come tofore hym the paynyns vnarmed them  
 24 & bonde faste theyr hondes & blynfelde theyr eyen,  
 wherof they were moche greued & daungerously hurt:  
 & anon thadmyral furiously demaunded olyuer: "pou  
 frenssh man, beware that pou<sup>3</sup> lye not but say to me the  
 28 trouthe how thou arte named & hyde it not." Olyuer  
 ansuerd & sayd: "syr, I am named eugynes, sone vnto  
 a yeman of poure lygnage, and was borne in lorayne &  
 cam on a tyme to the courte of Charles emperour,  
 32 whiche gaf to me armes & after adoubed me knyght:  
 & also my felawes that ye see tofore you ben poure  
 knyghtes aduenturous & haue enterprysed payne to  
 serue our kyng, by cause þat by our seruyce we myzt  
 be auanced & haue somme good guerdon & rewarde."

Balan enquires  
 which of the  
 French knights  
 overcame Fiera-  
 bras. (1144)

Brullant points  
 out Oliver. (1116)

Oliver warns his  
 companions not  
 to tell their  
 names. (1155)

Balan demands  
 Oliver's name.  
 (1166)

Oliver answers,  
 "Eugynes, the  
 son of a poor  
 yeoman," (1168)

and says that all  
 his companions  
 are poor knights.  
 (1171)

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* grouude.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> E ij. back.

Balan is vexed at this. (1172)

and orders his chamberlain to bind the French

to a pillar that he may shoot at them.

Bruillant interposes, and reminds him that the day is far gone,

and, moreover, Charles might give Fierabras in exchange for the prisoners. (1181)

Balan assents, and orders them to prison. (1181)

“O Mahoun,” sayd thadmyral, “now I am wel deceyued. I supposed by my god that I had had fyue of the valyaunttest erles of fraunce & of the grettest, & thought I had the kayes of fraunce by the moyen of these 4 barons,” & anone called barbacas his chamberlayn and sayd to hym anone: “depresshe the, take these frensshe men and despoyle them & bynde them harde to that pyler & after brynge me my dartes wel sharped wyth yron, & 8 I shal shote at them and smyte hem at my playsyr.” the me aroos brillant & sayd: “syr admyral, I praye you that at thys tyme that ye do not that enterpryse, for it shal not be wel doo. ye see wel that it is in the euen- 12 tyde & ouer late to do Iustyce, & so ye myght be blamed, seen that your seygnorye ne your lordes be not here now present. wherfore I praye you that at thys tyme ye do no thyng to them tyl to-morowe atte houre that 16 eche man knowe it, & your Iugement shal the better be approued. For I knowe wel that they haue deserued it wel euidently. And on that other syde yf charles the emperour wolde yelde ageyn to you Fyerabras your 20 sone wyth his good wylle ye myght semblably remyse to hym these frenssh men that ye now haue.” “for your loue,” sayd thadmyral, “I am contente,” and sente for Britamont whych was kepar of the pryson, and gaf 24 to hym grete charge to kepe the frensshe men and that he be wel sure of them, and that he sette them in suche place for to lerne how they haue wrought folyly for to come it to hys kepyng. 28

¶ Of the pryson wherin that the Frensshe men were lodged, And how they were vysyted by the fayre Florypes doughter of the admyral, and of the beaulte of hyr: ca. iij 32

AFTER that ballant thadmyral of Spayne had commaunded that the Frensshe men were sette in

- greuous pry<sup>1</sup>-son brut<sup>amont</sup> the geayler made Olyuer & his felawes to auale down in to a pryson moche daungerous, whyche was so depe and strayt in the grounde
- 4 that no lyzt myght be seen: in the which were put & nourysshed serpentis, crapauldes, and other beestes venemous and detestable; in whyche place al stenche was compryse<sup>l</sup>. and there passed a streime of the salte
- 8 see whiche had hys entree wythout conduyt, by whiche water myght one passe whan the tyde was passed. & or the kepar of the pryson went he blynfel<sup>l</sup> them & shiet the dore aboue them, & they beyng in this fylthe
- 12 and stenche anon the water came so habundantly that the poure frenssh men were in the water vnto their sholdres. Thenne the woundes of olyuer began to smerte by cause of the salte water that it perced hys
- 16 hert. ye may wel thynke the payne was grete, But in especyal of olyuer, which was hurt mortally in many places & had grete necessity of remedye, & he was in a place where al his paynes were renewed & his woundes
- 20 opened: for anon as he felte hym bayned in the salte water he fyl down a swoune & had be dede that tyme ne had be gherard de mondydyer who susteyned hym. & ye may demaunde me how they were not drowned
- 24 seeyng that the water grewe alwaye. <sup>2</sup>ye shal vnderstonde that in that pryson of aduenture were two grete pylers wel xv fote hye vpon whiche by grete force they gate vp olyuer which myzt not helpe hym. & whan
- 28 olyuer was sette therupon in grete angnysshe he waylled & sayd: “o poure man & vnhappy put vnder by fals fortune! O Reyner my dere fader, for goddes sake what do ye? knowe ye where I am? thynke ye what I make?
- 32 knowe ye my sorowe? ye shal neuer see me.” this sayeng & other lamentable wordes of desolacyon the valyaunt man Gherard sayd to hym: “Syr oliuer, wayle nomore: vnto suche a knyght as ye be it apperteyneth

Brutamont takes the French knights to a deep dungeon,

full of serpents and other creatures. (1195)

The tide rises as high as their shoulders.

The salt water causes Oliver's wounds to smart.

They save themselves from drowning by climbing a pillar.

Oliver laments over his fate.

Gerard cheers him,

<sup>1</sup> E iij.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

not to make suche *complainte*. reioyce we our self &  
 traiste we in god, whych I wold it plesed that now we  
 and wishes he had his sword, and could get at the Saracens. that be here were aboute at large al armed & eche a good  
 swerde in his hande onely : for I make a vowe to god 4  
 that or we shold be put in to this pytte vaynquysshed  
 I shold put to deth iijC sarasyns or moo." the frensshe  
 men beyng on these pylers of marble afore sayd in  
 Floripas hears their cries and groans. (1202) suche wyse sayeng & other wordes Florypes the syster 8  
 of fyerabras & doughter of thadmyrall herd them & had  
 grete compassyon of þe complayntes that Olyuer made.  
 She is young and well made : with lips like a rose in May : this dougter was yonge & not maryed, was wel comprysed  
 of body ; resonable of lengthe, <sup>1</sup>whyte & rody as rose in 12  
 maye. hyr heyre was shynyng as the fyne golde, & hir  
 vysage termyned in lytel of lengthe : and hyr chere  
 her eyes like a falcon's : lawhyng, hyr eyen clere as fawcon mued, & sparklyng  
 lyke ij sterres. the vysage had she denyed moche egally, 16  
 her nose strait whiche was wel semely ; the ij browes  
 whiche were aboute the eyen appyeryng made shadowe ;  
 hyr chekys rounde, whyte as the flour de lys, a lytel  
 her mouth small : tyssued with reed ; & vnder the nose was her mouth 20  
 roundette, enhaunced in competent space, fro the chynne  
 al wel proporeyoned to the remenaunte of the hede :  
 with litel sholdres strait & egalle : & tofore aboute the  
 her shoulders straight, and her breasts like two apples. gyrdle hir pappes were reysed after the facon of ij 24  
 apples, rounde and euen as the coppe of a l[i]tel mon-  
 tayne. And she was cladde wyth a robe of purple  
 meruayllously ryche fylled & pouldred with sterres of  
 fyn golde, whiche was made of one of the fayrye, & it 28  
 was of grete vertu for the persone that had it myght  
 neuer be poysoned of herbe ne of venym. And florypes  
 So fair is she that a sight of her would satisfy a man who had fasted 3 or 4 days. was so fayre wyth hyr abyllments that yf a persone  
 had fasted iij or iiij dayes with out etyng, & he myght 32  
 see hyr he shold be replenysshed & fylled. & more ouer  
 she bare a mantell whiche was made in the yle of colchos  
 Her mantle was made by a fairy at Colchos. of a woman of the fay-rye (there as Iason gate the

<sup>1</sup> E iij, back.<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

fliese of golde, as it is redde in the destructyon of troye  
 almoost at the begynnyng) whiche mantel had so swete  
 an odour that it was meruaylle. wherfor of the beaulte  
 4 of this damoysele eche man meruaylled. & as I haue said  
 tofore she had wel herde the complaynt of the frensshe  
 men in pryson & in espeeal of Olyuer of whome she  
 had grete pyte, and departed fro hyr chambre with xij  
 8 maydens hir subgettes, & entred first in to the halle Floripas enters  
her father's hail,  
 where as the paynymys were moche desolate for fyerabras  
 whiche was taken & many other grete lordes whiche  
 were deed. & whan the doughter had demaunded and is told of her  
brother's capture.  
 12 tydynges they tolde hyr þat hir broder fyerabras was  
 taken & vaynquysshed; wherfore anone she made a  
 grete crye and syghed for anguysshe. theñe was al the  
 sorowe renewed for hyr sake emonge them, & whan she  
 16 had cessayd a lytel of wepyng she sente anone for bruta-  
 mont & sayd to hym, "what be they that I haue herde  
 speke in the pryson that ben so sorouful?" ¶ "Madame," She asks Bruta-  
mont who the  
prisoners are.  
(1216)  
 said the porter, "they be frenssh men longyng to He tells her. (1219)  
 20 Charles the Kyng whiche neuer cesse to destroye our  
 lawe, slee our peple, repreue our creaunce, and sette a  
 nought our goddes: & haue ben aydyng to slee Fyera-  
 bras your broder. emong whom ther is one of grete  
 24 <sup>1</sup>valure whyche is one of the best made men that euer  
 was knowen, and hath ben so myghty that he conquerd  
 in loyal batayl Fyerabras." Anone florypes had ennye  
 to here hym speke & sayd to brutamont: "I wyl speke Floripas wishes to  
see and speak with  
them, (1226)  
 28 with hem; come and opene the pryson, for I wyl  
 knowe of theyr fayt." brutamont answerd and sayd:  
 "Madame, ye shal pardonne me: ye may not see them  
 by cause of the fylthe and dyschoneste of the place: it but Brutamont  
refuses to open  
the door. (1228)  
 32 apperteyneth not to you. and on that other syde your  
 fader hath defiended me that noo persone shal approche  
 the pryson. And I remembre me now wel that oftymes  
 by a woman I haue knowen somme shamed & deceyued."

Floripas is en-  
 raged, (1254)

and with a staff

strikes him on  
 the head and kills  
 him, (1254)  
 and throws him  
 into the dungeon.  
 (1257)

Floripas opens  
 the door,

and asks the  
 prisoners who  
 they are, (1266)

Oliver answers  
 her, (1268)

Floripas offers to  
 release them if  
 they will promise  
 to do what she  
 wishes, (1280)

Oliver promises.  
 (1284)

when floripes vnderstood she was for angre almoost fro  
 hyr self and sayd to hym : " O euyl glouton despytous,  
 oughtest thou to yeue me suche langage? I promyse  
 the that I shal make the to be payed shortly," & called 4  
 hyr chamberlayn whyche gaf to hyr a staffe, and she  
 made semblaunte to opene the pryson and brutamont  
 gaynsayed it, & sodeynly she, seynge the porter wyth-  
 stonde hyr, gaf hym suche a stroke on the vysage þat 8  
 she made hys eyen flee oute of his heed, & after he fyl  
 down & there she slew hym & threwe hym wythout  
 knowyng of the sarasyns in to the pryson where the  
 freusshe men were : wherof they were sore aferde and 12  
 abasshed when they herd hym, wenyng to them that it  
 had be the deuyl which wold haue tempted & deceyued  
 them. Therne anone florypes dyd doo lyght a torche &  
 dyd do open the pryson & put in the lyght tofore hyr for 16  
 to see the prysonners, & cam nyghe to the pyler & sayd  
 to them : ¶ " O ye lordes, telle to me what ye ar & how  
 ye be named : hyde ye no thyng fro me." Olyuer  
 ansuerd & said : " My fayr lady, we ben of fraunce & 20  
 men of charlemayns, & haue ben brougt hyther to thad-  
 myral, which hath comaunded vs to be here in thys cruel  
 prison : & moche better were it for vs that he dyd vs to  
 be dysmembred & dye than tabyde in this place." the 24  
 curtoys florypes, not-withstondyng þat she was not  
 crystened, had so grete noblesse & so grete compassyon  
 and said to them : " I promyse you that I shal put you  
 out of this pryson, so that ye promette & swere that ye 28  
 shal helpe me to that that I shal say to you." Olyuer  
 ansuerd : " therof, madame, I you assure, & that ye  
 shal fynde vs all suche by effeete as ye shal desyre, &  
 faythful & trewe. For neuer were we other ne neuer 32  
 shal be, & be ye sure that we shall neuer fayle you as  
 longe as we shall haue lyf in our bodyes, so þat we be  
 furnysshed of armes & been <sup>2</sup>aboue for to meddle wyth

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.<sup>2</sup> E liij, back.



the sarasyns, I shal make to them a grete dyscomfyte."

"vassal," sayd the doughter, "ye may auaunte you ouer moche: yet ye be there and wel ferre for to be oute

Floripas begs him to be quiet. (1293)

4 and yet menace ye them that ben at theyr lyberte. It is better a man wysely to be styлле than folysshly to speke." Gherard sayd to the lady: "Damoyssel, I shal saye to you one worde. he that is deteyned and strongly

Gerard excuses him. (1296)

8 empesshet singeth gladly for to forgete his payne and melancholye." And Floripes byhelde gherard the curtoys whyche excused Olyuer of that whyche he spake ouer hardly, but thys was not grete meruaylle.

12 For of the Ioye that olyuer had whan the lady said to hym that they shold be put oute of pryson hym thought thenne to be out and armed at his free wylle. But the lady sayd to gherard: ¶ "In trouthe, syr, ye can wel

Floripas compliments Gerard. (1302)

16 say and excuse your felowe redyly. And I byleue veryly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage in somme chaumbre vnder curteynes & dysporte you in loue: I trowe ye knowe how and what maner." Guillam  
20 the scot answerd and sayd: "by my sowle, madame, ye say soth, & of hym ye haue wel denyed: for fro hens vnto iijC myle ye shal not fynde hys pere.

<sup>1</sup>¶ How the frensshe men were put oute<sup>2</sup> of  
24 pryson and were vysyted by the noble  
mayde Floripes and' of the beaulte of hyr  
chaumbre: capitulo iiij

28 **W**Han the fayr Florypes had spoken at hir playsyr wyth the barons prysonners she called hir chamberlayn and made hym to brynge a corde & a staffe bounden ouerthwart, & after lete it down. And whan the frensshe men sawe it they made fyrst Olyuer to goo  
32 vp, & the lady and hyr chamberleyn drewe hym vp by grete force: & after that the other wente vp lyghtly

Floripas sends for a rope,

and with it draws up Oliver,

and the others after.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* outo.

Floripas leads them by an old disused passage to her chamber, (1319)

which was built by Methusaleh.

It stands on a rock surrounded by the sea, (1332)

and has a wonderful garden.

Maragond, Floripas' governess, recognises Oliver and the other French knights, (1352)

and threatens to tell the Emir, (1358)

Floripas pitches her out of the window, (1362)

ynough. and after she ledde them by an olde gate and secrete, and wythoute knowyng of ony paynym she made them to entre in to hyr chambre, wherof theentre was made mernayllously after the sarasyns werke. 4  
 Aboue the chyef yate was made by grete scyence the heuen & the sterres, the sonne, the mone, the tyme of somer & of wynter; wodes, montaynes, byrdes, beestes, & fysshe were there paynted of all fygures and lyke- 8  
 nesse by mernayllous facyon: & after somme seryptures the sone of mathusale dyd do make it. And thys chambre stooke vpon a blacke rocke al enuyrouned wyth the see, and in one of the quarters <sup>1</sup>was a gardyn 12  
 pretoyre meruayllously fayr wherin floures ne fruytes faylled neuer, & there of al maladyes and sekenesses sauf onely of the maladye of deth was founden comforte and good helpe. There within grewe mandegloyre. 16  
 And with the fayre Floripes were in the gallerye these ladyes, Clarmondyne, florette, Florymonde, & many other fayr vyrgynes. And hir maistresse named maragonde sayd to Florypes: "A, madame, I knowe wel 20  
 these frensshe men. yonder goodly man that ye there see is Olyuer, whyche is sone to Reynier of genes and broder to Audeyne, one of the fayrest that is borne of a woman. And thys is he that hath vaynquysshed fyera- 24  
 bras thy broder. & that other is gherard of Mondidier, which oftymes hath be praysed & honoured. And there is willyam de scot: & the camuse whyche is the hyndmest is geffroy langenyn. but I praye to my god 28  
 mahomet that he curse me yf I euer ete or drynke tyl I haue tolde your fader my lord thadmyrall." Floripes anone chaunged al her colour whan she herde these wordes, & moche secretly she reteyned hyr Ire ayenst 32  
 hyr & called thys woman to hir by the wyndowe, & gaf hyr so grete a stroke that she fyl to the grounde: and called her varlet whyche cam to <sup>2</sup>hyr prestly and threwe

<sup>1</sup> E v.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

- the woman in to the see. For Florypes redoubted moche hyr fader & his malyce. & whan thys olde woman tumbled in to the see Florypes sayd to hyr:
- 4 ¶ “Now goo, thou olde & despytous wretche; thou hast thy guerdon. I am now sure that the frensshe men that ben here ne shal neuer be encombred ne in daunger by the.” and herof the barons made grete Ioye;
- 8 & thenne Floripes the noble lady came vnto the Frensshe men and kyssed them swetely, & whan she sawe oliuer, whyche was al bloody, and knewe wel that he was hurte she sayd to hym: “Syr Olyuer, ne doubte ye not for
- 12 I shal rendre you anone al hole and in good helthe:” & wente to the mandegloyre and took a lytel: & anone as oliuer had vsee it he was al hole & reduced in to good helthe. The barons beyng in this noble chambre
- 16 anone had good fyre, and after were fette to the table and wel pourueyed of al good vytaylle and delycyous metes, of whyche they had grete nede by cause of the grete hungre that they thenne had endured. and after
- 20 mete they had the baynes chauffed, And thenne they layned and refayted them at theyr ease; and at the comyng out of theyr baynes they were wel adoubed wyth mantels ryche of sylke & golde broudred. & thenne
- 24 Floripes sayd: “lordes barons, ye knowe wel how I haue put my self in grete daunger to brynge you oute of pryson mortal, and ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs. For yf of aduenture it were
- 28 knowen it shold turne vs to euyl. I am not in doubte Olyuer whyche is here present hath ouercomen my brother, to whome naturelly I ought to do reproof. I knowe you wel alle, be ye nothing abasshed: ye knowe
- 32 wel that ye haue promysed that my secrete shal be hydde emonge you.” and after the sayd Florypes sayd: “lordes, I shal say to you there is a knyght in fraunce<sup>2</sup> whome I haue longe tyme loued: he is named guy of

The French knights are delighted. (1374)

Floripas sees the blood from Oliver's wound, (1389)

and heals him with a draught, (1389)

The knights are supplied with food, baths, and clothes. (1395)

Floripas reminds them of what she has done for them, (1396)

Floripas tells them she has long loved Guy of Burgundy, (1411)

<sup>1</sup> E v, back.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* frannee.

whom she had  
seen first at Rome  
with Lucifer,  
(1411) and over-  
came him.

For his sake she is  
willing to become  
a Christian. (1123)

Gerard says they  
will do anything  
if she will give  
them arms.

Floripas gives  
them a damsel  
a-piece.

All this was very  
noble of Floripas,  
but shows the  
natural curiosity  
of women,

bourgoyne, whiche is the moost godelyest man that I knowe & is of the parentage of Charlemayn & of the myzty Rolland. ¶ On a tyme when I was at Rome I sawe hym, & sythe that tyme I haue gyuen to hym myn 4 hert. whan my fader the admyral destroyed Rome, Iucifar of bandas which was moche redoubted emonge the Paynymys & the sayd guy of bourgoyne Iusteden togyder, but the sayd guy valyauntly smote hym down to 8 the erthe from hys hors, whyche moche plesyd me, And took in gree the valyaunce of hym in suche wyse that yf I haue <sup>1</sup>hym not to husbond I shal neuer marye. And for the loue of hym I wyl be baptysed 12 & bylene in the god of crysten men." With these wordes the freysshe men were moche Ioyous, and gyuen grete thankynges to god for the good wyll of thys fayre mayde. and Gherard de mondydyer sayd to hyr : 16 "Madame, I swere to you that yf we now were armed & were in the halle emonge the sarasyns we shold make on them a grete dyscomfyture." But florypes was wyse and sayd : "lordes, late vs thynke wysely on our 20 affayres. And sythe that ye be in surete take a litel reste. Loo, here vj maydens of grete noblesse : Eche of you take one for hys owne, for the better to passe wyth the tyme : & reste and take your playsyr, And I 24 shal warante you. For as for myself I shal neuer haue to do with man but wyth Guy of bourgoyne to whome I haue gyuen my herte." Neuertheles for to consyder wel this chapytre there was a grete werke comprysed 28 whan fyrst florypes the curtoys which was a paynym had desyre to speke wyth the freysshe men. alle this toucheth wel the desyre & wyll of wymmen for to knowe newe thynges and tydynges, but as moche as 32 touched the werke that she dyd ayenst the kepar of the pryson & how they were taken <sup>2</sup>oute That was the werke of a man wel approued, and it had ben grete

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> E vj.

damage yf these barons had abyden in pryson. But the  
 fayth of persones doth grete alegement of tormente, for  
 the sayntes of heuen by theyr holy fayth haue obteyned  
 4 heuen, and many other terryen men victorye of their  
 enemyes. and wyth good ryght he that fyghteth for the  
 fayth, and it happe that he be deteyned, the mercy of  
 god is nyghe for to delyuer hym. The cause wherfore  
 8 they were delyuerd fro pryson was come fro ferre, that  
 was of rome, for guy of bourgoyne whome she had in  
 loue, and was contente for to be baptysed and byleue in  
 god for to haue the sayd guy in maryage to hyr hus-  
 12 bonde. wherfore it may not wel be comprysed how loue  
 in this damoysele was fixcd and comprysed of longe  
 affectyon, the which was cause of sauynge of the pry-  
 soners whyche were, as I haue sayd, in grete daunger.

and the knights  
 had to thank her  
 love for Guy for  
 their release.

16 ¶ How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thad-  
 myral, seuen peres of Fraunce whyche  
 wold' not haue goon: capitulo v

20 **T**He Duc of genes, fader of Olyuer, which mygt not  
 slepe ne ete ne drinke for the sorowe that he  
 had for this sone, whan he myght no lenger  
 endure, he came to kyng charles, and sayd to hym :  
 "Syr Emperour, for the loue of god haue pyte on me !  
 24 ye knowe my sorowe : ought I to lose olyuer my sone,  
 for whome I am in contynuell anguysshe? yf I haue  
 none other tydynge, I shal deye or ij dayes of melan-  
 colye, or of force I must put my self on the waye to goo  
 28 thyder." whan charles vnderstode hym, he was moeued  
 and full of compassyon for the melancolye of Reyner,  
 & sente for Rolland and sayd to hym : "Fayre neuewe  
 rolland, vnderstonde me. To-morne in the mornynge  
 32 thou must goo to Aygremore, & shalt say to ballant  
 thadmyral wythoute ony hydynge, that he delyuer to the

Reyner is in great  
 grief for his son,  
 (1425)

and says he must  
 go and find him.  
 1431

Charles tells  
 Roland that he  
 must go to Balan,  
 the next morning,

and demand from him the relics and the release of his prisoners. (1436)

the crowne of Ihesu cryst & the other relyques for which I haue taken grete payne : And after aske of hym my barons whom he holdeth in pryson. And yf he wythsaye the, say to hym that I shal hym do be 4 drawen vylaynously, & after hange hym by the neeke, his eye[n] bounden as a theef." whan he had said, Rol- land answered : " Syr kyng and fayre vnele, haue mercy on me ! I am wel sure that yf I goo, verayly I shal 8 neuer see you." ¶ The duke naymes was there, whyche sayd : " syr emperour, take hede what ye doo. Rolland is your neuwe ; ye knowe of what <sup>1</sup> valewe he is of. yf he goo thyder, he shal neuer come ageyn." " And I 12 assure you," sayd Charles, " that ye shal goo wyth hym, and bere my letters that I sende to thadmyral." Thys sayd, Basyn the genewey came forth, and sayd to hym : " & how, syr, wyl ye thus lese your knyghtes ? I am 16 certayn that yf they goo as ye haue sayd, that there shal not one retorne." ¶ Charles sware by his eyen in his heed, that basyn shold goo wyth the other tweyne, and so ther shal be thre. Thyerry, duc of ardayne, sayd 20 lyke to thother ; therefore he was ordeyned to goo also. Ogier, (1140) Ogier the danoyis semblably sayd they ought not goo ; and therefore he was ordeyned to bere them felywshyp.

Roland remon- strate,

as also does Naymes. (1436)

Charles says Naymes shall go too. (1452)

Basyn protests, and Charles orders him to go also, (1458) and likewise Terry, (1472)

Richard of Nor- mandy, (1460)

and Guy of Bur- gundy, (1488)

Rychard of Normandye came to the emperour and 24 sayd : " Syr kyng, I am al abashed how ye haue noo pyte of your knyghtes, whyche wyllingly ye wyl make them to deye. I wote wel yf they goo thyder, ye haue loste them." " by the god on whome I byleue," sayd 28 charles, " ye shal goo wyth the other ; and thenne shal ye be vj for to bere my letters to ballant thadmyral whome I soo moche hate." And after, he behelde gny of bourgoyne, and sayd to hym : " come to me : ye are my 32 cosyn, and of my next parentage : ye shall be the senenth for to doo my message to thadmyral of spayne. <sup>2</sup> And ye shal say to hym that I purpose to baptyse hym, &

<sup>1</sup> e vj, back.<sup>2</sup> e vj, back, col. 2.

that he holde of me his Royame, hys townes and hys  
 cytees, & that he delyuer to me the relyques for whome  
 I take on me soo grete payne and trauaylle. And yf he  
 4 gaynsaye it, say ye to hym that I shal doo hange hym,  
 and make to dye vylaynously." "alas!" sayd Guy of  
 bourgoyne, "ryght dere syr and emperour, I knowe now  
 wel that ye wyl lese me. yf I goo, I am sure I shal neuer  
 8 retorne." & thenne at euen they went al to souper.  
 And on the morne, assone as the sonne aroos, the seuten  
 barons aforesayd came tofore Charles, And syr Naymes  
 said for them al: "Emperour of noblesse, redoubted in  
 12 al places, we been here for to beye thy commaundement.  
 We praye the that thou gyue vs lycence and congie for  
 to departe; & yf there be ony persone here present, or in  
 al thexcersyte, that hath trespaced to vs, we pardonne  
 16 hym, & semblably yf we haue offended to ony, In  
 thonour of god that it be pardoned to vs." with these  
 wordes all the frensshe men that were present began to  
 wepe for pyte. And charles sayd to the barons:  
 20 "Ryght dere and wel byloued, vnto god of heuen I  
 commaunde you; and the meryte of his holy passyon  
 and of the holy crosse be in your ayde & comfort."  
 And so they departed on theyr waye hastely, transport-  
 24 yng them vnto the straunge contreye.

Guy bezs off,  
 but in vain.

In the morning  
 the messengers  
 appear before  
 Charles, (1499)

who commends  
 them to God,

and so they  
 depart. (1503)

¶ How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns  
 to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras,  
 which were recountred by the peres of  
 28 fraunce, and' slayn: capitulo vj

IN aygremore was thenne ballant thadmyral, al  
 sorowful and angry, & had sente for xv kynges sara-  
 32 sains for to haue theyr counceyll, whiche at hys  
 commaundement came: & one maradas, the moost fyerce  
 of the xv, spake fyrst to ballant and sayd: "Syr admyral, Maradas asks

why they have  
been called toge-  
ther. (1516)

Balan tells them  
that they must go  
the next morning  
to Mornmyonde,  
(1522)

and demand from  
Charles the sur-  
render of Fierab-  
bras, and homage  
for France. (1526)

Maradas pro-  
tests, but says  
they will go.  
(1538)

They arm them-  
selves, (1546)

and start. (1548)

wherefore hast thou sente for vs ?" ballant answerd and  
sayd : " lordes, I shal say to you þ<sup>e</sup> trouth. Charle-  
mayn of fraunce requyreth of me grete folye. For he  
wyl that I be subgette to hym, & that I holde al my 4  
londes of hym. but thys shal not be ; and he is a moche  
fole, me thynketh, to enterpryse suche folyes. It were  
better to hym to take hys playsyr to slepe, & reste in  
his chambres hys olde body, & praye god in his 8  
chyrches, and ete suche as he hath. Neuertheles I  
couneeyl you that ye goo to hym to mornmyonde where  
as he is lodged, and say to hym that I comaunde <sup>1</sup>hym,  
olde dotard, that he bylene in mahoun our god wyth- 12  
oute delaye ; & aboue that, for to sende and yelde to me  
ageyn my sone Fyerabras, for whome I am deteyned in  
grete anguysshe and sorowe. And furthermore I wyl  
that he holde of me al Fraunce and hys regyons : and 16  
yf he do not as ye shal deuysel, I shal goo fetche hym  
wyth an hondred thousand men armed. And yf by  
aduenture ye fynde in your waye any crysten man, smyte  
of his heed wythout any mercy : " whan thadmyral had 20  
sayd, Maradas answerd : " Syr admyrall, I knowe now  
wel that ye wyl haue vs destroyed, for the freysssh men  
ben moche felons. And yf we say that ye haue purposed,  
he shal sone make an ende of vs, for we shal be dys- 24  
membred. but bylene ye not that I say thys for coward-  
yse or for to eschewe your commaundement, but that I  
wyl accomplysshe it. For I haue suche courage, that yf  
by aduenture I medle wyth these crysten men, I shal 28  
put to dethe ten or I be wery. And yf I do not as I  
haue sayd, I wyl that ye do smyte of my hede." alle  
his felawes sayden that eche of them shold do as wel  
as Maradas ; wherefore wythoute more delyberacyon they 32  
wente to horse-backe, wel armed, & grete speres in theyr  
hondes, with penons <sup>2</sup>reyed puyssauntly, and Iour-  
neyed forth on theyr waye, and rested not tyl they

<sup>1</sup> e vij. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> e vij. back.



- passed the brydge of mantryble ; & assone as they myght,  
 they passed ouer. And the frensshe men afore named  
 came and recountred those sarasyns. And fyrst, duc  
 4 Naymes espyed them, & sayd to his felowes : " O lord  
 god of heuen, what enterpryse hath these sarasyns made !  
 See ye not them, how they come ayenst vs wyth grete  
 puyssance ? aduysse we vs what is best to doo." Rolland  
 8 sayd : " my lordes, ne doute ye noo thyng. Beholde,  
 and see them ; they be not passyng<sup>1</sup> xx or xxx ; late vs  
 ryde straye to them." They alle were of hys oppynyon,  
 and ryde forth fast ayenst them. ¶ Of the partye of  
 12 the sarasyns was Maradas puyssaunt & wel armed,  
 whyche went and sayd to the frensshe men : " how be  
 ye so Infortunat and cursyd to come and mete wyth vs,  
 and ye be cristen ?" Duke Naymes ansuerd : " what  
 16 someuer thou be, thou spekest vylaynously and ouer  
 folysshly : we be men longyng to þ<sup>e</sup> redoubted emperour  
 Charles, and goo in hys name to do a message to Ballant  
 thadmyral." Maradas sayd to hym : " ye be in dannger :  
 20 wyl ye defende you or doo otherwyse ?" Naymes  
 ansuerd : " we wyl defende vs by the helpe of Ihesu  
 our maker." maradas said : " which<sup>1</sup> of you dare Iuste  
 ayenst me ?" " I am al redy," sayd Naymes. Maradas  
 24 sayd : " thou art moche presumptuous ; For yf I had  
 suche ten as thou arte, I wold confounde<sup>2</sup> them al wyth  
 my swerde, and bere theyr hedes to thadmyral, wythout  
 gretely to wery me." and after sayd to hys felowes :  
 28 " herkene hyther, syrs, I wyl that no persone of you  
 moene, For I allone wyl conquere them alle ; and after  
 I shal present them to ballant thadmyrall." whan rolland  
 had herde, he was almoost araged for anger, and after  
 32 sayd to Maradas : " thou hast folyly spoken and thought  
 thyng whyche thou shalt neuer see. or it be euen, þou  
 shalt knowe what we can do. kepe the fro me, for I  
 delyfe the." And whan he had thus sayd, he broched

After they had  
 passed Mantribe  
 Naymes sees them  
 coming, (1555)  
 and is frightened.

Roland advises  
 them to fight.  
 (1563)

Maradas chal-  
 lenges them, (1568)

and asks if any of  
 them will fight  
 him. (1576)

Naymes offers to  
 do so, (1577)  
 but Maradas  
 mocks at him,  
 and says he is too  
 old. (1579)

Roland is enraged  
 at this,

<sup>1</sup> e vij. back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. confounde.

charges at him,  
(1559)

and cuts him  
down with  
Durandal. (1605)

The other Sara-  
cens try to avenge  
his death,

but are all slain  
save one. 1621

who escaped and  
carried the news  
to Balan. (1627)

hys hors wyth his spores sharply. And they recountred  
soo harde with their speres square & sharpe, that it was  
grete meruayle that bothe were not dede with þ<sup>e</sup> stroke,  
theyr hawberks were al to-broken. And wyth theyr 4  
swerdes they smote the helmes rycheley wrought.  
Rolland was so furyous, that he<sup>1</sup> helde durandal, and  
araught maradas vpon his helme, that he descerkled and  
departed it; & after by grete force reconer<sup>t</sup> hys stroke 8  
vpon hys bare hede, and clefte it vnto vnder hys brayne:  
and al dede ma<sup>2</sup>radas fyl down to therthe. whan the  
other sawe kynge Maradas dede, and that Rolland wolde  
haue borne awaye hys heed, they loked eche on other as 12  
al abasshed, and concluded to take vengeance on the  
frensshe men, and rommen vpon rolland for to haue put  
hym to deth, but he deffended hym ouer mernayllously.  
And there-vpon that one partye came vpon that other, 16  
& helde them in bataylle so valyauntlye, in espeeual  
the frensshe men ayenst the sarasyns, that alle the  
paynyns were slayne, & none saued of the xv, but one,  
whiche fledde whan he sawe his felowes dede, and went 20  
for to shewe how they were destroyed by the frenssh  
men, & neuer cessed tyl he came to thadmyral. To  
whome thadmyral sayd: "Syr kynge, ye be wel hasty  
to retorne! telle me now how ye haue done." That 24  
other sayd to hym: "syr admyrall, by mahoun, it gooth  
ryght euyl. beyonde the brydge of mantryble we  
recountred seuen glotons of frauwe, which were men of  
kyng Charles al enraged, and sayd that they came in 28  
hys name to do a message vnto you, & after, they ranne  
vpon vs, and haue doon theyr deuoyr so gretely ayenst  
vs, that al be dede sauf I, whyche am escaped wyth  
grete payne for to come and shewe to you." whan 32  
thadmyral vnderstode thys, he was almost dede for  
sorowe of the deth o hys kynges aforesayd.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* he he.

<sup>2</sup> e viij.

<sup>3</sup> e viij, col. 2

¶ Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble ;  
 of the trybute there payed' for to passe  
 ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the  
 4 frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge :  
 capitulo vij

8 **W**Han the frensshe men aforesayd had put to deth  
 the sarasyns, they were al traunylled and wery,  
 and wente and rested them in a medowe al  
 grene and ful of swete floures : and after sayd the due  
 naymes : " my lordes, I counceylle you that we retorne  
 to Charles, and say to hym how we haue doon ; & I wote  
 12 wel that he shal be wel contente whan he shall knowe  
 how we haue gouerned vs." Thenne Rolland answerd  
 and sayd : " How, Syr naymes, speke ye of retornynge ?  
 Speke not therof, For as longe as I may holde durandal  
 16 in my hond, by the playsyr of god I thynke not to  
 retorne. For we wyl doo our message to ballant thad-  
 myral, how soueuer it be. and late vs do one thyng  
 wherof euery man shal speke. late eche of vs take one  
 20 of these hedes, and we shal presente them to thadmyral."  
 Naymes sayd to hym : " syr Rolland, it semeth that  
 ye be oute of your wytte. For yf we do so, we shal be  
 anone slayn." Thyery and the other were of thoppyn-  
 24 yon of Rolland ; and so eche of them toke an hede, and  
 rode forth on theyr waye. Due naymes was the fyrst  
 that wente & behelde the brydge of mantryble, whyche  
 was meruayllous, as ye shal here, and sayd to his felowes :  
 28 " lordes, ye shal vnderstonde that beyonde the brydge is  
 Aygremore, where we shal fynde thadmyral." Ogier  
 the danoys sayd : " vs byhoneth fyrst to passe by thys  
 brydge, whych is moche daungerous. There ben xxx  
 32 arches of marble wel spacyous & brode, whyche been  
 soulded wyth leed and eyment, & with grete barres of  
 yron : vpon<sup>2</sup> whyche brydge been grete towres wyth

The French rest  
 themselves,  
 and debate what  
 to do. (1649)

Naymes proposes  
 to return, (1653)

but Roland will  
 not agree,

and suggests each  
 should take the  
 head of one of the  
 Saracen kings  
 and present them  
 to Balan, (1662)

to which they all  
 agree.

Ogier describes  
 the bridge of  
 Mantribie, (1678)

<sup>1</sup> e viij, back.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. wpon.

The walls of the bridge are ten ells, and 20 knights can go on it abreast.

The river under is called Flagot, (1699)

and runs so fiercely that no boat could live in it.

The bridge-ward is a giant, Galafré by name. (1700)

Roland says he is not afraid to cross, (1710) in spite of the giant,

but Naymes says he will manage to cheat him. (1717)

fayr pylers rycheley ordeyned, & the walles ben of grete  
 strengthe. For at the lowest may wel be mesured ten  
 ellys a brede. hyt is soo brode that xx knyghtes may  
 goo arme in arme at their ease. & there is a drawebrydge 4  
 for to drawe vp, whiche descendeth wyth ten grete  
 chaynes of yron. And aboute on hye is an egle of golde  
 moche replendysshauhte and shynyng lyke the sonne,  
 that it semeth that it were a flame of fyre, whyche is 8  
 seen a large myle ferre. and the ryuer that passeth vnder  
 is named fla<sup>g</sup>ot, whyche is byneth the arche by mesure  
 xv foot, and remeth so Inpytuously as a quarel out of an  
 arbalastre, in suche wyse that neyther bote ne galeye 12  
 may passe ouer, for the grete cours of the water. And  
 more ouer this brydge is keppe wyth a geaunte for  
 thadmyral, whyche geaunte is named Galafré, one of the  
 moost terryble of humayn people. And he holdeth a 16  
 grete axe of stele for to destroye them that wyl doo  
 ayenst his wylle. And who that wyl speke wyth  
 thadmyral must nedes passe by hym." "Seygnours,"  
 sayd rolland, "doubte ye no thyng, I praye you: care 20  
 not for passyng ouer the brydge, For I swere to you  
 that as longe as it shal please god to kepe my body, &  
 that I may holde durandal in my honde, I shal not doubte  
 ony paynym the valewe of a peny, what someuer he be. 24  
 And by god that henge on the crosse, I shal smyte the  
 porter yf he come tofore me, what someuer shal happe."  
 Due naymes of bauyere reprysed hym: "Rolland, ye  
 speke not wysely. It is not good to gyue a stroke for to 28  
 receyue therfore fyftene: late me do; For by the playsyr  
 of god and of his sayntes, I shal say to hym suche  
 lesynges and other thynges that we shal passe wyth  
 oute daunger." whan the frensshe men came tofore the 32  
 brydge, the porter toke an hondred knyghtes, & came  
 & aualed the lytel brydge wyth as many guysarmes &  
 other clayues of defence. The fyrst that went byfore was

<sup>1</sup> e viij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> f j.

- due naymes with hys whyte heeres, for he was older than any of the other. Anon the porter passed ouer & toke Naymes by the honde, & drewe hym ouer, & after
- 4 sayd to hym: "whyther wylt thou goo?" Naymes answered: "I shal say you the trouthe. we be men of charles, the noble emperour, & goo to Aygremore to do a message to ballant thadmyral. But certeynly he hath
- 8 quytte his contreye of fals peple, for it is not longe tyme passed that on the felde we fonde xv gloutons, whyche wolde haue taken fro vs our lyf & our horses. Neuertheles we haue gouerned them in suche manere that
- 12 here ben the hedes. beholde them wel what they be, yf ye byleue me not." whan the porter herde hym, he was almoost oute of hys wytte for angre, & sayd to Naymes: "vassal, vnderstonde me! ye must paye the passage of
- 16 the brydge tofore al thyng." Due Naymes sayd: "porter, demaunde what ye ought to haue, & we shal contente you." "by mahoun," sayd the porter, "it is not a lytel. For I aske of you xxx couple houndes,
- 20 after, an C maydens chaste & of good maners, an C faweons me<sup>1</sup>wed, an C palfroies in good poynte & rested, and for euery foot of the horses a marke of fyn gold; & atte last I must haue ii[ij] sommyers charged
- 24 with golde & syluer. thus ought ye paye, or ellys come not here. and he that may not paye the trybute tofore deuysed, he must lese hys heed wythoute other exensaeyon." due Naymes was not abasshed, Notwithstondyng
- 28 that he knewe the oecasyon that the porter sought that they shold deye, by cause that it was not possyble to paye that he had deuysed: & answered to the porter in this manere, and sayd: "Syr porter,
- 32 yf I owe noo more than ye haue sayd, ye shal be contente or mydday be passed. Our bagayge cometh after vs, and harnois more in nombre than an hondred thousand, where there be maydens fayr, &

Naymes rides in front.

Galafre stops him and asks his business. (1726)

Naymes says they are messengers from Charles to Balan. (1727)

Galafre demands his toll,

30 couples of hounds, 100 maidens, 100 falcons,

100 steeds, and 400 marks of gold

and 4 packhorses laden with gold. (1749)

Naymes says that Galafre will find all this and more in their baggage, which is following them. (1748)

<sup>1</sup> f j, col. 2.

gentyl fawcons, & dogges grete plente, hawberks, helmes, and good sheldes wythoute nombre, And many other Jewellys noble and ryche : take of them as it shalle playse your wylle.” ¶ The portyer supposed that he had 4 said trouthe, and was wel contente, and lete the brydge down, and after they passed ouer lyghtly. Rolland, which myght not forbere lawhyng, sayd : “ In trouthe, syr Duc Naymes, ye haue wel spoken, for by lesynges 8 we passe thys brydge.” and rolland came <sup>1</sup> behynde alle the other ; & whan they were a lytel forth vpon the brydge, Roulland encountred a Turke, and sythe sayd in his courage : “ A, lord god of paradys, late me do a 12 thyng wherof thou mayst be honoured, and alle thyng happe wel,” and withoute sayeng of ony worde to his felowes, he lyghted down from hys hors, and toke thylke turk by the myddel, and threwe hym hastely in to the 16 ryuer. ¶ Duc Naymes loket behynde hym, and sawe the paynym falle, and was moche angry, and sayd : “ lord god of heuen, I trowe the deuyl is in the body of Roulland ! he can haue noo pryncence in hym. and yf god 20 helpe vs not, he shal cause vs al to be slayn and vylaynly deye.” For Rolland was so fyers of courage that he toke none hede of the tyme ne the place how to gonerne<sup>2</sup> hym, but wold alwaye auenge hym on his 24 enemye where he myzt fynde hym.

¶ How the barons came and’ spake to the Admirall, and’ how they dyd’ theyr message : capitulo viij 28

The French knights enter into Aigremore. 176.

**T**He barons afore sayd, whan they had passed the brydge and were nyghe vnto aygremore, where as ballant was, they entred in to the towne in <sup>3</sup>good ordynaunce, and wyth countenaunce of fyersnes and of 32 noblesse. And they sawe in the stretes, fawcons and

<sup>1</sup> f j. back.    <sup>2</sup> *Orig.* gruerne.    <sup>3</sup> f j. back, col. 2.

other byrdes of preye vpon the perches, grete oxen and  
 buefs slayn & flayn, fayre hangyng, and grete swyn  
 strangled; and they recou<sup>nt</sup>red a sarasyn whome they  
 4 demaunded where thadmyral was. And he shewed hym  
 to them, where he satte vnder a tree in the shadowe. and  
 thenne they alyghted, and duc Naymes sayd: "my fayre  
 lordes, I shal bere the letter and shal speke fyrst, and ye  
 8 after." Roulland was there, and present hym, and wolde  
 by force haue spoken fyrst. & duc Naymes sayd to hym  
 "Say not one word, for ye be al fro your self, wythoute  
 hauyng<sup>t</sup> attemperaunce. but god do not to vs grete grace,  
 12 ye shal make vs alle to deye or the day be passed."  
 And herupon they entred and presented them al tofore  
 the admyral wythoute ony reuerence. And duc Naymes  
 of bauyere spake fyrst in thys manere: "The maker of  
 16 alle the world, to whom onely ought to be gyuen creaunce  
 entyere and honoure, saue and kepe the noble kyng  
 charlemayn, puyssaunt, stronge & wyse emperour, rol-  
 land & olyuer, & al the other pyeres of fraunce, and  
 20 confounde, fro the toppe of the hiede vnto the plantes  
 of the feet, the Admyral<sup>1</sup> here present, as moche as  
 tofore yesterday hys subgettes were euyl pourueyed be-  
 yonde þ<sup>e</sup> bridge of mantryble. we fonde fyftene glotons  
 24 on the felde, which wolde haue taken from vs our horses  
 and do to vs vylomnye, but, god of heuen be thanked,  
 they bought it gretely and dere." ¶ When the Admy-  
 ral vnderstoode this langage, vnnethe he myght kepe  
 28 hymself fro enragyng. And there tofore hym came  
 the kyng that escaped, of whome I haue spoken tofore,  
 and sayd to thadmyral in thys manere: "Ryght dere  
 syr, thynke to aduenge you. These been the seuen  
 32 glotons of whyche I tolde to you, whyche haue slayn  
 your kynges, and haue doon to you suche vylomnye."  
 The admyral Ballant ansuerd: "late them be for thys  
 tyme:" and sythe after sayd to Naymes the duc<sup>2</sup>, that

A Saracen shows  
 them the way to  
 Balan. (1772)

Naymes says he  
 will deliver the  
 message. (1776)

They present  
 themselves before  
 the Emir.

Naymes begins  
 his message by  
 cursing Balan and  
 his men.

Balan is enraged.

The Saracen king,  
 which had  
 escaped,  
 tells him who the  
 French knights  
 are.

<sup>1</sup> f ij.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* duc.

be shold<sup>t</sup> fynyshe hys message. And the duc ansuerd  
 that he so do wold<sup>t</sup> gladly, and<sup>t</sup> sayd<sup>t</sup> in thys manere :  
 "The grete noble kyng<sup>t</sup> of Fraunce commaundeth the  
 that thou rendre to hym the crowne, with whyche the 4  
 blessyd<sup>t</sup> Ihesu Cryste was crowned<sup>t</sup> wyth, and<sup>t</sup> the other  
 relyques for whome he hath taken grete trauaylle and<sup>t</sup>  
 payne ; & also his knyghtes whom thou holdest in  
 pryson folysshly. and<sup>t</sup> yf thou do not as I haue to the 8  
 deuysed<sup>t</sup>, Charles shal make the <sup>1</sup>to be hanged<sup>t</sup> by the  
 necke on a gybet and<sup>t</sup> strangled vylaynously." Thad-  
 myral ballant, replenysshed<sup>t</sup> of an entencyon moche  
 oultrageous, sayd<sup>t</sup> to Naymes the duc : "Thou hast 12  
 gretely defouled<sup>t</sup> me by oultrage, and<sup>t</sup> I haue wyllyngly  
 herde the. Goo forth and<sup>t</sup> sytte down by yonde pyler,  
 & these other shal speken whom I haue not yet herde.  
 Mahomet my god<sup>t</sup>, to whome I haue gyuen myself, 16  
 gyue me an euyl deth yf euer I ete or drynk tyl I see  
 thy hede flee fro thy sholdres." The duc Naymes  
 ansuerd : "yf it playse god<sup>t</sup> my maker, & his blessyd  
 moder, þou shalt haue made a lesyng." After hym 20  
 spake Rycharde duc of Normandy, & said : "vnder-  
 stonde me, syr admyral ! Charles the kyng, with his  
 berde florysshed, comandeth the by me, y<sup>t</sup> thou do the  
 baptyse for tamende thy ryght euyl lyf, & that thou 24  
 sende to hym the relyques that thou hast in thy puyss-  
 saunce, & also that thou rendre to hym hys knyghtes,  
 whyche thou holdest wythout reson for prysoners. & yf  
 thou do not as thou hast herde, charles shal do hange 28  
 the by the necke on a gybet & strangle þe, & shal neuer  
 haue mercy on the." Thadmyral ballant supposed<sup>t</sup> to  
 haue knowen hym, & sayd<sup>t</sup> thus : "mahomet, in whom  
 I byleue, curse the ! thou resemblst wel Rycharde of 32  
 normandy, whych slewe my <sup>2</sup>vncle corsuble. Now  
 wold<sup>t</sup> Mahoun the god<sup>t</sup> that he were here ! he shold<sup>t</sup>  
 neuer ete mete tyl he were dede. Goo and<sup>t</sup> sytte down

Naymes delivers  
 the message,  
 demanding the  
 sacred relics,  
 (1808)

and the release of  
 the prisoners.  
 (1810)

Balan in a rage

bids him stand  
 aside, (1826)

swearing that he  
 will have him put  
 to death.

Richard of Nor-  
 mandy delivers  
 the message 1846  
 to the same effect.

Balan recognizes  
 and curses him.  
 (1860)

and bids him  
 stand aside with  
 Naymes.

<sup>1</sup> f ij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> f ij, back.



- by thy felowe, vnto I haue herde thy felowes." Aftyr  
 thys thenne came basyn the genewey, & stode tofore  
 ballant and sayd: "Ballant admyral, the noble charles,  
 4 aboute al humayn creatures redoubted, commaundeth  
 the to rendre to hym the relyques whyche haue been  
 requyred of the, or ellys he shal do hange and strangle  
 the as a theef pruned." whan he had sayd thus, he went  
 8 and satte wyth the other. And after came thyerry, due  
 of Ardayne, & dyssymyled his chyere & countenaunce  
 of manere. whan thadmyral sawe that he had the re-  
 garde so hydous, he was moche abasshed, and supposed  
 12 that he had ben a deuyll. And after, thyerry sayd:  
 "herkene to me, admyral, & reteyne wel my wordes.  
 Charles, the noble emperour redoubted, commaundeth  
 the that thou sende to hym the relyques which thou  
 16 barest awaye fro Rome, & also sende vnto hym hys  
 barons whyche thou hast in thy power, or ellys be thou  
 sure that he shal do dysmembre the, & doo hange the  
 vylaynsly by the necke." Thadmyral answerd: "vas-  
 20 sal, I praye the to telle to me, and hyde it not, what  
 man is charlemayn, and of what force & strengthe<sup>1</sup> is  
 he, of the whiche I haue herde moche preysed &  
 vaunted?" Theñne the due Thyerry ansuerd: "I telle  
 24 to the, admyral, & lete the wete, that Charles is noble &  
 hardy, curtoys and of good lyf. And be thou sure, that  
 yf he were present here wyth hys excersyte, moche sone  
 he shold gyue the a buffet vpon thy vysage. And on  
 28 that other syde, he setteth nomore by the than of an  
 okle hounde dede, or of a roten apple." Incontynent  
 the ballant the admyrall bygan to lawhe for felonnye, &  
 after sayd to Thyerry: ¶ "My frende, by thy fayth  
 32 that thou owest to thy god, say to me now the trouth.  
 yf I were now in thy wyll and subgectyon, as thou  
 arte in myn, by thy fayth what woldest thou do wyth  
 me?" "by my fayth," sayd Thyerry, "I shal not lye.

After him Basyn  
 repeats the mes-  
 sage, (1864)

and after him  
 Terry of Ardayne,  
 (1874)

at whose appear-  
 ance Balan is  
 frightened. (1888)

He asks Terry to  
 describe Charles  
 to him. (1892)

Terry tells him  
 that Charles is  
 noble and brave,

and cares no more  
 for Balan than for  
 a dead dog or a  
 rotten apple.

Balan laughs

<sup>1</sup> f ij, back, col. 2.

I shold doo hange the by the necke, and strangle the  
 vylaynsly on a gybet or it were yet nyght." ¶ "Vas-  
 sal," sayd the Admyrall, "thou hast sayd grete folye.  
 For by Mahommet my god, in lyke wyse shal I doo of 4  
 the, as thou hast sayd of thy self. Goo thou and sytte  
 by thy felawes." ¶ Thenne after hym came the good  
 Ogier the danoys tofore hym, and sayd: "O Admyral  
 of Spaygne, vnderstonde what Charles, the moost noble 8  
 of humayn creatures and moost ryche <sup>1</sup>wythoute com-  
 paryson, demaundeth of the. Rendre and yelde to hym  
 the relyques whyche thou hast borne awaye, or ellys he  
 shal do dysmembre the, and doo the deye shamefully." 12  
 Thadmyral, beyng al wroth, made hym to sytte wyth  
 the other. After hym, rolland the courageous came to-  
 fore Ballant thadmyral, wythoute doynge to hym ony  
 reuerence, and sayd to hym: "Thou sarasyn, unhappy 16  
 & cursd, take hede to my wordes! Charles, the noble  
 kyng and Emperour redoubt, sendeth to the by me,  
 that thou hyleue in god Ihesu cryst, the maker of al the  
 world, & in the glorious cyrgyn marie his moder; and 20  
 do the to be baptyse, and thynke to rendre the relyques  
 whiche thou occupyest and atteynest ayenst hys wylle.  
 And also see that hys barons be rendred and delyuerd  
 hole and in good poynte. For yf thou do otherwyse 24  
 than I haue sayd to the, Charles the valyaunte shal  
 make the to be hanged as a theef." Thadmyral sayd  
 to hym: "thou hast rebuked and blamed me proudly,  
 but I swere to the by Mahoun, my god, & by Terma- 28  
 gaunte, that I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged &  
 strangled." Thenne Roulland answerd: "for trouthe,  
 sarasyn, yf thou abyde to that houre, thou holdest faste  
 ouer longe. Thou shalt not do so. <sup>2</sup>For I doubte the 32  
 not the valure of an olde dede hounde & drowned."

and calls the fifth messenger.

Ogier presents himself and delivers the message, (1910)

and after him Roland repeats it fiercely. (1806)

Rolan swears he will neither eat nor drink till Roland is hanged. (1820)

Roland mocks at him.

Guy of Burgundy comes forward,

<sup>1</sup> f iij.<sup>2</sup> f iij. col. 2.

- commaundeth the that thou make to hym obeysaunce, and that thou restore the relyques and hys barons ; and thenne shalte thou do as a wyse man : and yf thou wylt  
 4 byleue me, I wyl wel counceyl the. Byleue in god Ihesu Cryste, whyche is almyghty, wythoute endea<sup>nd</sup> wythoute begynnyng. And yf thou byleuest my counceyl, thou mayst be in his grace. And lo ! what thou shalt do : take  
 8 of thy robe, thy hosen, & thy shoon of thy body, and goo in thy sherte, and bere on thy body a sadel of an hors, and reste not tyl thou come before the face of Charles, and humbly presente thy self to hym, & crye for mercy to  
 12 god thy maker almyghty, for thyn errours and outrages. ¶ And crye hym mercy in the honour of god almyghty ; and yf thou doo not thus as I haue sayd, he shal make the be hanged, brente, or drowned, and shamefully<sup>1</sup> to dye.”
- 16 ¶ The Admyrall was more determyned and araged<sup>2</sup> than he had been tofore, and sent anone for Brullant de Mommyere, Sortybrant de Conymbres, and for the other that were of hys<sup>2</sup> counceyl, and demaunded theyr  
 20 aduys and counceyl vpon these thynges aforesayd. Anone sortybrant sayd to hym : “ Syr admyral, I counceylle you that anone they be dysmembred and slayn, and after ye may goo and ryde with your strengthe  
 24 oueral, and come to mormyonde where charles is pensyf : yf ye may take hym, ye shal put hym to deth. ¶ After ye shal descende in to frannee, & doo you be crowned there as kyng.” “ by mahoun,” sayd ballant,  
 28 “ ye haue wel sayd. Now be it doon after your deuys : goo in to the pryson, & brynge wyth you the other theyr felowes, for to do after the enterpryse.” And thus as I haue sayd, Thadmyral was of entencion to make of the  
 32 frensshe men aforesayd, after that is tofore deuysed.

and repeats the message,

advising Balan to go humbly to Charles

and beg for mercy. (1940)

Balan is greatly enraged,

and holds a council to consider what is to be done with the messengers. (1956)

Sortibrant advises their immediate execution. (1961)

to which Balan agrees.

¶ How by the moien of florypes al the frensshe men were saued, and lodged to-

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* shameffluy.

<sup>2</sup> f iij, back.

gydre, and' the relyques shewed', and other  
thynges : capitulo ix

Floripas appears  
and asks her  
father who the  
French knights  
are. (1977)

Balan tells her,

and asks her ad-  
vice what he is to  
do with them.  
(1986)

"Cut off their  
heads, and burn  
them," says  
Floripas.

Balan assents,  
and proposes to  
do so at once,

but Floripas says  
it is dinner-time,

and asks for them  
to be given into  
her charge. (2000)

Sortibrant warns  
Balan that women  
are not to be  
trusted. (2013)

**F**loripes the curtoys, after that she had wel secretly  
herde al the debate toforesayd, she came out of hyr 4  
chambre, and salewed hir fader, & demaunded  
of hym: "What been these knyghtes sette there  
a'parte?" Thadmyral ansuerd: "my doughter, they  
be borne in fraunce: the whyche haue sayd to me 8  
wordes of grete Importaunce ful of reproches, and haue  
blamed me and offended gretely, more than I can telle  
yon or say. What counceyl gyue ye to me that I ought  
to do wyth them?" The doughter sayd: "I shal say 12  
to you, my fader, that ye wythoute longe taryeng do  
smyte of theyr heedes, for they haue wel deserved it.  
And do smyte of theyr hondes, & brenne them in a fyre  
without your cyte." "my doughter," sayd the admyral, 16  
"ye haue ryght wel sayd: ryght soo shal it be doon.  
Goo ye in to the pryson, and brynge to me the other."  
"good fader," ansuerd the doughter, "it is tyme to dyne,  
and yf ye wyl begynne to do Iustyce, ye may not ete 20  
tyl mydday be passed." This doughter sought none  
other thyng but occasyon by fayr wordes, accordyng  
to the wylle of hyr fader thadmyral, for to brynge al the  
frensshe men to-gyder wyth them that were prysonners. 24  
¶ And after sayd to hyr fader: "gyue to me these  
Frensshe men! I shal make theym wel to be kepte;  
and after your dyner ye shall do Iustyce wyth lasse  
tedyacyon, and thenne your people shal be assembled." 28  
¶ To the whyche the Admyral consented, And was  
contente thyt his doughter<sup>2</sup> shold haue them in kepyng.  
Alwaye sortybrant, which knewe the mutabylyte of  
wymmen & thynconstaunce, sayd to Ballant: "Syr 32  
Admyral, it is noo thyng couenable that vpon thys  
fayte ye ought to truste in a woman, by cause of theyr

<sup>1</sup> f iij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> f iij,

mutablyte, & ye haue oft herd say ensaumples. and also ye knowe the trouthe how many haue ben deceyued by wymmen." Moche angry & euyl content was floripes

4 of the wordes of Sortybrant And sayd: "horson Tray-  
tour, desloyal, pariured, yf I thought not it shold torne  
me to ouermoeche blame, I shold gyue to the suche a  
buffet on thy vysage, that the blode shold auale down  
8 habundauntly." And after these wordes thadmyral was

Floripas in a rage  
threatens Sorti-  
brant. (2016)

euyl contente of thys debate. And therupon she took  
the frensshe men & ladde them in to hyr chambre wyth-  
oute ony lenger taryeng. And goyng by the waye Syr  
12 naymes the due sayd: "A god of heuen, kyng of  
eternal glorye, who is he that ener sawe a more fayrer  
lady in hys lyf? Moche wel shold he be Inspyred with  
the grace of god that shal haue hyr in hys courage in  
16 loue." Rolland was euyl contente and sayd to Naymes:

She conducts the  
French knights to  
her chamber.  
(2021)

"What hondred thousand of deuyls hath maaed you to  
speke now of loue? It is not now tyme to speke of  
suche thyng." <sup>1</sup>Due Naymes sayd thus: "Syr Rol-  
20 land, dysplese you not, For I was ones amerous." the  
dougter sayd to them that they were not assembled to  
plede that one ageynst that other. and also sone as they  
were wythin the chambre, the doughter made to shette  
24 faste the yates, & anone rollaudimette wyth Olyner, and  
enterbraceed eche other & kyssed wyth franke and  
tender herte in wepyng moche tenderly, and alle the  
other semblably; & Rolland sayd: "Alas, Olyner, my  
28 faythful felowe, how is it with you sythe I last sawe  
you?" "Ryght wel," answerd Olyner. and eche de-  
maunded of other of theyr feates, of the contreyes, and  
of theyr lordes & tydynges. Now ye may thynke that  
32 they were gladd eche of other that they were al  
togyder in good poynte by the moyen of Florypes  
the fayr lady, whyche dyd grete socours to crysten-  
dom, whan by hyr, hyr wysedom and dyscrecyon the

Naymes is struck  
with the beauty  
of Floripas.

Roland and Oliver  
embrace each  
other. (2030)

<sup>1</sup> f iiij, col. 2.

captayns of the crysten fayth, as moche as toucheth the excersyte of bataylle to destroye the myscreauntes and paynyns, ben founden alle togyder in surete, whyche fyrst were comen in to the hondes of theyr 4 enemyes mortall.

And here we can see how great is the power of woman when she sets her heart on a thing.

Floripas asks of the French knights their promise to assist her in her desires, (2039)

to which they agree. (2043)

She asks Naymes his name: (2049) he tells her. (2051)

Then she asks Richard's name: (2056)

and after Roland's.

¶ But it is grete seyence for to eschewe the wylle of a woman, whan by effecte she putteth hyr entente <sup>1</sup> to a thyng, that her hert dyrectly draweth, and taketh 8 no regarde to the ende of her entente but onely that she may achyue hyr enterpryse and determynacyon. Florypes retched of noo thyng but that she myzt haue tydynges certeyn of guy of bourgoyne, to whome she 12 had gyuen hyr hert, and was contente to be crystened for the loue of hym. Thys fayr Florypes, whan she sawe these barons to-gydre, she sayd to them: "lordes, I wyl that ye alle of one accorde promyse to me the fayth 16 of loyalte that ye shal ayde and helpe me of that I shal demaunde you, & toward me ye shal truly bere and endeuoire you." "Ryght gladly;" ansuerd due Naymes, "and also ye shal assure vs that we shal be here in 20 surete withoute any doubte of any man lyuynge." she was contente, & they were contente, and promysed fydelyte that one to the other. whan this was doon, the doughter came to due naymes for to knowe what 24 he was, and demaunded of hym hys name. the due sayd to hyr: "Madame, I am called Naymes of bauiere, Man and counceyllour to Charles the Emperour redoubted." "Alas!" sayd the douzter, "your kyng<sup>is</sup> 28 sory for you." After she came to Rycharde and demaunded of hym how he was named, he ansuerd to hyr: "dame, <sup>2</sup>I am Rycharde of Normandye." the doughter sayd to hym: "Mahomet curse the<sup>1</sup> thou putttest to 32 deoth on a tyme corsuble myn vnele. But for the loue of these other thou shalt be in no daunger." Florypes came after to rolland, and prayed that he wold telle hys

<sup>1</sup> f iiij. back.

<sup>2</sup> f iiij. back, col. 2.

- name. "I am named rolland," sayd he, "sone to due Myllon, & am neuwe to charles, sone of hys syster." Roland tells her. 2061.
- Anone the doughter cryed hym mercy & kneled down  
4 to hys feet, and Rolland toke hyr swetely vp. ¶ After,  
the doughter sayd: "ye knowe what ye haue promysed  
to me. I shal say to you myn enteneyon. It is trouthe Floripas tells the knights how she has long loved Guy of Burgundy. 2072.
- 8 that I loue a knyght of fraunce aboue al them of the  
wold, whyche is named guye of bourgoyne, of whom I  
wold gladly haue tydynges." rolland sayd: "I swere to  
you by my hede that he is here in your syght, & that  
there is not bytwene you tweyne the space of foure foot  
12 of mesure." "Seynours," sayd she, "I praye you that I  
may knowe hym, and that he be gyuen to me, for of hym  
is alle my playsyr." Rolland ansuerd and sayd: "syr  
guy of Bourgoyne, come ye hyther to thys mayde and  
16 receyue hyr Ioyously." Guy of bourgoyn ansuerd:  
"god forbede that euer I shold take wyf, but yf she  
were gyuen to me by Charles themperour." ¶ Whan  
Florypes <sup>1</sup> vnderstode hym, anone she chaunge<sup>d</sup> colour,  
20 and sware [by] mahommet hyr god that yf he gaynsayed  
it she shold make them alle to be hanged by the necke  
on a gybette. Rolland exhorted Guye that he shold  
do hyr wylle, and vpon that he aduaunced hym, & hath  
24 graunted. Thenne florypes sayd: "the sone of god of  
crystyante be preysed and honoured, For I haue tofore  
myn eyen the moost grettest playsyr that euer myn  
hert desyred. For his loue I shal byleue in Ihesu Cryst,  
28 & shal do me be baptyse:" & after, she approched to  
hym for to treate a lytel the desyre of hir hert, and  
she durst not kysse hym on the month, but on hys  
chekes & chymme, by cause she was a paynym. Thenne  
32 florypes Ioyously and by grete loue came vnto a cheste  
and opened it tofore the barons, and spredde a fayr  
cloth of sylke. And after she dysclosed and shewed the  
relyques of whyche I haue spoken tofore, emonge and after produces the sacred relics, 2111.

<sup>1</sup> f v.

the crown and  
the nails,

whome was the gloryous crowne wyth whiche Ihesu  
cryste was crowned with in the tyme of hys passyon,  
and the holy naylles whyche perced hys holy handes  
and feet: and after sayd to Rolland: "Loo! here is the 4  
tresour that ye haue so moche desyred." Whan the  
frensshe men sawe thus tofore them the relyques, For  
loye they alle wepte <sup>1</sup>moche tenderly, and one after the  
other wente & kyssed them, knelyng moche humbly; 8  
& after, they were layed in to the cheste where as they  
had ben tofore.

which the French  
knights devoutly  
kiss. (2132)

¶ How Lucafer neuwe of the admyral vyo-  
lently entred' in to the chambre, & after 12  
was slayn of duc Naymes in blowyng of  
the cool: capitulo x

Lucifer enquires  
of Balan if it is  
true that Fiera-  
bras is a prisoner.  
(2147)

**B**Allant thadmyral beyng moche wroth & syttyng  
at the table, A paynym fyers & proude, a speecal 16  
frende of thadmyral, named lucafer of bandas,  
sayd to thadmyral affectuously: ¶ "Syr admyral, is it  
trouthe that I haue herde say, that Fyerabras, your sone  
and my ryght dere brother, is taken and vaynquysshed, 20  
whiche was the beste knyght that euer was a-lyue?"

Balan says it is,  
(2152)

Thadmyral said to hym: "by my fayth I shal not  
hyde it fro you. A frensshe man hath conquerd hym  
—whome Mahoun confounde!" Brullant of Mommyere 24  
made grete deffence, and the kyng of Sulye. They bare  
them soo wel that they brought to vs fyue of the  
gloutons of fraunce, knyghtes of Charles, whyche ben in  
pryson. and sythe ryght now we haue other seuen whiche 28  
ben comen as messagers <sup>2</sup>fro the sayd charles, which  
haue vytupered and blame vs gretelye in reprochyng  
our lawe & despysyng my goddes. Florypes my  
doughter hath conduyted them in to pryson." "Syr," 32  
sayd lucafer, "ye do grete folye. Wymmen al day for

but that he has  
twelve French  
knights prisoners,  
in charge of  
Floripas. (2165)

Lucifer says he is  
wrong to treit  
them to a woman,  
(2166)

<sup>1</sup> f v, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> f v, back.



lytel thyng ben chaunged and torned fro theyr thougt.  
 neuertheles for the more surete, yf it playse you, and by  
 your comaundement, I shal goo to them, and shal knowe  
 4 what they be, and of what comlyceion." "Goo forth,"  
 said thadmyral, "ye say ryght wel, and make my  
 doughter to retorne wyth you." herupon lucafer, moche  
 proude and replenysshed wyth grete fyersnes, cam in to  
 8 the chambre where the doughter was and the frensshe  
 men, wythoute demaundyng to opene the dore but  
 lyfte vp his ryght fote, and smote it so strongly  
 wyth hys foot that the barres & lockes flewe vnto  
 12 the grounde. Whan Flerypes saw that she was al  
 abashed, And anone sayd to Rolland: "Syr noble  
 knyght, I am ryght euyl contente of the vyolence that  
 is thus done to me. this is he that shold be my husbond  
 16 ageyn my wylle. I requyre you in as moche as ye  
 wyl do me playsyr that ye wyl auenge thys dyslionour,  
 For I complayne me wythoute makyng ouermoche euyl  
 semblaunte." to whome Rolland answerd: "doubte  
 20 ye no thyng, madame, For, or he departe hens, he shal  
 knowe that he hath euyl doon. And I promyse you  
 that he bought neuer locke so dere ne of the prys as he  
 shal for the brekyng herof." Hereupon Lucafer entred  
 24 in to the chambre, and behelde the frensshe men al  
 armed wythout ony doubte that he had to them. And  
 came fyrst to duc Naymes whych was dyseouered and  
 bare hede, & wythoute other delyberacyon took hym by  
 28 the berde, and drewe hym to hym so boystously that  
 almoost he had ouerthrowen hym, & after sayd to hym:  
 "of whens art thou, veyllard? hyde it not fro me."  
 The duke Naymes ansuerd: "paynym, I am of bauyere,  
 32 and that is my contree, and am speycal counceyllour of  
 Charlemayne, And al these barons that ben here been al  
 erles and grete lordes, and ben comen for to shewe to  
 ballant the admyral a message fro the sayd charles,

and that he will  
 go see if they are  
 safe. (2168)

He goes to Flori-  
 pas' chamber,  
 and bursts open  
 the door with his  
 foot. (2189)

Floripas calls on  
 Roland to avenge  
 this insult. (2186)

Roland promises  
 to do so. (2195)

Lucifer enters,  
 (2197)

and first seizing  
 Naymes by the  
 beard. (2201)

demands his  
 name. (2207)  
 which Naymes  
 tells him. (2208)

redoubte<sup>d</sup> Emperour; & by cause that we haue not  
spoken to hys entencion he hath made vs prysonners.  
Nenertheles take your hande from my berde, ye haue  
holde me longe ynough; And be ye sure that I say not 4  
al that I thynke." ¶ The paynym ansuer<sup>d</sup>: "I am  
contente thy folye be pardonned the; but I demaunde  
of the by thy loyalte, what maner folke ben they of  
1 fraunce, and of what enterpryse, and what playes vse 8  
they whan they been in your royaume?" "In trouthe,"  
sayd the due, "Whan the kyng hath dyne<sup>d</sup>, who that  
wyl may goo playe where hym lyst. Somme ryde  
oute on horsback, & somme goo in to the felde and 12  
synge, other make good chere at tables, at the chesse, &  
other playsaunte games. and in the morne every man  
gooth gladly & hereth masse at the houre whan it is  
sayd, and been wel charytable to gyue almesse to p<sup>e</sup> 16  
poure peple largely and customably. Also whan they  
goo to bataylle they been fyers and hardy, and been not  
lyghtly vanquysshed. Suche been the peple in the  
contreie of crystente." lucifer began to lawhe and 20  
sayd: "by my god Mahoun, vylayne & olde dotard  
that thow arte, thow spekest folysshly. It is no  
thyng so of your feat, ne frensshe men be of no  
valure but yf they can blowe at the grete cole." "In 24  
trouth," said the due, "I herde neuer therof." the  
Paynym ansuer<sup>d</sup>: "I shal teche you the manere," and  
he approched to the due nyghe by a grete fyre,  
and in goyng<sup>t</sup> Rolland made sygne to the due that he 28  
shold bere hym wel. Anone lucifer toke the grettest  
bronde that was on the fyre, And blewe so sharply that  
the fyre flewe alle aboute habundantly, and after 2  
said to due naymes that he must also blowe. The Duc took 32  
the bronde, and knewe wel the manere that the paynym  
wold hurt hym, and approched to hym, and blewe the  
bronde so puyssauntly that it fyl al on a flame and came

and asks him to  
let him go. (221)

Lucifer asks him  
to describe the  
French and their  
games. (2216)

Naymes says  
some hunt, (2221)

some play chess  
or tables, (2224)

and that they are  
all brave and hard  
to conquer.

Lucifer asks him  
if he knows the  
game of the "grete  
cole?" (2230)

Naymes says,  
"No."

Lucifer takes a  
coal and shows  
him how to blow  
it. (2236)

<sup>1</sup> f vj.

<sup>2</sup> f vj, col. 2.

to the vysage of the Paynym, in suche wye that it brente  
 al hys berde. Whan the paynym sawe that, he was  
 almoost out of his wytte for angre. The Due Naymes  
 4 wyth that smote hym wyth the bronde in the necke  
 that he brake the bone, and so raught hym wyth so  
 grete myght that his eyen flewe oute of hys heed to the  
 grounde, and sayd to hym: "Fals creature that thou  
 8 arte, Whome I byseche god confounde, thou wendest to  
 haue made me to muse in thy folyes. Now lye there  
 wyth sorowe." Rolland said to hym: "by my fayth,  
 syr due, ye can wel playe and blowe atte cole. blessyd  
 12 be that arme that gaf that stroke!" ¶ "Lordes," sayd  
 due Naymes, "yf I haue maad hym to vnderstonde hys  
 folye ye ought not to blame me. ye haue seen how he  
 truffed wyth me." Florypes the curtoys came ner vnto  
 16 due Naymes, And sayd: "Certes, syr, ye be worthy to  
 be honoured. I see wel that Lucafer hath no more  
 charge to playe wyth you at the cole; he is now at his  
 ease; I see wel that he remeueth not. And I wote  
 20 now<sup>1</sup> that he neuer shal haue grete desyre to espouse  
 me. For by force he wold haue had me and my fader  
 had gyuen me to hym, but neuer wold I haue suffred it,  
 but rather haue myn hede smyton of, or suffred vylayn-  
 24 ous deth."

Naymes blows  
 one so as to burn  
 Lucifer's beard,  
 (2218)

and then kills him  
 with the brand.  
 (2218)

Rolland praises his  
 play. (2253)

Floripas thanks  
 him, (2256)

and declares she  
 would never have  
 married Lucifer.

¶ How, by the counceyl of floripes, the frensshe  
 men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys  
 wyth grete bataylle, and' how by enchaunte-  
 28 ment a gyrdle was taken awaye fro the  
 douzter: ca. xj

Florypes was wyse, and had consyderacyon that  
 Lucafer, whyche was dede, was wel byloned wyth  
 32 thadmyral, and sayd to the frensshe men: "lordes,  
 knowe ye for trouthe that my fader loueth more thys

Floripas reminds  
 them that Lucifer

<sup>1</sup> f vj, back.

was Balan's  
greatest friend,  
and would surely  
be missed,

and advises them  
to arm them-  
selves, (2270)

and suddenly  
attack the Sara-  
cens. (2275)

They arm, and  
start out two and  
two at night fall.  
(2280)

Roland in front,

first slays Cor-  
suble, (2289)  
and Oliver Cold-  
roe. (2291)

The Saracens fly.  
(2299)  
Some jump out of  
the windows.  
(2300)

man than ony man lyuyng<sup>1</sup>. he abydeth for hym to  
come to dynet, & wyl not be at ease tyl he shal be  
retorneð. and yf by aduenture he knowe what is doon  
ye shal be here encombreð and assaylled, and al the 4  
golde of the worlð shal not redeme you but that ye shal  
be dede. Wherefore I counceyl you that ye doo arme  
you and put you in poynte. take lyztly your helmes and  
your shieldes, For people that been armed be moche re- 8  
doubted of other vnarmed. therefore I wyl not that ye  
<sup>1</sup> be closed ne shette herin, Whan ye come in the paleys  
where thadmyral is, See that ye bere you and behaue  
you soo that ye be maysters and lordes of the place, 12  
and thenne shal ye be wel lodged." Whan the dough-  
ter had thus sayd, they were ryght wel contente, &  
prestly armed them, and gyrded their swerdes aboute  
them, And two & two yssued oute of the chambre, and 16  
goon corageously as lyons, boystously as wulues hungry,  
in suche wyse as they that wolde abyde them ought sore  
to doubte and haue grete fere. And they went oute  
at the tyme that the somme wente vnder, & bytwene 20  
nyght and day. And the foremost of them in the waye  
was rolland, and the other folowed hym ryzt fyersly for  
to fyght. Roulland cryed to hys felowes that eche  
man shold do hys parte, & slee al the paynims and sara- 24  
syns that they fonde in the paleys, whyche faylled not.  
Roulland smote corsuble mortally; Olyuer put to deth  
the Kynges Coldroe. Ther was not one but that they  
alle bare them wel. The soupper whyche was wel 28  
appoynted anone was torne vp so down & caste to the  
grounde; cuppes of golde and of syluer flewe and  
sowned in the place; Sarasyns goon to therthe slayn and  
dysmembred: Other lepe out of the <sup>2</sup> wyndowes, whyche 32  
after were founden dede: Other were all to-hewen,  
sholdres & legges smyton of. Thadmyral, all araged, put  
hym self to flyght oute of a wyndowe and lepe down in

<sup>1</sup> f vj. back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> f vij.

- to the depe dyche. Rolland went, after whyche had  
hym gretely at the hert, & supposed to haue smyten hym,  
And atteyned the marble stone of the wyndowe in suche  
4 wyse that his swerde entred a foot depe. "Brother,"  
sayd Olyuer, "the admyral is escaped fro you." "Cer-  
teyn," ansuerd Rolland, "thereof am I euyl contente."  
Neuertheles they dyd so grete portement and bare them  
8 so wel that they were lordes & maysters of the chyef  
toure of the castel & palays. And after shetted fast  
the yates and were alle sure wythoute daunger. Sauf  
they myght haue noo mete. This passed a lytel whyle  
12 the Admyral was in the dyches al affrayed, and yf there  
had not be somme for to haue drawn hym oute he had  
neuer departed; and began to crye to his men that they  
shold come to hym to drawe hym oute. Brullant of  
16 mommyere and sortybrant of conymbres drewe hym  
out. And after that sayd Sortybrant: "Syr Admyral,  
byleue me another tyme: Alwaye atte tayl of an olde  
dogge kepe you." Thadmyrall answerd: "I praye you  
20 scorne me nomore, I shal wel aduenge me or two  
monethes be passed. Doo sowne to assaulte for tassaylle  
the toure." Sortybrant sayd: "it is reson that your  
wylle be doon; but the nyzt is ouer nyghe; by myn  
24 aduys it is better to abyde tyl to morowe, And thenne  
your excersyte shal be assembled for to werke more  
surely." thadmyral was contente, and sayd by grete dys-  
playsaunce: "Ha, fayr Lucafer! neuer shal I see you  
28 more, I haue loste alle my ioye. O ye frensshe men,  
accursed be ye! ye haue taken hym awaye fro me, but  
by Mahoun my god, to whome I haue gynyen my lyf, to  
morne shal the syege be layed tofore the toure. And I  
32 shal neuer departe for none euyl wether that shal come,  
Ne for thynge that may be, tyl the toure be taken and  
the walles layed on the eithe. And I shal make the  
frensshe men to be drawn at the taylles of my horses;

Balan escapes by  
a window. (2311)

The French are  
masters of the  
castle, (2321)

but have no food.  
(2325)

Balan, who had  
fallen into a ditch,  
calls for help.  
(2330)

Sortibrant and  
others rescue him.  
(2335)

He swears venge-  
ance.

Sortibrant advises  
him to wait for  
daylight. (2352)

Balan laments  
over Lucifer.  
(2355)

He is sure the  
French knights  
cannot hold out,  
as they have no  
provisions, (2365)

nor can Charles  
send them any  
help. (2367)

In the morning  
the Saracens  
assemble, (2369)

they cover four  
square miles.

Balan engages  
Marvin, "a moche  
fals-theef," to  
steal the magic  
girdle. (2387)

Marvin agrees.  
(2397)

And after I shal make fl-rypes the putayn to be brente  
in a fyre openly, and I am wel sure that they shal yelde  
them, For they be not vytaylled scars for foure dayes.  
And of that other parte I knowe wel they may haue no 4  
socours of no man whatsomeuer he be. For we holde  
the stronge brydge of mantryble, & they may haue noo  
socours but yf it come ouer that brydge; & of that other  
parte, charles shal haue noo tydynges of his barons ne 8  
shal not knowe whether they be dede or a-lyue, or in  
lyberte or in subiectyon." & here vpon they concluded  
and went to their lodgys tyl on the morne. And on the  
morne erly, thadmyral sente for al hys subgettes & 12  
concluded to laye the syege, and sware to holde it  
seuen yere longe but yf he had of them his wylle.  
Thenne come there so many pynyns in the contreye  
aboute that theyr lodgys helde foure myle of space. 16  
ye may thynke in what daunger the freysshe men were,  
whyche were but twelue persones onely, and had none  
other conduyte ne comforte but to be wythin assyeged  
in grete peryll of famyne. Neuertheles alwaye where 20  
as the sarasyns dyd gretely theyr deuoyr for to entre,  
yet they coude no thyng gryeue them. Thadmyral called  
one marpyn, a moche fals theef emonge alle humayn  
creatures, & sayd to hym: "Marpyn, by the berde that 24  
I bere on my chymme yf thou mayst do soo moche as for  
to stele awaye the gyrdle that Florypes bereth, I shal  
rewarde and gyue to the largely of my golde & syluer,  
& thou shalt be my grete frende. For yf I may haue 28  
it, I am sure that the freysshe men shal sone be dede  
for hungre, and thenne may they nomore greue me."  
¶ That gyrdle was of suche vertu that 2as longe as it  
shold haue dured wythin the toure, they wythin shold 32  
neuer haue be famyned. "Syr," sayd the theef, "abyde  
tyl it be nyght, & I swere to you that to morne,  
or the sonne aryse, I shal shewe to you the gyrdle, &

<sup>1</sup> f vij, back.

<sup>2</sup> f vij, back, col. 2.

- shal delyuer it to you." & herupon, whan it was nyght, he entred secretlye in to the dyches, whyche were ful of water, and passed ouer, and after whan he was at the  
4 fote of the toure, moche subtylly with his engynes he mounted vp in to the wyndowes, & entred in to the toure, and took a candel, & after cam to the chambre of Florypes, & fonde it faste shette. But with fals & dyabol  
8 bolyke wordes he opened it; and whan he was wythin, he sawe that al þ<sup>e</sup> barows were fast a-slepe, and he made so enchauntements that for no thyng they myght awake. and thenne he came to Florypes, and serched so  
12 pryuely that he took the gyrdle, & after gyrde hym self wyth-al. and after thys he behelde the doughter al naked, whiche was moche fayre; & was enelyned anone to haue defouled hyr, & began to take hyr aboute the necke,  
16 whyche sodeynly awoke, & began to crye moche strongly, and called hyr maydens & the barons. Wherefore the maydens came anone al abasshed & aferde. & whan they sawe marpyn the thief as blacke as a moore, the moost  
20 hardyest of them began to flee. Anon as Guye of Bourgoyn herde the voys of florypes, he came to hyr wyth hys naked swerde in his honde, and espyed to hyr that she shold not be aferde of any thyng. And he came  
24 so wel to poynte, that yf he had not come, the thief had defowled florypes. but as sone as the thief herde hym, he sprange oute of the bedde wyth grete haste, and Guye of bourgoyne recountred hym, and gaf hym so  
28 grete a stroke that he clefte hym by the myddel, and cutte a two the gyrdle, and the candel quenched. The other barons came after, and whan they sawe the werke, & the thief dede, they threw the body in to the see  
32 wyth the gyrdle. And whan it was knowen that he had stolen the gyrdle, and was loste wyth hym in the see, there was moche sorowe for the losse of soo noble a Iewel. And Florypes wepte ryght sore, sayeng that

At night he crosses the moat, 2403,

climbs into the tower, 2406)

and comes to Floripas' chamber. (2405)

He sends the French knights to sleep by enchantment. (2411)

He attempts to ravish Floripas, 2428 who cries for help. 2431,

Guy hears her cries, 2441.

runs to her chamber, 2442,

and cuts down Marvin with his sword. 2448.

He throws his body into the sea,

and the girdle is lost. 2461,

the losse of the gyrdle may neuer be recouerd.  
Neuertheles the barons wyth fayre wordes comforted  
hyr, in suche manere that they alle were contente.

¶ How the barons were assyeged' in the toure 4  
wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which  
suffred grete hungre, and' how the god-<sup>1</sup>des  
by them were confounded': capitulo xij

Balan is surprised  
at Marvin's not  
returning. (2482)

**W**han the day was comen, and thadmyral sawe not 8  
Marpyn thenchauntour retorne, he was moche  
abashed, and demaunded brullant, Sortybrant, and hys  
other lordes, counceyl what he shold doo, consydered  
that Marpyn was not retorne. Sortybrant sayd: "Syr 12  
admyral, knowe ye for certayn that the thief is deed,  
sythe he is not retorne and comen; but I counceyl you  
that ye doo sounne your trompettes for tassemble your  
subgettes, for tassaylle the toure and confounde the 16  
crysten men." And wyth slynges and other engynes  
they doo caste stones & dartes enuennymed, but—blessyd  
be god!—the freusshe men doubted them no thyng.  
After they had contynued the syege a whyle, brede and 20  
wyn began to faylle to the barons and maydens, in  
suche wyse that they had noo thyng to ete. Thenne  
the sorowe of the maydens, whyche were so fayre &  
ful of compassyon, was ouer grete, and were al desolate. 24

Sortybrant says he  
is surely dead,  
(2484)

and advises Balan  
to order the  
assault to begin.  
(2485)

The French de-  
fend themselves  
well, (2492)

but their pro-  
visions begin to  
fail. (2496)

Hunger begins to  
be felt, especially  
by the women.  
(2497)

Guy of Burgandy  
proposes to his  
fellows

And emonge the other, the noble florypes was moche  
dysplaysaunte for the necessaryte of the freusshe men, of  
hyr self, and of hyr damoysselles. often tymes she  
swowned & fyl to grounde <sup>2</sup>as dede: Guy of bourgoyne, 28  
hyr sponse that shold be, took hyr vp moche swetely,  
and recomforted hyr to hys power, & sayd to hys  
felawes: "My brethern & lordes, ye see the necessaryte  
that we suffre: it is now thre dayes passed syth we had 32  
ony brede. And yet it greueth me more for these

<sup>1</sup> f viij. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> f viij. back.



- damoysselles than for my self, And I say you for trouthe  
that I may no lenger endure but yf we do otherwyse.  
And be ye sure, that I had leuer to put my body in  
4 auenture to be hurt and wounded mortally, than I shold  
abyde here wythin enclosed wyth thys melancolye.  
Wherfor, I say, late vs goo oute for to gete somme  
vytaylle; for better is to vs to deye wyth honour than to  
8 lyue with shame." Al the frenssh men were of thop-  
pynyon of guy. There vpon Florypes sayd: "My  
lordes, I wote now wel that your god is of lytel power,  
whan he gyueth to you none ayde ne comforte; And I  
12 say you wel, that yf ye had adoured our goddes, they  
had pourueyed for you mete and drynke." Tofore that  
she had fynysshed hyr wordes, Roulland ansuerd and  
sayd: "Madame, I praye you that ye shewe to vs  
16 your goddes that ye speke of. And yf they haue the  
power that ye say, that they may gyue to vs mete and  
drynke, & that they do soo moche that the 'puyssaunce  
of fraunce come hyther for to socoure vs, we shal al  
20 hylene on them wythout varyeng." The mayde sayd:  
"Anone ye shal see them," & Incontynent after that she  
had taken the kayes, she ladde the barons vnder the  
erthe, and shewed to them the goddes of the sarasyns,  
24 whiche were in a place moche noble, precyous, and ryche.  
And there were in grete mageste, Appolyn, Mahoun,  
and Termagaunt, the god Margot, and Iupyn, and many  
other, whyche were alle massy of fyn golde of Arabye,  
28 enorned wyth many Iewellys, Odoraunt of bame and  
encence; and many other tresours were there assembled.  
Guy of bourgoyne sayd, whan he sawe soo grete  
tresour: "A! lord god, who wold haue wende that  
32 in thys place had be so grete rychesse assembled?  
Wold god that Rycharde of normandye had now Iupyn  
in hys cyte of Roan, For he shold wel accomplysse  
wyth it the chyrche of the holy Trynyte. And that

to make a sortie  
to get food. (2514)

Floripas says that  
if they would be-  
lieve on Mahomet  
they would have  
food enough.  
(2528)

Roland asks to see  
her gods. (2531)

Floripas leads  
them to the  
shrine, (2535)

where were  
Appolyn, and  
Mahomet, Term-  
gaunt, Margot, and  
Jupiter, (2539)

and great trea-  
sure.

Guy wishes they  
had all that gold.  
(2547)

kyng charles had thother goddes, he shold repayre ageyn  
 þ<sup>e</sup> chyrche of rome whyche is destroyed. And with  
 the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and to sette  
 them in good poynte.” Florypes ansuerd and sayd: 4  
 “ Syr Guye, ye speke vylaynsly ayenst the goddes; crye  
 them mercy & adoure them, <sup>1</sup>to thende that they  
 enclayne them to you to doo you comforte.” guy sayd  
 vnto hyr: “ I can not praye to them, Madame, for I 8  
 see theyr eyen al a-slepe, and ye shal see that they may  
 not here ne see.” and therwyth he smote Iupyn, And  
 Ogyer danoys smote margot, that they flewe to the erthe,  
 and were anone alle to-broken. Wherefore Roulland 12  
 sayd to the doughter: “ In trouthe, madame, I see that  
 ye haue goddes that be not worth. Of them that been  
 fallen to therthe I see not one of them remene, ne make  
 semblaunte to releue hym.” Fro thenne forthon Florypes 16  
 had al theyr goddes in despyte, and byleued in Ihesu  
 Cryste, sayeng thus: “ I see, syr Roulland, that ye say  
 the veray trouthe; but yf euer I byleue on them, I wyl  
 that my body come to an euyl ende. and with good 20  
 herte I requyre that god that was borne of a vyrgyn,  
 of whome ye haue enformed me, that he sende to you  
 socours of fraunce, and that we fynde maner to gete  
 vytalle for to satysfye our hungre.” 24

¶ How the peres of Fraunce went out of the  
 toure, and dyd a grete bataylle, In which  
 they reconerd’ twenty sommyers charged’  
 of vytaylle: capitulo xiiij 28

She faints with  
 hunger. (2581)

<sup>2</sup> **W**han Florypes had sayd, she fyl down to the  
 erth a-swoone for sorowe & anguysshe.  
 Wherfor gny of bourgoyn wept moche sorou-  
 fully for the lone of hyr. H[er]eupon Olyner the 32  
 courageous came tofore them and sayd: “ My lordes,

<sup>1</sup> g j.

<sup>2</sup> g j. col. 2.

Floripas rebukes  
 him, (2559)  
 and says they  
 ought to worship  
 her gods.

Guy says they are  
 all asleep. (2564)

He smashes  
 Jupiter, and  
 Ogyer smashes  
 Margot. (2567)

Floripas is con-  
 verted, and begins  
 to pray. (2576)

- I you assure, by the god that suffred deth for creatures humayn, I had leuer that my body were quartred and smyton in pyeces than I shold suffre this pryson, but  
4 that I shold fyght quykely wyth the paynymys;” & semblably sayd rolland. Wherfore, wythout other delyberacion, they sette theyr sheldes in good poynte, and mounted on horsback, and aualed the brydge, &  
8 wyth a stedfast courage made them redy. & whan they were alle afore the toure of marble, Rolland sayd to the other: “Syr Naymes, or ye, syr Ogier, it byhoueth that one of you<sup>1</sup> abyde for to kepe the place, that at the  
12 retornynge we may entre surely.” ¶ The Duke Naymes conde take noo pacyence, but that he answerd thus: “Syr Roulland, thynke not that I be so vnhappy of persone ne of lygnage that euer I shold be reproched,  
16 and that euer I shold be your portyer. I wyl not doo so in noo wyse: though I be olde, yet can I torne myn hors. For I am harde of <sup>2</sup>synewes, and haue myn herte wel assured, and wyl be hardy ynough for to smyte  
20 vpon myn enemyes whan tyme shal requyre, ne doubt ye no thyng therof.” Rolland ansuerd: “syr, ye say wel, ye shal come wyth vs. Thyerry or geffroy, that one of you two shal abyde,” but it was not their playsyr  
24 to abyde enclosed. Neuertheles, at the request of Rolland, thyerry abode with geffroy, whyche shetted the yates surely after that the other barons were wythoute, whyche, eche with his shelde tofore hym and swerde in  
28 hys hande, wente mustryng them tofore the castel. Thadmyral lokyng out at a wyndowe, knewe the frensshe men, Wherfor hastely he sente for brullant and Sortybrant to come to hym wyth other, to whome he sayd:  
32 “my barons and subgettes, the frensshe men ben comen, and me semeth they wyl fyght. yf they be not al slayn, i shal be euyl contente. Wherfore do sowne your hornes for tasseble your pople; ye tary ouer longe.”

Oliver proposes a sortie, (259s.)

to which all agree.

They sally out. (261s.)

Roland wishes Naymes or Ogier to remain behind to guard the gate. (261s.)

Naymes refuses,

and says, though he is old yet he can still fight. (262v.)

Thierry and Geoffrey agree to remain. (263l.)

Balan sees them coming, (263s.)

and bids Sortibrant assemble his men to resist them. (264s.)

<sup>1</sup> orig. you.

<sup>2</sup> g j. back.

The Saracens  
attack them,

but in a little  
while more than  
100 are killed.  
(2656)

Clacien, Balan's  
nephew, comes  
up with 15,000  
men. (2664)

Roland cheers on  
his companions.  
(2679)

All the Saracens  
are afraid of him.  
(2679)

After the battle  
the French  
knights meet 20  
pack-horses, laden  
with provisions  
for Balan. (2692)

They kill the  
escort. (2703)

And<sup>1</sup> assone as they had so doon, a grete multytude of  
sarasyns were there assembled, & came and<sup>1</sup> assaylled<sup>1</sup>  
the frensshe men. But rolland<sup>1</sup>, that helde durandal in  
hys honde, with his felowes came vpon the mastyn 4  
sarasyns by suche a furour, that in a lytel whyle moo  
than an hondred<sup>1</sup> were slayn. <sup>1</sup>For vnhappy was he  
that came to socoure the sarasyns. Thienne came  
Clacyon, whyche was neuewe to the admyral, with xv 8  
thousand<sup>1</sup> fyghtyng<sup>1</sup> men.—And know ye for certayn,  
that in that tyme in spayn was noo sarasyn more  
doubted<sup>1</sup> than he.—Whan the barons sawe hym come,  
Rolland escryed<sup>1</sup> gherard, Ogyer & Guy: “O noble 12  
knyghtes! in thonour of god, eche of you do so his  
deuoyr that at thys tyme, wyth vycторыe, we may  
obtayne vytaylle for the maydens in the toure.” That  
sayd<sup>1</sup>, Rolland<sup>1</sup> smote his hors wyth hys spores, and wyth 16  
durandal smote a fyers Paynym named<sup>1</sup> Rampyn soo  
myghtely, that he clefte hede and<sup>1</sup> body at a stroke;  
wherof they þat were there present were abasshed. &  
thenne the sarasyns doubted so strongly rolland<sup>1</sup>, that 20  
there was not a man durst put hym self tofore hym, but  
yf he thought to deye. Gherard of monlydyer sayd:  
“My brethern & lordes, Who wyl here-after haue  
playsyr & be honoured, it is tyme that he shewe hym, 24  
for often by one vnhappy man a valyaunt man is in  
daunger.” Wherfor with that word al these barons  
were moche more feruent than they had be, to thende  
that euery man shewed hym self suche as he ouȝt to 28  
be. & after that þ<sup>e</sup> batayll was fynnysshed<sup>1</sup> for that day,  
as god wold, the barons fonde by <sup>2</sup>the tour aforesayd<sup>1</sup> a  
grete auenture, For they sawe passe by the castel xx  
sommyers laden wyth vytayl, that is to say, brede, wyn, 32  
venyson, & other vytaylles ynow, and a paynym con-  
duyted them of margote vnto the sarasyns: but Incon-  
tynent the ledars of the sarasyns and<sup>1</sup> of theyr vytayl

<sup>1</sup> g j, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> g ij.

were slayn anone of the barons, & the duc Naymes &  
Wyllyam the scot conduyted & ledde them forth.

And Rolland and the other came & anoyded the place,  
4 in suche wyse that they were dryuen in to the tour; but  
this thyng was not doon without daunger and grete  
payne.

and drive them  
inside the castle  
gates. (2704)

¶ How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the  
8 sarasyns, beten vylaynously, and' de-  
maunded' of thadmyral, and the com-  
playntes that Florypes made for hym, &  
other maters: capitulo xiiij

12 **A**S I haue sayd tofore, the barons of fraunce, thus as  
they wente in theyr repayre, and ladde the som-  
myers afore sayd, there came so grete habundaunce of  
men of armes of the partye of kyng<sup>e</sup> Claryon, that it was  
16 merneylle. There was theime an harde and stronge  
recountre, in so moche that duc basyn was slayn, &  
Aulbery hys <sup>1</sup>sone. For whan he sawe his fader deye,  
Incontyneat he fyl vpon hym, and there he was slayn  
20 and abode. and yet thys was not the moost harm, For  
the noble guy of bourgoyn, after that he was menaced of  
kyng<sup>e</sup> Claryon, he auauced hym for to smyte hym. that  
came hym so euyl to passe, that hys hors was slayn  
24 vnder hym of the paynyms, & sodeynly he was en-  
uyronned of moo than an hon dred knyghtes sarasyns,  
whyche took hym, & took of hys helme fro hys hede, &  
after bounde hys eyen, so that he saw nothyng, and  
28 ledde hym forth, hys handes bounden behynde hym at  
his backe. and whan guy sawe hym thus deteyned, he  
began to crye wyth an hye voys: ¶ “O Ihesus, veray  
goð, whych hast made & formed me! whyther goo I now,  
32 that am euyl fortunel? O Ihesus, comforte me! O  
noble Charlemayn, ryght noble emperour, and myn

The Saracens  
press heavily on  
the French. (2706)

Basyn and Aubrey  
are slain, (2730)

and Guy taken  
prisoner, (2743)

and led away  
blindfolded. (2747)

He prays and  
cries for help.  
(2749)

<sup>1</sup> g ij, col. 2.

vncle, thou shalt neuer see me!" The kyng<sup>1</sup> claryon  
 sayd<sup>2</sup> to hym: "Fayr frende, no thyng shal auayle  
 the, thy cryeng ne thy brayeng<sup>1</sup>. I shal delyuer  
 the al lyuyng<sup>1</sup> to the admyral of spayn thys day, And 4  
 to-morne thou shalt be hanged<sup>2</sup>." But now ye may  
 wel thynke how the other peres of Fraunce, hys  
 felowes, were euyl contente whan they sawe the Erle  
 Guye soo prysommer. ¶ Neuertheles <sup>1</sup>they dyd grete 8  
 feates of armes or they were constrayned to entre in to  
 the tour, & assone as they were descended, & the yates  
 barred, eueryche went to dyner: and thezne floripes  
 cam anon to rolland, & said<sup>2</sup> to hym: "syr rolland, I 12  
 requyre you that ye say to me where is syr guye of  
 bourgoyne my husband become. I wote wel, whan ye  
 departed hens, that he went wyth you emonge thother.  
 Ye ought to brynge hym to me ageyn. I shal neuer be 16  
 Ioyous at the hert tyl I knowe where he is." Rolland<sup>1</sup>  
 ansuerd<sup>2</sup>: "ha, Florypes, curtoys lady! in hym trust ye  
 no more, for certes ye haue lost hym. ye shal neuer see  
 hym; the paynyns haue ledde hym maulgre vs, & we 20  
 knowe not what they wyl do wyth hym." florypes heer  
 yng these wordes, for sorowe & anguysshe fyl to the erth  
 alle a-swoune more than iiij tymes as dede; but rolland<sup>1</sup>,  
 whych wepte for hyr, oft releued hyr: & whan she was 24  
 rysen, she began to crye with an hye voys: "O barons  
 of fraunce, by that god that maad heuen & erthe, yf I  
 haue not guy of bourgoyn, to whome I ought to be  
 maryed<sup>1</sup>, I shal yelde thys toure or the nexte day be 28  
 passed<sup>2</sup>. O holy vyrgyn marye! I shold be espoused to  
 hym, and for lone of hym be baptyssed and<sup>1</sup> be crysten.  
 Alas! our loues haue sone faylled<sup>2</sup>. This sorowe hath  
 made me <sup>2</sup>wel to forgete the hungre that I haue had 32  
 these iij dayes. Alas! I am vnhappy." Rolland<sup>1</sup>  
 myght not see the melancolye of thys Florypes, but  
 promysed<sup>2</sup> hyr to make hyr glad<sup>1</sup> wythin ij dayes, for

<sup>1</sup> g ij, back.<sup>2</sup> g ij, back, col. 2.

Clarion mocks  
 Guy. (2753)

The French are so  
 hard pressed that  
 they have to take  
 refuge in the  
 castle. (2776)

Floripas enquires  
 after Guy. (2781)

Roland tells her  
 he is a prisoner.  
 (2783)

Floripas swoons,

and after declares  
 she will surrender  
 the castle if Guy  
 be not rescued  
 before two days.  
 (2792)

thenne atte ferthest she shold see syr guye at hyr  
 playsyr, and that she shold no thyng<sup>e</sup> doubte therof;  
 “for knowe ye surely,” sayd rolland, “I had leuer to  
 4 be quarterd than he shold not come ageyn, & he shal  
 be rendred to you, or his deth shal be sore auenged. &  
 madame, ye knowe wel that your sorow & wepyng may  
 not brynge hym ageyn, & ye wote wel that it is thre  
 8 dayes passed syth we etc. we haue purchaced vytayl for  
 vs & these damoysselles, of whome ye see the pyte, late  
 vs take pacyence of the lytel quantyte, & be we contente  
 to entreiene the lyf:” for ye ouyt to knowe that they  
 12 myght not recouure the sommyers with vytaylle, by  
 cause of the trouble of guy of bourgoyne, whyche was  
 deteyned prysoner. After that Rolland had said thys,  
 the barons and the damoysselles thanked god of al, and  
 16 fedde them suffysauntlye, in praysyng<sup>e</sup> and lawdyng<sup>e</sup>  
 god deuoutelye.

Roland promises  
 he will rescue  
 him, 2804

and advises her to  
 take some of the  
 food which they  
 had won. (2812)

Now late vs speke a lytel of Guye of bourgoyn,  
 whiche was ledde tofore the admyral. moche troubled,  
 20 dyscoloured, & chaunged of vysage was the sayd Guye  
 by cause he had not eten in thre dayes tofore, & for þ<sup>e</sup>  
 daunger that he felte hym to be in the handes of his  
 enemyes. & there tofore the admyral he was al des-  
 24 poyled of his armes; & thenne appyered his body wel  
 membred, & ballant demaunded what was his name &  
 who he was. the baron ansuerd: “Admyral, I fere not  
 to say the trouthe; I am called guy of bourgoyn, sub-  
 28 gette to the crowne of fraunce, & cosyn germayn to  
 rolland the valyaunt, which is the man that ought wel  
 to be doubted.” ballant ansuerd: “I knowe the wel  
 ynough. it is more than vij monethes goon that my  
 32 douzter hath had the in grete loue, which dyspleseth me  
 gretely: & I know wel that she loneth the more than  
 ony man luyng; & I for that loue haue lost many men  
 of grete facion, & am put out of my tour, the chyef

Meanwhile Guy  
 is led before  
 Balan, 2829

who demands his  
 name, 2825.

Guy tells him.  
 (2829)

Balan recognizes  
 him as his daugh-  
 ter's love,

and the cause of  
 all his trouble.  
 (2836)

Balan demands  
the names of the  
knights in the  
castle. (2838)

Guy recounts  
their names.

A Saracen gives  
him a blow on the  
mouth. (2850)

Guy seizes him  
with one hand,  
and with the other  
breaks his neck.  
(2856)

The Saracens fall  
on him and beat  
him nearly to  
death. (2860)

strengthe of al my contreye. but yf al be yolden to me  
ageyn shortly, þou shalt be quarterd in short tyme, &  
dysmembred. & more-ouer I demaunde þat thou say to  
me the trouthe, who been they that ben enclosed in the 4  
tour, of whom we haue ben assaylled with so daunger-  
ously." Guy answered: "gladly I shal say to the. Be  
thou wel sure that rolland the valyaunte is there,  
Olyuer, his felowe, ryght courageous, Thyerry, due of 8  
Ardayne, Rychard of Normandy, Gherard<sup>1</sup> of Mun-  
dydyer, Naymes due of baynere, & basyn the genewey,  
whom ye haue slayn; but, by the grace of god & helpe  
of charles, his deth shal be to you dere solde." Thad- 12  
myral was ryzt euyl contente of the menaces of Guye;  
Wherefore a moche fyers sarasyn took hys fyste and  
smote guye on the vysage in suche wyse that the blood  
yssued oute of hys nose & mouth habundantly. wyth 16  
that stroke, guy was sette a-fyre for angre and furour,  
and lefte not for to be forthwith quartred, & he was not  
holden, but that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre  
wyth one of hys handes, and wyth that other hande he 20  
smote hym vpon the grete bone of þ<sup>e</sup> necke behynde,  
that he brake it, And wythoute moeuynge of hande or  
foot, he fyl down deed to the grounde tofore the admyral.  
¶ Ballant was soo euyl contente wyth that stroke, that 24  
he was al enraged for the deth of the paynym, as for  
the mysprysynge that guy had doon in hys presence to-  
fore his eyen, and cryed with a loude voys that he shold  
be taken. & assone as he had sayde the worde, the sara- 28  
syns as wulues enraged, whyche wyth theyr feet and  
handes al to-bete hym, in suche wyse that he knewe not  
where he was, And had slayne hym yf the admyral had  
not commaunded theym that<sup>2</sup> he shold not be put to 32  
deth in suche manere.

<sup>1</sup> g ij. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> g ij. back.



¶ How the paynymys had' purposed' to haue  
 hangid' Guye of bourgoyne, seeyng' the  
 crysten men, whyche socoured' hym  
 4 myȝtely : capitulo xv

**A**fter that guye of bourgoyn was wel bounden and  
 straitly, Thadmyral sente to come to hym brillant  
 of mommyere, Sortybrant of conymbres, and for many  
 8 other of his counceyl, and sayd to them : " my frendes,  
 I praye you that ye gyue to me counceyl what I ought  
 to do wyth thys prysonner, whyche dothe me so grete  
 reproche & despysyng, as ye see and knowe." " Syr,"  
 12 sayd Sortybrant, " I shal gyue to you good counceyl.  
 yf ye wyl byleue me, ye shal doo reyse vp a galowe tree  
 nyghe to the dyches of the toure, in whych been the  
 prysonners of fraunce, & to-morne ye shal do hange this  
 16 prysoner ; & see that ye haue in a secrete place, nyghe  
 vnto þ<sup>e</sup> said galowes, v thousand turkes, wel armed & in  
 good poynte : and I am sure that the frey[*u*]sshe men be  
 so hardy and oute of mesure, that, whan they shal see  
 20 their felowe for to be hanged, they shal come oute for  
 to socoure hym ; & your peple that shal be hydde in  
<sup>1</sup> the busschement shal come out on them & take them.  
 Thenne shal ye haue them al surely, for to do wyth, your  
 24 playsyr." this counceyl was approued by thadmyral to  
 be good, & was therwyth wel content ; wherfore, wyth-  
 oute takyng of ony other delyberacyon, the galowes  
 were made as afore is sayd. & ryght nyghe to the place  
 28 was a lytel wode, & lete put therein secretly xx M  
 fyghtyng men, & comanded them to be gouerned by the  
 kyng claryon & other capytayns. & after, thadmyral made  
 guy of bourgoyne to be ledde with xxx sarasyns vnto  
 32 the galowes, whyche cessed not to bete and smyte on  
 hym with grete staues, whyche greued hym sore : &  
 they bonde his handes behynde hys backe moche

Balan calls a  
 council. (2869)

Sortybrant advises  
 him to have Guy  
 hanged. (2881)

in front of the  
 castle,

and to set an  
 ambush for the  
 French if they  
 should try to  
 rescue him. (2880)

This advice is  
 approved. 2891)

20,000 Saracens  
 are placed in  
 ambush. (2902)

and Guy is led  
 bound to the  
 gallows. (2905)

He calls on his  
companions for  
help. (2911)

Roland, from a  
window, sees the  
gallows, (2913)  
and tells the  
others. (2917)

Naymes guesses  
the object of the  
gallows. (2922)

Floripas implores  
Roland to rescue  
Guy, 2928

for she can never  
survive him.

straytly. & whan he felte a grete corde aboute his necke,  
and his eyen bounden, & sawe no thyng whyther he  
went, Thys thynkyng<sup>t</sup>, wyth an hye voys he began to  
crye : “ O redemptour of the world<sup>l</sup>, my maker and my 4  
god<sup>l</sup>, for whos name I am in payne, and<sup>l</sup> goo to deye an  
euyl deth, the meryte of thy passyon take my soule in  
to thy kepyng<sup>t</sup>, for the body taketh his ende ! And lyke  
as I haue nede of thy helpe, So I beseche and requyre 8  
the to counceyll and<sup>l</sup> eomforte me. ¶ O noble barons  
of fraunce, ye shal neuer see me : yf<sup>1</sup> ye suffre me to  
be hanged, it shal be to you grete shame. O Roulland,  
fayr cosyn, remembre me ! or ellys shal ye neuer see me 12  
on lyue.” he thus sayeng<sup>t</sup>, and other pyetous wordes,  
Rolland<sup>l</sup> was in a wyndowe, and behelde ouer a lytel  
roche, and<sup>l</sup> sawe the galowes reysed<sup>l</sup>. Wherefore he came  
to his felawes and<sup>l</sup> sayd<sup>l</sup> : “ I meruaylle moche what 16  
thys meneth, that I haue seen the galowes sette vpon the  
dyches. I wote neuer to what purpoos it is doon.”  
Whan the other had seen it, Due Naymes sayd to them,  
that withoute faute they were made for to hange on 20  
guye of bourgoyne. & forthwith they saw hym comyng  
al despoyle<sup>l</sup>, and<sup>l</sup> was ledde toward<sup>l</sup> the galowes ; & they  
knewe wel that yf he were not socoured<sup>l</sup> and rescued,  
that he shold be hanged<sup>l</sup> & put to deth. Whan the 24  
fayr florypes herde them<sup>m</sup> plede, she came to them for to  
wete what it was ; and<sup>l</sup> after whan she sawe the galowes  
reysed<sup>l</sup>, and guy, hir loue and tocomyng husbond<sup>l</sup>, so  
shamefully ledde, ye may thynke in what estate she 28  
was reduced<sup>l</sup> ; and began to crye : “ O noble knyghtes,  
shal ye suffre guy of bourgoyn your felawe to be hanged  
tofore your eyen ? Truste ye none other, that yf he deye,  
by the same god that fourmed<sup>l</sup> me I shal lepe out of the 32  
wyndowe, & shal deye in despe<sup>2</sup>raeyon.” and<sup>l</sup> after she  
came to rolland<sup>l</sup>, & kneled down on both hyr knees, and  
kyssed<sup>l</sup> his feet humbly, in sayeng<sup>t</sup> : “ Syr Rolland<sup>l</sup>, in

<sup>1</sup> g iiij.

<sup>2</sup> g iiij. col. 2.

- thonour of god I requyre the that it may playse the to  
take the payne for to rescowe & socoure my loue guye,  
and ellys I am a loste woman. Thynke for to arme  
4 you, and I shal goo and make redy your horses, for the  
tyme is ouer shōrt; so that by the playsyr of god ye  
shal be there in tyme." Themme Rolland & his felowes  
arme<sup>1</sup> them moche hastely, and gyrde theyr swerdes  
8 and shildes, and wente oute of the toure, and on hors  
backe sprange oute. And or they rode ony fether,  
rolland sayd: "lordes, at thys houre lyeth our deth &  
our lyf in suche wyse, that yf we haue not good con-  
12 duyte & <sup>1</sup>loyal, we shal neuer retorne. We ne ben but  
x, & the paynems ben Innumerable & of grete force. In  
thonour of god I praye you, that alwaye we holde vs to-  
gyder, & that eche take hede of other as moche as he may,  
16 For yf we be deuyded, we shal sone be taken and hanged.  
And on that other parte, yf one of vs falle to the grounde,  
that prestly he be reyse<sup>1</sup>, And not to leue hym for lyf  
ne deth, And that none faylle other. And I shal be he  
20 that shal brynge you to-gyder by thayde of god; for I  
swere <sup>2</sup>to you by my lyf, that as long as I may holde  
durandal, and may kepe the lyf in my body, ye shal  
haue of me a good deffendour and waraunt." and in  
24 lyke wyse sayd al the other. Florypes answerd: "my  
lordes, ye may tarye ouer longe;" & she went in to hyr  
chambre, and opened a coffre, in whiche was the crowne  
of Ihesu Cryste, and moche reuerently they kysse<sup>1</sup> it  
28 & sette it on theyr heedes. Wherfor with a good  
courage they yssued out, noo thyng dredeyng the puy-  
saunce of the paynmys. & after, Florypes and hyr  
damoyse<sup>1</sup>lyys lyft vp the brydge, & shette fast the toure.  
32 ¶ The noble peres of fraunce, fayr and in good orden-  
aunce, wente toward the galowes alonge the medowes,  
& the paynmys were vnder the galowes, and were besy  
to brynge vp guy of bourgoyn, which had hys eyen

She urges them  
to lose no time.  
(2929)

The French arm  
themselves  
hastily, mount,  
and prepare to  
start. (2938)

Roland warns his  
companions to  
keep together,  
(2941)

and to be ready,  
each to help the  
other. (2946)

Floripas brings  
out the sacred  
crown, (2960)

which the knights  
kiss, (2962)

and then pass out  
of the gates. (2966)

<sup>1</sup> orig. boyal.

<sup>2</sup> g liij, back.

Guy is on the  
point of being  
hanged, (2972)

but Roland puts  
the Saracens to  
flight, (2976)

and kills 20 of  
them.

The ambush  
breaks out. (2980)

Roland charges  
Cornifer, (2996)

and slays him,  
(3008)

and then rides to  
the gallows, (3010)  
unbonds Guy,

who takes the  
arms and horse of  
a Saracen. (3032)

The French are  
hard pressed.

bounden, & hys handes al-o, and a grete corde aboute  
hys necke. and whan Rolland sawe that, he hasted hys  
hors, & the other after, & began to crye to the paynims  
sayeng<sup>1</sup>: “ha! trayters, mastyns! It shal not be as ye 4  
thynk: ye haue begonne suche a thyng wherof ye shal  
repente.” Of thys bruyt which was made so Impetu-  
ously, the moost hardy of xxx that helde guye began  
to flee; and they were so hastely poursyewed that xx 8  
of them <sup>1</sup>were slayn. here vpon they that were in the  
wode camen out, making a grete bruyt; and al afore  
came Cornifer, a meruayllous paynym, vpon a morel of  
grete faeyon, And began to crye: “ha! ye frensshe 12  
men dysmesured! come ye for to socoure hym that is  
luded by thadmyral to be hanged? ye haue enterpryse  
a grete folye; For al ye shal be hanged wyth hym.”  
Whan rolland herde the paynym so say, he was moche 16  
angry, & helde durandal in hys hande, & came ageynst  
hym as a wulf enraged. Neuertheles the paynym  
smote on his shelde daungerously; but after that he  
was recoured, he atteyned and smote the paynym so 20  
puyssantly that he clefte hys heed down to the body.  
and after that he was dede, rolland came rennyng vnto  
the galowes, and vnblufelde & vnbonde syr guye of  
bourgoyne, and bad hym holde hym by hym tyl he was 24  
armed, & after that Roulland had slayn another paynym,  
Guye, beyng in thassuraunce of thother peres of fraunce,  
he armed hym Incontynent with tharmes of that paynym  
by the helpe of hys felowes, & mounted vpon the Paynims 28  
hors. but thys was not doon wythoute grete payne and  
meruayllous deflence that they made, for anone al the  
sarasyns that were in the wode came vpon the ba<sup>2</sup>rons of  
fraunce, and dyd grete Inconuenyents. Neuertheles, by 32  
thayde of god, the barons were of so good gouernement  
& of so entyer courage, of so meruayllous deflence and  
puyssaunce, that at that tyme they put soo many sarasyns

<sup>1</sup> g iiij, back, col. 2

<sup>2</sup> g v.

- to deth, that the place was al encombred, and al were  
 empesshed to goo further. Emonge whome guye of  
 bourgoyne dyd meruaylles: for after that he was  
 4 armed by the conseruacyon of hys felowes, he dyd  
 gretely hys deuoyr, & sayd to the sarasyns: "O ye  
 traytres mastyns, I shal shewe you in thys Iourney  
 that I am escaped fro your bandes." & by thus fyght-  
 8 yng<sup>t</sup> they made the sarasyns to withdrawe a grete  
 bowe draught. They thus fyghtyng<sup>t</sup>, on that other  
 syde were moo than ten thousand sarasyns redy to  
 empesse them the passage, that they myzt not wyth-  
 12 drawe them. Wherefore Rolland, holdyng durandal in  
 hys honde, seeyng that, called al hys felowes and sayd  
 to them: "lordes, it is noo tyme now to wythdrawe vs,  
 but of necessitye we must auance vs for our owne con-  
 16 seruacyon: yf we may gete the brydge, doubte we no  
 thyngt, & thenne may we wel saue vs." "Roulland,"  
 Sayd Guye of bourgoyne, "Ye knowe wel that in the  
 toure we haue noo thyng to ete, & yf we were<sup>1</sup> wythin,  
 20 how shold we lyue? yet had I leuer to haue my body  
 daungerously wounded in fyghtyng vpon the sarasyns,  
 than to deye for hungre were wythin, & wythoute  
 daunger. and yf it be the wylle of god that in thys day  
 24 we shold deye, al be it at hys playsyr, and we shal take  
 it a worth, as good and trewe knyghtes of god." Al the  
 other barons were of hys oppynyon, & goon forth in grete  
 purpoos for to bere them valyauntly. They beyng<sup>t</sup> in  
 28 thys purpoos to bere them valyauntly, as sayd is,  
 Florypes was in a wyndowe of the toure, and sawe Guye  
 of bourgoyne hyr loue, wherof she was moche Ioyous,  
 and cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, that hit wold  
 32 plesse hym to come to hyr, sayeng, that yf she lyued, for  
 the prowesse of the barons that hyr fader thadmyral  
 shold ones be in hys daunger. Wherfor Ogyer the  
 danoyz sayd: "Lordes, haue ye not herde how nobly

Guy performs  
marvellous feats.

The Saracens be-  
gin to give way.  
(3011)

Roland calls on  
his companions to  
make an effort to  
gain the bridge,  
(3052)

but Guy reminds  
him that they  
have no pro-  
visions, (3055)

and says it is  
better to die  
fighting than be  
starved. (3058)

All the others  
agree. (3061)

Floripas from a  
window cheers on  
Guy. (3080)

<sup>1</sup> g v, col. 2.

she speketh. She is wel worthy that we doo for hyr.  
 And knowe ye that I shal not be at ease yf we thus  
 retorne." Thenne, wythoute more langage, the frensshe  
 men romnen vpon the sarasyns hastely, of whome 4  
 Roulland was alwaye formest, and made soo grete bruyt  
 and descomfyture of paynims, that they eschewed &  
 made them to flee tofore him as <sup>1</sup>the byrde tofore the  
 sperhawke. Guye of bourgoyn came with a grete cours 8  
 ageynst a paynym moche fyers, nameð Rampyer, and  
 attayned hym so harde on the sometie of the heed, that  
 he clefte hym to the myddel of hys body. Wherefore  
 whan Roulland sawe hys grete valyaunce, he said to 12  
 hym: "Guy, fayr cosyn, I haue wel seen how ye haue  
 menaced the paynym. Ye haue so doon that Florypes  
 the fayr lady ought to loue you and holde you ryzt dere."

The French make  
a charge, and

scatter the Sara-  
cens as sparrows  
before the hawk.  
(3101)

Guy slays Ram-  
pire.

Roland praises  
his valour. (3109)

¶ How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd' were 16  
 pourneyed' of vytaylles, and' after assyeged'  
 and' foughten by the paynims: ca. xvj

**W**han Florypes the curtoys, beyng wyth hyr  
 damoysselles in the toure, sawe the barons of 20  
 Fraunce to be assured tofore the castel, she cryed to hem  
 hyely: "O ye lordes, I praye you to remembre to gete  
 somme vytaylles or ye come entre herein, to thende that  
 we deye not for famyne. Olyuer vnderstode wel the 24  
 damoyssel, and also roulland, whyche sayd that she had  
 wel spoken, and in tyme: "for yf we entre in to the  
 castel, we may not departe wyth our ease," and ther-  
 upon al the barons with one <sup>2</sup>courage goon ageynst the 28  
 sarasyns, & smote on them & brake theyr aray, in suche  
 wyse ~~but~~ they made them to voyde the place, & to wyth-  
 drawe and goo backe a grete dele. and thus as they  
 returned vnto the toure, a ryght good aduenture came 32  
 ageynst them. For xx sommyers passed forth by, which  
 certeyn paynims ledde, whyche al were charged wyth

Floripas reminds  
the knights that  
they have no food.  
(3116)

The Saracens are  
driven back.  
(3128)

The French meet  
with 20 pack-  
horses, laden with

<sup>1</sup> g v. back.

<sup>2</sup> g v. back, col. 2.

- wyn, brede, and flesshe habundauntly. And anone they  
 that ledde them were slayn and put to deth, And thenne  
 the barons enforced them for to lede them hastelye, and  
 4 so conduyted them tyl they brought them in to the  
 toure. & in the waye as they retorned, they fonde the  
 body of basyn whyche ha<sup>t</sup> be slayn the day byfore,  
 which they took vp, and brought wyth them in to the  
 8 toure, and were there in surete. For they lyfte vp the  
 brydge, and entred, and after aualed the drawe brydge,  
 and made faste the yates, and surely. And thus were  
 they wel vytaylled for ij monethes & more. ye may  
 12 wel wete that thadmyral was not ouer Ioyous whan he  
 sawe that Guye of bourgoyn whyche ha<sup>t</sup> ben in his  
 subgectyon was wyth hys felawes, And also whan he  
 knewe that they were furnysshed wyth vytaylle so  
 16 habundantlye. Wherfor ryght angry and euyl contente  
<sup>1</sup>dyd doo calle hys counceyl, and demaunded brullant  
 of mommyere, and Sortybrant of Conymbres, and other  
 of hys counceyllours, sayeng to them : “ My barons, ye  
 20 knowe that these frenssh men haue ryght euyl gouerned  
 vs. They haue garnysshed the toure wyth brede, wyn,  
 and other vytaylles : and yf by aduenture it come to the  
 knowleche of kyng Charles, we shal be enpesshed, for  
 24 he shal come & socoure them, and we shal come make  
 to hym contynuel resystence, For hys puyssaunce is  
 ouer grete, ye knowe it wel. Wherfore I am in grete  
 thought and melancolye what we may best doo.”  
 28 To thys, Sortybrant answerd & sayd : “ syr admyral,  
 I counceyl that euery man be armed, and in grete  
 poynte, for to sette vp the engynes to assaylle the toure  
 & breke it, & after to make sowne and to trompe vp a  
 32 thousand trompes and hornes Impetuously. And whan  
 the Frenssh men shal here them, they shal be so aferde  
 that we at our playsyr shal mowe entre in to the toure.”  
 Brullant of mommyere answerd to hym & sayd :

provisions, (3136)

which they drive  
 inside the gates  
 of the castle.

On their way they  
 take up the body  
 of Basyn. (3150)

Balan is furious

and calls a coun-  
 cil, (3163)

to consider what  
 is to be done.

Sortibrant advises  
 him to frighten  
 the French by

blowing of trum-  
 pets, &c.

Brillant says he is a fool, "Sortybrant, frende ! ye speke of a grete folye. Byleue not þat the frenssh men that be within the toure ben of soo feble condycyon that ye shal make theym aferde wyth blowyng<sup>t</sup> & sownyng<sup>t</sup> of hornes. <sup>1</sup>Certeyn ye 4 haue nothyng to fere them wyth, And I shal say to you the reason. The flour of the barons of fraunce is there wythin : the moost puyssaunt & the moost noble Rolland<sup>t</sup> is there, whych is so puyssaunt and courageous 8 that who-someuer loyneth to hym, he putteth hym to deth : And there is the counte olyuer : knowe ye not of his grete fyersnes, whychie conquerd Kyng Fyerabras, the myghtyest of all the paynyns ? And I swere to 12 you by Mahoun that he is in theyr companye. For I haue herde say also that there is the counte of mondy-dyer, Gherard<sup>t</sup>, whyche hath doon to vs grete damage. and Gerard, Also there is therry, the due of ardayne, and another 16 Terry, fals olde olde knyght that named<sup>t</sup> hym self Naymes, due Naymes, of Bauyere, semblably Guy of bourgoyne, whyche was Guy, and 5 others. of taken from vs whan he was ledde to be hanged<sup>t</sup>. And other ther be whyche I haue not named<sup>t</sup>. There ben 20 but xj, for one of them was slayn, and ye knowe wel they ben alle of grete resystence.

Roulland<sup>t</sup>, the <sup>2</sup>neuene of charles, is of soo grete fyersnes that he doubteth no man lyuyng<sup>t</sup>, ne stroke ne 24 shotte that is gyuen hym : and double ye not, that, yf they were al suche as he is, that ben in the castel, they shold chace vs oute of thys royaume or they <sup>3</sup>shold slee vs. And I knowe wel that theyr god waketh for them, for 28 he hath ryzt wel keppe them. Our goddes ben accursed and unhappy, For it is longe sythe that they haue ony thyngge holpen vs." ¶ Of these wordes that brillant thus sayd, thadmyral was passyng<sup>t</sup> angry, & sayd<sup>t</sup> to 32 hym : "ye haue ryght enyl and folysshly spoken." and so sayeng, he wold<sup>t</sup> haue smyton hym wyth hys staf, but the kyng Sortybrant wythdrowe the stroke, sayeng<sup>t</sup> :

<sup>1</sup> g vj. col. 2.      <sup>2</sup> orig. neuene.      <sup>3</sup> g vj. back.

Brillant says he is a fool,

for the French are not likely to be so easily frightened, (3184)

for there are in the castle Roland,

and Oliver,

and Gerard,

Terry,

Naymes,

Guy, and 5 others.

And if they were all like Roland

they would soon chase the whole Saracen army out of Spain, (3204)

Balan is enraged,

and tries to strike him, (3214)



“Syr admyral, leue your angre, and late vs thynke for to  
assaylle thys toure, and late vs so do that these fals  
frenssh men be vaynquysshed and smyton in pyeces.”

but Sortibrant  
prevents him.  
(3213)

4 and thus as he had said, thadmyral made to come hornes,  
trompettes, and other Instrumentes for to sowne & to  
make bruyt and noyse, in suche wyse that al the sarasyns  
were there assembled, that they helde þ<sup>e</sup> space of a myle  
8 longe aboute the toure. After, thadmyral made to come  
a man Ingenyous & enchauntour, whyche was named  
Mahon, that made two meruayllous engynes, & with  
couertures surely made kept them that were there vnder,  
12 that they myght not be hurte of the frensshe men.

The Saracens are  
assembled;  
they cover a  
square mile of  
ground. (3221)

And by the moyen of these engynes they conquerd the  
fyrst wardes of the castel. wherfore the frensshe men,  
furyous and <sup>1</sup>wode as lyons, came to the yates of the  
16 toure, & the maydens also al armed, whyche with the  
barons dyd so wel theyr deuoyr, that he that was raught  
and smyton by them, was so terrybly hurt, that he ouer-  
threwe and fyl down dede. For they were aboue on  
20 hye, and threwe down grete stones, dartes of yron, &  
other mortal engynes, wyth whyche they made con-  
tynuel resystence

By means of  
engines they win  
the outer defences  
of the castle,

¶ How the toure was broken and brente by  
24 enchauntement, & the barons in grete  
peryl of deth, and restored by assaute  
maad on the Paynyns: capitulo xvij

28 **T**He Paynyns perseueryng in thassault afore sayd,  
Thenchautour came tofore the admyral, and sayd  
to hym: “Ryzt dere syr, I haue made myn engynes al  
redy, by moyen of whyche I shal delyner to you the  
frensshe men: make your men of armes to goo a parte,  
32 & that I may haue somme to awayte on me.” And  
whan they were alle redy as he had deuysel, he sette  
them rounde aboute the tour. And by hys crafte and

The engineer says  
he has his engines  
ready. (3259)

He sets the walls  
of the castle on  
fire. (3280)

The French are in  
despair, (3284)

but Floripas bids  
them fear nothing,

and with a pre-  
paration extin-  
guishes the fire.  
(3292)

Balan swears  
vengeance on his  
daughter. (3297)

Sortibrant says  
the French must  
soon give in,

for they have no  
more shot nor  
stones. (3302)

By a furious  
assault the Sora-  
cens break down a  
large part of the  
walls. (3314)

Floripas cheers  
the French,

arte he made a flamme of fyre so meruayllous, that þ<sup>e</sup>  
pylers of marble & other stones bygonnen to brenne &  
make fyre at vtteraunce, <sup>1</sup>wherfore the frensshe men  
were so perturbed that the one sayd to the other, that 4  
by force they must yelde the toure, for they had no  
moyen to saue theyr persones. Wyth thys, florypes  
sayd to them: "lordes, esmaye you nothyng yet vnto  
the tyme ye see more." And anone she wente, & took 8  
somme herbes and other medecynes, & dyd tempere  
them in wyn, For she knewe the manere how that fyre  
artyfycyally brente the stones. thus she made this  
beurage; and whan it was caste vpon the fyre, it brenned 12  
nomore. Wherfore the admyral wende to haue been  
out of hys wytte for angre. But Sortybrant tolde hym  
that al was quenched by the moyen of floripes his  
doughter; wherfore thadmyral was of entencyon to 16  
make hys doughter to deye of an enyl deth. The kyng  
Sortybrant sayd that he shold do sowne his hornes and  
trompettes, and recommence the assaulde al newe, and  
at that tyme by force the frensshe men shold be vayn- 20  
quysshed: "For I am sure," sayd he, "that they haue  
nomore to caste oute vpon vs. For they haue nomore  
shotte ne stones, but al is faylled to them." And  
thassaulde was made as it was ordeyned Impetuous, that 24  
it semed derke for the shotte of arowes, of dartes,  
stones, & other engynes: in suche wyse that the <sup>2</sup>grete  
quarters of the murayl & walles fyl and tumbled down to  
the erthe. the barons of franzee moche abashed, sayd 28  
one to another, that thenne they must nedes be vayn-  
quysshed, For they sawe parte of the walles & the  
pryncipal of the castel falle down. And they beyng in  
grete thought, Florypes sayd to them thus: "Lordes, 32  
dysmaye ye noo thyng! thys toure is stronge ynough  
for to kepe vs yet. And of that other parte, the tresour  
of my fader is herin, which is in grete wedges and

<sup>1</sup> g vij.

<sup>2</sup> g vij, col. 2.

- plates of golde & buyllyon. late vs goo fetche it, And  
as wel may we slee the paynyns therwyth, as wyth  
stones, and better." Thenne Guy of bourgoyn, hyr loue,  
4 came to hyr wyth grete loye, & kyssed hyr moche amer-  
ously and swetelye. And after she wente & opened  
the toure and place where the tresour<sup>1</sup> was Innumerable,  
and wyth grete quantyte therof they wente to the  
8 batyments of the toure, and threwe vpon the paynyns,  
in suche wyse that they made grete dyscomfyture.  
And more-ouer the paynyns, seeynge the golde falle on  
them in suche habundaunce, anone they cessyd their  
12 fyghtyng ayenst the frenssh men, And for the concu-  
pyscence of that golde they faught and slewe eche  
other. Wherefore thadmyral was so dysplaysaunt &  
<sup>2</sup>angry that he wende to haue dyed, and began to crye  
16 wyth an hye voys: "O ye barons sarasyns, leue ye  
thassaulte, whiche torneth to me grete dommage Innu-  
merable. For I see that my tresour wasteth & is loste,  
which I haue wyth grete payne<sup>3</sup> & dylygence assembled,  
20 And had recomaunded it to my god mahon, and had  
made hym kepar of it, whyche how hath faylled me.  
but by my soule, yf I may take hym, and that he come  
in to myn holde, I shal make hym wepe." The kyng  
24 Sortybrant answerd: "Syr Admyral, be ye noo thyng  
ameruayllyd of your tresour, ne wroth ayenst Mahon, for  
he may nomore do; they may wel take it fro hym, for  
he is a slepe; I bylene none other: for in tyme passed  
28 he hath wel watched & kepte it; but those frenssh men  
ben so wyly theues þat they haue stolen it fro hym  
subtylly." Thadmyral beyng al angry bycause the  
nyght came on repayred<sup>4</sup> with his peple toward hys  
32 souper. After thys, whan thadmyral was sette atte  
table, Roulland, whyche was in the hye toure surely  
with his felowes, laye in a wyndowe for to ease hym;

and advises them  
to use her father's  
gold for missiles.  
(3327)

The French do so,  
(3334)

and the Saracens  
leave off the as-  
sault and fight  
amongst them-  
selves for the  
gold. (3340)

Balan, alarmed  
and grieved for  
his treasure,  
causes his men to  
retire. (3348)

Sortibrant com-  
forts him,

and says Mahon  
must be asleep.

The Saracens  
retire to their  
camp.

<sup>1</sup> orig. tresour.      <sup>2</sup> g vij, bk.      <sup>3</sup> orig. payue.

<sup>4</sup> orig. And' repayred'.

Roland from a window sees Balan at supper, (3358) and as he thought & was pensyf, he sawe thadmyral syttyng<sup>t</sup> at the table through the wyndowe, and<sup>t</sup> after cam to the other barons and<sup>t</sup> sayd to them: “<sup>1</sup>my lordes and<sup>t</sup> brethern, I see that the Admyral is wyth 4  
hys pryncypal barons at souper, and thynketh to holde hem wel at his ease, and<sup>t</sup> me semeth it shold<sup>t</sup> be grete  
and proposes a sortie. (3363) honour and<sup>t</sup> prowesse to vs to make hym leue<sup>2</sup> his repaste.” The other barons, hys felowes, were of hys 8  
They all arm and start. (3364) accorde, & hastely they armed<sup>t</sup> them and<sup>t</sup> put them in poynte, and<sup>t</sup> fayr yssued out, comyng<sup>t</sup> to the place where the admyral was. but the admyral, whiche was subtil, apperecyued theyr feat, and<sup>t</sup> sente hastely for a 12  
Balan sees them coming, (3369) and sends for Espouart, his nephew, to meet them. (3372) paynym, whiche was moche fyers, and<sup>t</sup> was hys neuewe. And<sup>t</sup> sayd<sup>t</sup> to hym: “Espouart, cosyn, peraduenture the freusshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper, Therfore depesshe the, and<sup>t</sup> be redy anone, and<sup>t</sup> doo so 16  
that they be taken & destroyed.” and<sup>t</sup> anone he was redy. And<sup>t</sup> forthwyth Espouart took hys hors, and came ayenst the barons, holdyng<sup>t</sup> in hys honde a dart of stele.  
Espouart charges Roland; And<sup>t</sup> fyrst he encountred<sup>t</sup> Rolland<sup>t</sup>, and<sup>t</sup> hytte hym in his 20  
shelde in suche wyse that of the stroke he was al astonyed<sup>t</sup>; but it came soo to passe that it touched<sup>t</sup> not hys flesshe, ne he was not hurte. After this, Rolland<sup>t</sup> came vpon the paynym, and<sup>t</sup> gaf hym a good<sup>t</sup> stroke that 24  
he made hym ouerthrowe fro hys hors; but the turke was so valyaunte, and<sup>t</sup> a man of so grete myght, <sup>3</sup>that moche lyghtly he remounted<sup>t</sup> vpon hys hors. And<sup>t</sup> Roulland came to hym, & smote hym wyth hys swerde in suche 28  
wyse that the paynym wist not where he was. And<sup>t</sup> as he was fallyng<sup>t</sup> down of hys hors, Rolland<sup>t</sup> moche puyssauntly caught hym, & laye<sup>t</sup> hym thwart vpon hys hors, and<sup>t</sup> bare hym away. The admyral, seeyng thys, al in a 32  
rage escryed hys peple that they shold socoure hys neuewe. but they wist not what to doo, For in defendyng<sup>t</sup> them many of them were slayn and<sup>t</sup> hurte

<sup>1</sup> g vij. back, col. 2.<sup>2</sup> orig. leue.<sup>3</sup> g viij.

wythoute nombre; wherfor of veray force the other  
 paynims must retorne: & rolland cessed not to renne  
 tyl that he was at the toure. And whan al the barons  
 4 of Fraunce were wythin, they shiette the yates wel surely,  
 and had noo feare of any empesshement.

¶ Here begynneth the thyrd' partye of the  
 second' book which conteyneth xvj chapy-  
 8 tres, And' speketh how the barons of  
 fraunce were socoured & the paynims  
 confused'.

¶ Of the moeuynge of the peres of fraunce for  
 12 to goo shewe theyr affayres vnto kyng'  
 Charles; And' how Rychard of Normandye  
 was ordeyned' for to goo: capitulo primo

16 **T**He peres of fraunce beyng thus assyeged and  
 deteyned, as I haue said afore, had taken a turke  
 moche fyers, and grete frende of the admyral,  
 whome they gaf to florypes for to do wyth hym as it  
 plesed hyr: & they demaunded of hyr what man he  
 20 was, & of hys estate. Florypes ansuerd: "he is sone  
 of myn aunte, & neuewe to thadmyral, and he is ryche  
 & hath grete puyssaunce. And yf ye wyl doo grete  
 dysplaysyr to my fader, put hym to deth." The due  
 24 Naymes moche wyse sayd to hyr: "Madame, it is not  
 behoeful to put hym so to deth; but sythe he is a man  
 of auctoryte, and hath audyence wyth your fader, we  
 been the more loyous. and I shal say to you wher-  
 28 fore: yf peraduenture one of vs were taken of our ene-  
 myes, by the moyen of this man he myght be rendred  
 and chaunged for hym." And of thys conclusyon were  
 contente al the peres of fraunce. Thenne after thys,  
 32 Rychard of Normandye called the other his felawes,  
 and sayd to them: "ye knowe wel how we ben here

but the French all  
 escape into the  
 castle. (3419)

They ask Floripas  
 who their prisoner  
 is. (3444)  
 She tells them he  
 is Balan's  
 nephew. (3448)

Naymes proposes  
 to keep him to  
 exchange for any  
 of them which  
 might be taken.  
 (3452)

<sup>1</sup> g viij, col. 2.

Richard of Normandy proposes

that they should send a message to Charles for help. (3425)

Naymes says that no one dare go on the message. (3427)

for the country is all covered with Saracens.

Floripas says they had better enjoy themselves as well as they can. (3435)

Thierry again proposes to send a messenger to Charles. (3456)

Ogier asks who will venture on such a dangerous expedition. (3459) Roland offers to go, but Naymes protests. (3467)

enclosed in this tour. And I am wel sure that at the laste we must nedes faylle, and deye by these Sarasyns. We haue noo moeyen by whyche we may saue our lyf; and me thynketh that it shold be good that we shold <sup>1</sup> conclude to sende to themperour, to thende that he shold come and socour vs, or ellys of vs shal sone be an ende." The due Naymes ansuerd and sayd: "Syr rychard, me semeth ye speke of a grete folye. For <sup>8</sup> there is noo man here wythin, that wyl take vpon hym for to do this message that ye speke of. For ye see that the contree is al couerd with sarasyns, for assone as he shal be oute fro vs, it is Impossyble to escape <sup>12</sup> wyth hys lyf. And be ye sure, but yf god doo for vs and shewe hys grace, we shal neuer departe fro hens." herupon Florypes sayd: "I can not say at this tyme none other thyng, but that we lede the moost loyous <sup>16</sup> lyf that we may, as longe as we shal mowe endure. Ye haue here fayre maydens, eche of you take one at hys playsyr." The due Rolland and his felowes, for these wordes of Florypes were reioyced, and thanked & <sup>20</sup> preysed hyr affectuously. Thyerry the due of Ardayne, whyche was moche angry, sayd: "My brethern and my lordes, I am in grete thought, For we be faste shette here wythin, and knowe wel that in shorte tyme we <sup>24</sup> shal be dyscomfyted: we haue therof experyence ynough tofore our eyen, late us soo conclude that our fayte may be notefyed vnto charles, that he or hys pussyaunee <sup>2</sup> may come socoure vs." ¶ Ogier ansuerd and sayd: <sup>28</sup> "for to sende to charles, there is none here soo hardy that dare presume it ne take it on hym." "Yes," said rolland, "I shal do it, and shal enterpryse it myself to goo to hym to morn, and shal doo my denoyr." The <sup>32</sup> due naymes, or he had fynysshed hys wordes, ansuerd and sayd: "Syr rolland, dysplayse you not, for emonge vs ye are the moost vneconenable for to goo thyder: for

<sup>1</sup> g viij. bk.

<sup>2</sup> g viij. bk. col. 2.

- whan the Paynymys shold knowe it, we shold not be  
 redoubted as we be. And whan we haue you wyth vs,  
 we been in surete, and our enemyes in drede of vs."
- 4 Guyllam profred hym self to goo forth gladly, Soo dyd  
 Gherard; Semblably guye abandonned hym self to goo  
 wyth good affectyon, but Florypes wold neuer consente  
 therto. ¶ Neuertheles, after many dysputacyons, rycharde
- 8 sayd for conclusion: "My lordes, ye knowe that I am  
 of grete parentage, & haue a sone of grete noblesse, suf-  
 fysaunt to bere armes, and as I suppose, he shal be valy-  
 aunte. And yf it happene that in doynge thys message
- 12 I be taken & slayn of the paynymys, After my deth he  
 may receyue & hold, myn herytage in my name, and doo  
 seruyce to Charles. And I ought wel to doo it, for to  
 doo playsyr to Charles aforesayd. <sup>1</sup>For whan he had
- 16 gyuen to me my lande, and possessed me in my contrey,  
 I wold not accepte it but by one moeyen, which is  
 suche, that yf it happed, a strange man not subgette to  
 my contreye, & that he were bonde, & of thral condycyon,
- 20 and yf he duellyd a yere in my londe, that after he  
 shold be free al his lyf, & many other thynges:" &  
 thenne thus it was concluded that rycharde shold goo  
 forth on the message. But Rollande maad hym to
- 24 promyse tofore his departynge, that he shold not tarye  
 in any place, ne sojourne nowhere, vntil the tyme that  
 he were with Charles, but yf he were greued in hys  
 persone or deteyned prysoner. Rycharde promysed it &
- 28 sware, as it is afore sayd. Thenne Rycharde, after his  
 oth made, sayd that, "now we haue not to sorowe, but  
 the maner how I shal mow departe and passe forth, that  
 the men of armes see me not; for yf I be knowen by
- 32 them in any wyse, It shal be Impossyble to me to resyste  
 them." Rollande sayd: "by my fayth, I shal say myn  
 opynyon here vpon. I counceyll that to morn erly we  
 be wel armed, and we shal goo out and make a cours

William and  
 Gerard offer to  
 go, (3171) as also  
 Guy, but Florypas  
 will not let him  
 go. (3177)

At last Richard  
 says he will go,  
 (3180)

to which they all  
 agree. (3199)

They consult how  
 he is to get away  
 unseen. (3509)

Roland suggests  
 that they should  
 make a sortie,

and di-tract the  
attention of the  
Saracens while

Richard steals  
away in the other  
direction. (3529)

The knights weep  
over Richard's  
danger. (3527)

Richard bids them  
fear nothing,

for by God's grace  
he will soon bring  
succour.

vpon the sarasyns, & do gretely our deuoyr, & they shal  
be besy with vs for to defende them & hurte vs.  
Rychard<sup>1</sup> shal departe & passe forth & leue<sup>1</sup> vs, & we shal  
remyse vs to gyder for to retorne in surete. in the mene 4  
whyle Rychard, that knoweth wel the region, shal mowe  
be wel ferre forth on his waye tofore they shal know  
ony thyng therof; and<sup>1</sup> if it playse god<sup>1</sup> & hys swete  
moder, he shal saue hym self, by suche manere, that in 8  
shorte tyme we shal haue Ioye & consolacyon that we  
shal hastily goo out surely." Thys sayeng<sup>1</sup>, the peres of  
fraunce, seeyng<sup>1</sup> that thys thyng<sup>1</sup> was not yet achyened<sup>1</sup>  
surely, begonnen al to wepe tenderly for the pyte of 12  
theyr affayre. The noble due<sup>2</sup> rychard<sup>1</sup>, seeyng<sup>1</sup> his  
felowes wepyng<sup>1</sup> for hym, sayd to them: "my lordes, ne  
doubte ye noo thyng<sup>1</sup>! yf god<sup>1</sup> gyue me the grace, to  
whom I comaunde my self, that I may passe thys hoost 16  
and<sup>1</sup> thys contreye, and in espeeyal that I may fynde  
myself a-lyue by-yonde the brydge<sup>3</sup> of mantryble, I may  
wel ensure you that I shal brynge you socours in suche  
wyse that by the grace of god ye shal sone be delyuerd<sup>1</sup>." 20  
The barons ansuerd<sup>1</sup> to hym: "Ihesus, by hys myght and  
puyssaunce, graunte you wel to goo, & better to retorne!"  
After this conclusyon they sayd<sup>1</sup> nomore: the nyzt cam  
on, & eueryche of them went to hys repayre, vnto atte 24  
morne for to begynne to complysshe theyr enterpryse.

<sup>4</sup>¶ How after that rychard was departed, kyng  
claryon, a ryght myghty kyng', ranne after  
hym, the whyche was slayn by the sayd' 28  
Rychard valyauntly, & of other thynges:  
capitulo ij

But a great disap-  
pointment was in  
store for them.

**G**rete gryef and annoye cam to þ<sup>e</sup> peres of fraunce  
whan Rychard<sup>1</sup> of Normandy shold departe for 32  
to goo to kyng<sup>1</sup> charles. On the morne whan

<sup>1</sup> h i, col. 2.    <sup>2</sup> orig. dul.    <sup>3</sup> orig. brydde.    <sup>4</sup> h i, back.



they came to the gates of the toure, in whych they were  
in, they fonde grete multytude of peple sarasyns, whyche  
kepte the passage that none of the frensshe men shold  
4 yssue out. Wherefore by the space of ij monethes they  
coude not fynde the moeyen to yssue oute ; but on a day  
amonge al other, whan thadmyral was on huntynge a  
lytel waye of, & that on a nyght the garde of the  
8 bridge was forgotten, Therne the barons armed them  
& mounted on horsback, and wente out rennyng vnto  
theyr lodgynges ; but assone as they were seen of the  
paynymys, they blewe vp hornes & trompettes, & began  
12 to sowne so terrybly, that anone peple Innumerable were  
there assembled for to renne vpon the peres of Fraunce.  
and thus whan they were al enclosed wyth theyr  
enemyes, & that euery man was besy for to fyght, The  
16 duc Rycharde al in wepyng commaunded to godd his  
felawes, And secretely departed, and took his waye at  
al aduenture. & tofore that his felawes were at theyr  
lodgyng, many of the sarasyns were hurte & slayn. and  
20 in this maner they reentred in to the toure surely, and  
mounted in to the bataylement, & sawe a-ferre duc  
rychard, whyche thenne had passed beyonde all the  
hoost ; and in wepyng they recommaunded hym swetely  
24 to godd many tymes. Rycharde of Normandy thus  
rydyng allone, hadd feare alwaye that he shold be  
assaylled. whan he hadd ferre ryden vnto a toppe of a  
montayn, his hors was sore chauffed, & bledde habun-  
28 dantly. Thenne he doubted entyerly that he shold be  
empesshed, and lyfte vp his mynde to heuen & sayd :  
“ O lord godd, my creatour, to whom alle my wylle is  
ordeyned, thys day preserue my body from myn  
32 enemyes, in suche wyse that I lose not my lyf,” &  
blessid hym self with the signe of the crosse many  
tymes. he beyng in that place, the day appyered wel  
clerely ; & fyrst, brullant of mommyere apperecyued

For in the morn-  
ing they found  
the castle sur-  
rounded by Sara-  
cens, (3549)  
so that for two  
months they had  
no chance of  
going out. (3459)

At last an occa-  
sion offers, and  
they sally out,  
(3557 and attack  
the Saracens.

While they are  
thus engaged  
Richard steals off.  
(3580)

His horse breaks  
down. (3612).

In despair he  
prays to God for  
help,

and crosses him-  
self.

Brullant and Sortibrant see him, (3628) hym, & after, sortybrant of Conymbres, whyche were bothe to-gydre, the whyche wente hastely to Kyng Claryon, a moche myghty paynym, neuewe of thadmyral, and tell Claryon, and brullant sayd fyrst to hym: "Syr Claryon, see ye 4 yonde messenger, one of the prysoners of fraunce, whyche is departed fro his felawes, & gooth toward Charles for socours? And yf ye see not for remedye, there may come therby harme to vs; for yf he recounte theyr 8 affayres to the kyng charles, It may happen to retorne to vs grete damage." Also sone as claryon herde these tydynges, anone he armed hym, & mounted vpon lys hors, the moost merueyllous that ener was seen, 12 For for to renne xxx leghes he wold not be wery; & took hys shilde & his swerd of stele square & sharpe, & ranne toward Due Rycharde as he had be enraged, & other sarasyns folowed after hym. Rycharde mounted 16 on hys hors, wythoute knowyng that he was poursyewed, & sayd: "O my Creatour, holy Trynyte, gyue to me consolacyon & grace, that I may see Charles the myghty Emperour, to whom I am sente for the rescows & com- 20 fort of my felawes, whiche ben in the toure, sorouful and sore greued, and that I may make them Ioyeful," & thus as he was in this thougt he loked behynde hym, & sawe the sarasyns come hastely after hym, whyche 24 were by comyn estymacyon moo than xiiij M, Of whom the Kyng Claryon, neuewe of the Admyral, vpon the courser tofore sayd, came tofore the other a grete waye. Neuertheles, Rycharde beyng on a lytel montayn, & 28 byhelde the hoost of the paynyms came ageynst hym with grete courage, ye may wel ymagine in what estat his hert was. what thyng mygt he thynk that they wold do wyth hym, & what tydynges his felowes shold 32 haue of hym, whan he was there allone for tabyde & susteyne the furour & malyce of so moche peple? Thus ymagynyng that he myght not flee, Anone was claryon

who mounts and  
rides after him,  
(3610)

followed by other  
Sarasens. (3615)

Richard, looking  
round, sees  
the Sarasens  
coming after him.  
(3653)

He is almost in  
despair.

- vpon the sayd coursour, whyche ranne faster and more  
 swyftlyer than a grehounde; the whyche coursour was  
 alle whyt on the one of hys sydes as a flour delys, & on  
 4 that other syde as rede as fyre enflammed, The taylor  
 after the facion of a peacock, the croupe behynde som-  
 what reysed & dropped, as smal as of a partryche; grete  
 thyes & short feet, & platte & rounde, wyth lytel eeres;  
 8 the mane of the necke whyt, his nosethrylles large &  
 ample; he was tofore moche brode, & had eyen grene &  
 clere, a lytel heed, a brode fronte, with a smal nosel; &  
 he was saddled with a saddle of yuorve, & the raynes of  
 12 þ<sup>e</sup> brydle entrelaced with gold; styroppes of fyn gold;  
 the poytral wel enorned & rychely. & was gyrde with  
 iiij stronge syngles, & had on hym moo than an C of  
 smal bellys of fyn golde, sownyng<sup>t</sup> moche melodyously.  
 16 & þ<sup>e</sup> paynym <sup>1</sup>smote hym with the spores moche  
 sharply, in suche wyse that the hors made a leep more  
 than xxx foot longe. And after escryed<sup>t</sup> due Rycharð  
 the noble knyght, sayeng<sup>t</sup> wyth an hye voys: "by  
 20 Mahoun, my souerayn god, thou messenger shalt neuer  
 achiueue thyn enterpryse, For wythoute goyng<sup>t</sup> any  
 ferther, thou shalte here ende thy lyf." whan rycharð  
 vnderstode hym, alle the blode in hys body was moeued  
 24 & chaungeð, & ansuerd: "Sarasyne, wherfore arte thou  
 of suche entencion ayenst me? What haue I trespaced  
 to the? I neuer offended the, ne robbed<sup>t</sup> thy tresour.  
 I requyre the by loue that thou dystrouble me not; and  
 28 yf thou suffre me to passe, I shal take it for a grete  
 seruyse, & I promyse to the that ones it shal be re-  
 warded<sup>t</sup> to the by me." The paynym answerd: "cer-  
 tain, frensshe man, thou spekest of grete folye; & of  
 32 mahoun be I cursed yf I doo any thyng<sup>t</sup> for the. I shal  
 not suffre the to passe for half the tresour of the world."  
 Also sone as Rycharð knewe hys entencion, he auauced<sup>t</sup>  
 ayenst hym, & the paynym came to Rycharð, & wyth

In front comes  
Clarion on a  
horse, half white,  
half red, (3659)

with a peacock's  
tail,

a white mane,  
and green eyes.

His breast piece  
is hung with hute  
gold bells.

Clarion calls on  
Richard to sur-  
render. (3673)

Richard asks him  
to let him go, as  
he has never done  
him any harm.  
(3681)

Clarion declares  
he will have his  
life. (3686)

<sup>1</sup> h ij, back.

Clarion cuts at  
Richard, but does  
him no harm.  
(3688)

Richard smites  
Clarion on the  
neck, and cuts his  
head off. (3704)

He takes Clarion's  
horse, (3705)

and lets his own  
go, bidding it an  
affectionate fare-  
well. (3713)

The Saracens  
coming up try to  
catch Richard's  
horse, but in vain.  
(3750)

hys swerde he smote hym hauk vpon hys shielde ; but  
it was so harde that it wente not thurgh. here-vpon  
richard, which was ful of grete yre ayenst the paynym,  
by effectuel deth came to hym wyth hys <sup>1</sup>swerde which 4  
was trenchaunte, & as the hors lepe forth, the paynym,  
lyfte vp his hede, & richard attayned ouerthwart the  
necke so ryzt in a loynte, that he smote of his nede, in  
suche wyse that it flewe ferre fro the body, ye, wel a 8  
spere lengthe, & he put þ<sup>e</sup> trunke of the body to the  
erthe al dede ; & forthwyth he descended fro hys hors,  
& mounted vpon that the good courser of the Paynym,  
whyche was the best hors of the world. Thenne 12  
Rychard myght wel say that he was neuer soo wel  
pourueyed of an hors ; For he was so myghty, that yf  
he had born vij knyghtes armed vpon hym, he wold  
not haue swette a droppe of water ; & for to swymme & 16  
passe a depe ryuer, ther was noo hors lyke hym. & after  
that he was thus horsed at his ease, he said to his owen  
hors by moche good affection : “ O gentyl hors doulstyn,  
for the I am sorowful that I may not conduyte the in 20  
to som place at my playsyr. I praye to God of heuen  
that he drawe þ<sup>e</sup> in to suche a waye that þou mayst  
come in to the hondes of crysten men & serue them. in  
many grete bataylles & euyl passages thou hast wel 24  
serued me, & of thy grete seruyce, as moche as apper-  
teyneth to me I thanke the gretely.” & here vpon he  
wente and rode forth hys waye. And anone the sara-  
syns that followed after, came <sup>2</sup>& fonde the kyng 28  
Claryon deed, theyr mayster, of whos deth they were  
so surprysed of melancolye & of sorowe, that they coude  
doo none other thyng but fyrst to renne for to take  
Rychards hors. But there was none soo hardy to ap- 32  
proche hym ne sette honde on hym, but the hors maad  
grete defiance, & took hys waye rennyng for to retorne  
to the place that he was departed fro.

<sup>1</sup> h ij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> h iij.

¶ How Rychards hors cam & passed' thurgh  
 thexcersyte of the admyral, & was seen &  
 knowen of the peres of Fraunce, in soo  
 4 moche that they thought that due Rychard'  
 had' been deed'; & how the brydge of  
 Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij

8 **R**ychard of Normandy wyth his swerde in hys  
 fyste rode hastely, & the sarasyns whych ranne  
 after hym came and fonde theyr kyng deed, of  
 whome the hede was on that one syde of the waye, &  
 the body on that other. It byhoueth not to recounte  
 12 the sorowe that they were in, whan the chyef of alle the  
 sarasyns of myght and parentage was descomfyte and  
 slayn; and for thyng that they coude do, they coude not  
 reteyne Rychards hors. & the fyrst that sawe the hors  
 16 come rennyng was thadmyral, whiche called gorant,  
 sone of kyng grehier, & also sortybraut of conymbres,  
 & sayd to them: "by my godd appolyn, whan I wel  
 aduyse and remembre me, I ought wel to loue my  
 20 neuwe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other.  
 I see wel that he hath put to deth the messenger of the  
 Frensche men: that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors  
 that yonder cometh." and thadmyrall commanded that  
 24 he shold hastely be taken. but whan the hors saw that  
 they wold haue taken hym, he ranne and smote out, &  
 cessed not tyl he cam to the yate of the castel in  
 whyche the barons of Fraunce were enclosed. & whan  
 28 the frensche men sawe thus the hors come, whyche was  
 longyng to rychard, they were al affrayed and moened,  
 and came & opened the gate, and anone he entred in;  
 and after that the yate was shette, they arenge them  
 32 aboute the sayd hors, for compassyon of sorowe, wepyng  
 pyetously. ¶ And Due Naymes spake fyrst and sayd:

The Saracens find  
 Clarion's body,  
 and lament over  
 him. (3724)

Balan sees Rich-  
 ard's horse run-  
 ning loose, (3719)

and thinks that  
 Richard has been  
 killed. (3712)

He orders the  
 horse to be  
 caught, (3714)

but none can  
 catch him.

The knights admit  
 him inside the  
 gates,

and lament over  
 Richard's death.

They are all in  
great grief, (3754)

“Ha, Richard of Normandy! I praye to god that he  
be in thy comfort and that he haue pyte of thy soule.  
I knowe wel that for thy deth we shal neuer haue  
socoure, Ne of thy partye we shal neuer haue none 4  
helpe.” Roulland and Olyuer heryng these <sup>1</sup>wordes, &  
also the other, wepte bytterly. here-vpon came florypes  
the curtoys in grete heynes, and sayd to them :

but Floripas com-  
forts them. (3763)

“Lordes, in the honour of god, leue your lamentyng 8  
and sorowe : we knowe not yet the trouthe of the  
mater.” thus as they were in these grete thoughtes, the  
Sarasyns came, whyche had lefte Rycharde ryde forth,  
And in grete sorowe & torment brougt the body of kyng 12  
Claryon. And whan thadmyral sawe them come, he  
beyng in the ethrocytes in hys entendement, cryed and  
sayd : “and how is it ? is myn neuewe in good poynte ?”

The Saracens re-  
turn hearing the  
body of Clarion.  
(3775)

The sarasyns ansuerd : “Syr admyral, we may not lye 16  
to you. Claryon is dede, it nedeth nomore to demaunde  
therof.” Thadmyral heryng thoo wordes, fyl down to  
therth al in a traumse, and he swouned more than iiij  
tymes as he had been dede. thus emonge al the sara- 20  
syns was a grete wepyng, & made grete sorowe. The

Balan swoons on  
hearing of his  
nephew's death.  
(3785)

sarasyns thus makyng thys lamentacyon, the barons of  
fraunce herde and vnderstood them, & specially flory-  
pes, which knewe better the langage. & after that she 24  
knewe the cause of theyr sorowe, she came to the barons,  
and sayd to them in spekyng to rolland : “Syr, knowe  
ye wherfore the sarasyns demene suche sorowe ? it is  
trouth that Rycharde your messenger <sup>2</sup>hath slayn the 28  
kyng claryon & wonne his hors, to whom is none lyke  
ne pareylle of bounte in al the world. & as wel for þe  
deth of claryon as for the losyng of the hors, they de-  
mene & make al thys sorowe & torment that ye see & 32  
here. Wherfore I praye you that euery man doo hys  
denoyr, to lede a good lyf and to make good chyere.”  
Olyuer sayd to rolland Ioyously : “O my felawe of

There is great  
grief over Clarion.  
(3792)

Floripas explains  
to the knights  
what has hap-  
pened. (3800)

<sup>1</sup> h iij. back.

<sup>2</sup> h iij. back. col. 2.

armes, ye knowe not how glad I am of these tydynge  
 that we here, & I ensure you by my soule that I am  
 as sure to passe thys daunger that we be in, as though  
 4 I were in the strengest castel of fraunce. blessyd be  
 richard of god, for he hath borne hym nobly!" and  
 semblably sayd al the other his felawes. After that  
 richard rode thus, thadmyral made a man to come to  
 8 hym nameð Orages, & made hym to take a dromedary  
 hastily, & comanded hym to bere his lettres to galafre,  
 which kept the stronge brydge of mantryble: "I charge  
 the to renne as faste as the dromydary may bere the, to  
 12 mantryble, and say to Galafre wherfore he suffred the  
 messagers of charles to come ouer the brydge, the  
 whyche haue doon to vs so moche greuance and en-  
 noyaunce, as thou can wel telle to hym. & I swere by  
 16 mahon my god, that he dyd a grete folye. & sythe on  
 that other parte the <sup>1</sup>messenger of the frensshe men  
 goeth thyder, and yf he recouute his message to Charles,  
 it myght happen he shold put me in subgectyon, Ther-  
 20 fore say to galafre that he kepe soo wel the brydge, that  
 noo persone passe: and say to hym more ouer, that, yf  
 he do otherwyse, I shal put oute hys eyen, and make  
 hym deye shamefully." "Syr admyral," sayd Orages  
 24 the messenger, "I shal do your commaundemente; and  
 I assure you I shal ryde as moche waye in one day as  
 that other shal do in foure dayes. for, for to ryde an  
 hondred legges contynuely, I shal neuer be wery."  
 28 And thus he departed from the admyral vpon a dromy-  
 dary, & taryed not tyl he came to mantryble, and spake  
 to Galafre, sayeng: "Galafre, I shal not hyde fro the  
 that the admyral is not contente wyth the, by cause thou  
 32 suffrest the frensshe men to passe ouer the brydge,  
 whyche haue doon to hym grete damage, for they be  
 lodged in the chyef toure, & holden in their subgectyon  
 the goddes, with floripes his douzter, and haue slayn

Balan sends a  
 message to Gala-  
 fre, the bridge-  
 ward of Mantrible,  
 (3s25)

that he is to allow  
 no one to pass the  
 bridge,

on pain of death.  
 (3s15)

Orages starts on a  
 dromedary.

He arrives at  
 Mantrible and  
 delivers his  
 message, (3s69)

that he is on no  
account to let  
Richard pass.  
(3875)

Galafre in a rage

tries to strike  
Orages,  
but is prevented  
by the by-stand-  
ers. (3884)

He sends 15,000  
men to look out  
for Richard. (3898)

many of the moost valyaunte of the courte of thadmy-  
ral. & the cause wherfore I am thus hastelye come, is  
thys: After me cometh a messenger, whyche is one of  
the barons of Fraunce, whyche gooth for to feteche ayde, 4  
vnto Charles theyr <sup>1</sup>kyng<sup>t</sup>; the whyche hath slayne  
kyng<sup>t</sup> Claryon. wherfore kepe wel thys passage that he  
passe not. For yf thou doo otherwyse, thou shalt not  
comme fynde the manere to saue thy lyf, but that thou 8  
shalt deye vylaynsly." Of these wordes Galafre was  
perturbed<sup>t</sup> and replenysshed of yre, & for hys angre  
he made moche foule chyere, and began to scumme at  
the mouth lyke a bore enchauffed, and took a staffe, and 12  
had<sup>t</sup> smyton the messenger yf it had<sup>t</sup> not be letted<sup>t</sup> by  
them that were presente. ¶ Neuertheles he mounted<sup>t</sup>  
vpon a tourrette, and with the sowne of a trompette he  
assembled<sup>t</sup> many men of armes, whyche were in nombre 16  
xv M, whyche were anone of horsback, and passed<sup>t</sup> the  
brydge. And whan they were ouer, it was anone lyfte  
vp, and they wente and<sup>t</sup> rode here and<sup>t</sup> there for to  
recountre þ<sup>e</sup> messenger of the frenssh men, yf by aduen- 20  
ture they myȝt fynde hym.

¶ How rycharde of normandye passed the ryuer  
of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt  
hert which cam tofore hym: [ca.]      iiij 24

Richard is in great  
doubt how to pass  
Alantrible.

He sees the Sara-  
cens covering all  
the country,

and begins to pray  
for help. 3904

**R**ychard<sup>t</sup> of Normandye, messenger of the frensshe  
barons prisoners, rode in grete doubte, ye may wel  
thynke and<sup>t</sup> ymagyne, how he onely by <sup>2</sup>hym self  
myght passe the stronge and<sup>t</sup> daungerous brydge. And 28  
in rydyng<sup>t</sup> he behelde behynde hym, and<sup>t</sup> sawe al the  
countrie couerd<sup>t</sup> wyth men of armes. thus byholdyng<sup>t</sup>  
theym he was sore troubled<sup>t</sup> in hys mynde, [&] began to  
crye: "O Ihesus, kyng<sup>t</sup> of glorie, at thys tyme be thou 32  
kepar of my body, & conservatour of my soule, For I

<sup>1</sup> h iiij. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> h iiij. back.



see wel the deelyne of my lyf. yf I put my self to fyght,  
 I shal haue my hede smyton of; and yf I entre in to  
 this hydous ryuer, I shal not conne passe ouer. Thus  
 4 at thys tyme I muste nedes deye. And yf I by force  
 retorned to my felawes, I shold make a grete defaulte to  
 therle Rolland, to whom I haue promysed<sup>1</sup> faythfully  
 to doo my deuoyr for to doo my message. Wherefore,  
 8 my god, my maker, I wote not what to say, but that thy  
 wyll be fulfilled and doon of me. thou knowest myn  
 entencion: after the same gouerne me!" he beyng nyghe  
 the ryuer, the sarasyns maden grete bruyt in comyng to  
 12 hym, emonge whom a neuewe of the admyral aunanced  
 hym to renne ageynst hym, & cryed wyth an hyghe  
 voys: "O messenger, what somener thou be, thyneke for  
 to dye! thou hast now ryden ouer ferre; now is þe houre  
 16 come that the deth of kyng claryon shal be aduenge."

These wordes so herde of rychard were <sup>2</sup>not to hym  
 ouer playsaunt; but he was euyl contente, and sodeynly  
 he spored his hors ayenst hym, holdyng a swerde in  
 20 hys honde, square & sharpe, whych he had conquerd of  
 Claryon: and came to hym, and smote hym so daunger-  
 ously ayenst the breste, that it perced thorough the  
 shelde in to hys body, that he fyl down to therthe al  
 24 deed; & after took hys hors by the brydle, whyche was  
 ryche of golde, and went to the ryuage of the water, and  
 byhelde it that it ranne lyke a quarel out of a crosbowe,  
 and rored lyke thundre, in suche wyse that galeye ne  
 28 other engyne myght not goo surely vpon hyt.

By the time he  
 gets near the  
 river the Saracens  
 are close upon  
 him. (3322)

Mandysee calls on  
 him to turn and  
 fight. (3329)

Richard turns and  
 kills him, (3332)

and takes his  
 horse.  
 He rides to the  
 bank of Flagot,  
 which runs like a  
 bolt from a cross-  
 bow.

He commends  
 himself to God.  
 (3349)

¶ Thenne by grete contrycion of hert he recom-  
 maunded hym self to our lord, that he shold preserue  
 hym from deth tyl that he had sayd hys message to the  
 32 Emperour Charles. Thenne god of heuen, that neuer  
 leueth hys seruantes at their nede, shewed vnto hym a  
 grete token of loue that he had to Charles. for Rychard  
 of Normandy beyng in thys medytacyon and thought

<sup>1</sup> orig. promysed.

<sup>2</sup> h iij. back, col. 2.

God sends a milk-  
white hart,  
which goes before  
Richard. (3955)

The water rises  
till it is level with  
the banks.  
The hart enters  
the river,

and Richard fol-  
lows it. (3962)

The Saracens dare  
not follow him.

The river sinks to  
its usual level.

Galafre lets down  
the draw-bridge.  
(3976)

Richard is now  
safe,

and rides on  
slowly.

for to passe ouer, god<sup>1</sup> sente a whyte herte which passed  
tofore rycharde<sup>1</sup>: & in comyng ye ought to wete that the  
ryuage of the water was moche hye, ye, as hye as a man  
from bynethe myght caste vp a stone wyth hys honde. 4  
And<sup>2</sup> the ryuer began to aryse<sup>1</sup> soo hye that it flowed  
ouer the banke, and<sup>2</sup> the herte entred<sup>1</sup> in to the water;  
and<sup>2</sup> Rycharde<sup>1</sup> loked<sup>1</sup> behynde hym, & sawe many sara-  
syns come in a grete multytude for to put hym to deth; 8  
and thenne he recommaunded<sup>1</sup> hym to god<sup>1</sup> wyth good<sup>1</sup>  
hert, and made the sygne of the crosse vpon his body,  
hanyng<sup>1</sup> in hys hert the holy name of Ihesus, that he  
myzt perseuere fro drede in suche wyse that he myght 12  
passe ouer the ryuere; and<sup>2</sup> soo toke the water &  
folowed<sup>1</sup> the hert. The paynmys seyng<sup>1</sup> that, were al  
abasshed and troublede<sup>1</sup>, and<sup>2</sup> there was not one that durst  
folowe hym. Fro Incontyuent the water aualed<sup>1</sup>, and<sup>2</sup> 16  
retorned<sup>1</sup> in to hys former estate and<sup>2</sup> beyng<sup>1</sup>. Thenne  
the paynmys made grete duel and<sup>2</sup> sorowe by cause they  
myzt not haue the messenger. ¶ Galafre, whyche that  
was moost wroth & werst contente, cam to the bridge 20  
and<sup>2</sup> aualed<sup>1</sup> the chaynes, and<sup>2</sup> commanded<sup>1</sup> the paynmys,  
vpon payne of deth, that they shold<sup>1</sup> not esse tyl that  
rycharde<sup>1</sup> were taken, or ellys they shold<sup>1</sup> be all in the  
Indygnacyon of thadmyral, and<sup>2</sup> in daunger to be loste. 24  
Rycharde<sup>1</sup> of Normandye came ouer in good<sup>1</sup> poynte, and<sup>2</sup>  
denoutelye thanked<sup>1</sup> god<sup>1</sup> of the grace that he had<sup>1</sup> sente  
to hym, and<sup>2</sup> descended<sup>1</sup> fro hys hors for to vngyrde and<sup>2</sup>  
lose hys saddle. <sup>2</sup>And<sup>2</sup> after resengled<sup>1</sup> hym, and<sup>2</sup> took his 28  
hors and<sup>2</sup> rode forth at hys ease, and<sup>2</sup> ladde that other  
hors on hys ryght syde. & doubted thenne nomore,  
For in shorte tyme he supposed<sup>1</sup> to fynde thexeersyte  
of kyng<sup>1</sup> Charles. The paynmys seeyng<sup>1</sup> thys, retourned 32  
sorrowfully, & wente to vname them, For other thyng  
coude they not do.

<sup>1</sup> h v.

<sup>2</sup> h v, col. 2.

¶ How charles was in purpoos to retorne,  
 wythout goyng ony ferther, by the coun-  
 ceyl of ganellon traytour, and his felowes ;  
 4 & other maters : capitulo v

**I**N as moche as rycharde rode, whyche was moche  
 lwey ; and out of grete thought Themperour Charles  
 was passyng<sup>1</sup> moche pensyf & sorowful for hys barons,  
 8 whyche were deteyned of thadmyral. And he, seeyng  
 that he had no tydynges, he sente for to come to hym  
 Ganellon, Geffroy, dantesuyle, aubert, machayre, and  
 many other. and emonge the other, cam reyner, fader of  
 12 Olyuer, to whome he sayd : “ lordes and frendes, I am  
 in moche grete trybulacyon. the cause is ynough ap-  
 parent, whyche is of my speecial barons, whyche were  
 sente as messagers to ballant, thadmyral. I see that  
 16 <sup>1</sup>no persone reporteth ne bryngeth ony tydynges from  
 them ; wherfore knowe ye, that of my dede that I dyd  
 I despyse my self. Thenne by more strenger reason  
 the other ought more to despyse me. And I you en-  
 20 sure that I shal neuer regne more, but shal leue alle.  
 Take ye there, loo ! the crowne of mageste, take it !  
 For I depose my self from hens forth.” Ganellon was  
 there which was loyeful, what somer semblaunt he  
 24 made, and sayd : “ syr emperour, yf ye byleue me, I  
 shal gyue to you good counceyl. ¶ Anone comaunde  
 that our lodgys and habytacons here be take vp, &  
 that euery man trusse hys gheer vpon the sommayers,  
 28 and thynke to retorne. For yf ye goo ony ferther, ye  
 shal neuer retorne. The contree of Aygre more is moche  
 stronge ; And sythe that, ballant the admyral is of grete  
 fyersnes, and wyth that, he hath alle the paynymys &  
 32 sarasyns capytayns in to hys ayde ; And by cause that  
 Eyerabras hys sone is deteyned by you, & maad crysten,  
 so moche more is he affectyoned ayenst you : And on

Meanwhile,  
 Charles is in great  
 trouble about his  
 knights. (1004)

He calls his  
 barons,

tells them his  
 trouble,

and declares his  
 intention of re-  
 signing the crown.  
 (1015)

Ganelon advises  
 him to give orders  
 for a return home,  
 (1025)

for Balan is too  
 strong for them,

now that the  
donzepetes are  
dead.

In time, he says,  
their children will  
be grown up,

and then Charles  
can return and  
conquer Spain.

Charles swoons  
for grief.

He mourns over  
his disgrace.  
(4051)

He asks his barons  
for their opinions.  
(1069)

All Ganelon's  
friends support  
his advice, (1081)

and declare they  
will go no further  
(4084)

that other parte your barons be not a-lyue, I ensure  
you : Retorne we in to Fraunce. We haue lefte there  
many of our chylhden and parents that shal wexe grete ;  
and<sup>1</sup> or it be twenty yere, they shal bere armes. And<sup>4</sup>  
thenne they with vs <sup>1</sup>shal come in to spayne, for to con-  
queste the londes and<sup>1</sup> seynouryes that we haue enter-  
prysek, And<sup>1</sup> shal reconure the holy relyques, of whome  
I haue grete pyte. And<sup>1</sup> more ouer ye shal reuenge the 8  
deth of Roulland, the noble erle, for whom ye haue thys  
melancolye ; For certayn ye shal neuer see hym." Whan  
Charles herde these wordes of Ganellon, he was smyton  
wyth soo grete sorowe, that after, he fyl down<sup>2</sup> in a 12  
swoune, And<sup>1</sup> spake not the space of a grete houre ; and<sup>1</sup>  
in wepyng bytterly he sayd<sup>1</sup> to hym self : ¶ "O poure  
caytyf and<sup>1</sup> vnhappy, what shalt thou do ? yf thou re-  
torne, þou shalt be dyshonoured. yet were it better to 16  
lose the lyf than to be thus shamed." After that he  
was comen to hymself, he sayd<sup>1</sup> to hys barons that were  
there : " Loo ! ye see the counceyl that ganellon gyueth  
to me, whych in no wyse may playse me. yf I retorne, 20  
wythout takyng vengeance of my noble barons which  
ben thus deteyned, there shal neuer man sette by me,  
but I shal be shamed, and<sup>1</sup> wyth good<sup>1</sup> ryght." Machayre,  
aulbery, and<sup>1</sup> geffroy, and<sup>1</sup> other, moo than an hondred, 24  
whyche al were parentes & traytres wyth Ganellon the  
moost parte, & also were moche myghty to-gydre, sayd<sup>1</sup>  
alle wyth one consente : " Syr emperour, purpose <sup>3</sup>ye  
not to do otherwyse than ganellon hath sayd<sup>1</sup>, For he 28  
hath spoken wysely ; and therfor conclude ye to retorne  
in to fraunce wythout gooyng any ferther on. we ben  
xx thousand that haue made oth to-gyder that, for any  
thyng that ye say or do, we shal not goo noo ferther. 32  
For sythe that Roulland is dede, they haue loste theyr  
comforte, & hym that was chyef of the conseruacyon of  
their persones." Charles, al heny, answerd : " O god of

<sup>1</sup> h v, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *erij.* donn.

<sup>3</sup> h vj.

- henen, how am I determyned? yf I retorne wythoute  
to auenge my barons, I shal doo pourely, sythe they  
haue susteyned & borne vp the crowne Imperyal and  
4 my wylle, and I now to retorne wythoute to auenge  
them—He that gaf me suche counceyll, loueth me but  
lytel, I see wel.” Reyner of genes, fader of Olyuer,  
aroos vp and sayd: ¶ “O Emperour, yf thou byleue  
8 these wordes that haue ben said to the, thy gouernaunce  
shal be so euyl, that by them at fraunce shal be wasted  
& brought to nought. And who somener haue damage,  
they reche not, but passe ouer lightly.” Thenne they  
12 that were of the partye of the traytres cam forth and  
sayd: “Reyner of genes, ye haue lyed of that whiche  
ye haue sayd. And yf it were not by cause the kyng<sup>t</sup>  
is present, ye shold lose your hede and it <sup>1</sup>shold be  
16 smyton of. we knowe wel what ye be: your fader  
garyn was neuer but a pour man and of lowe condy-  
cyon: Alle your lygnage ne ben but people of nought.”  
¶ The due Reyner myght not suffre thys Iniurye, but  
20 came to hym, and smote hym wyth his fyst in suche  
wyse that he ouerthrewe to grounde; and there were  
made many reproches and ylle talent, in so moche that  
yf the kyng<sup>t</sup> had not be present, and made the pees and  
24 tranquylte, they had slayn eche other. For anone there  
were moo than a thousand of the lygnage of ganellon.  
But fyerabras, which was present, blained themstrongely;  
And on that other syde the kyng sware by his crowne  
28 that yf there were ony persone that began bataylle or  
fyght, that he shold do hym be hanged as a thief at-  
taynt, of what somener estate that he were. and by thys  
they were aferde for to offende, and was nomore spoken.  
32 Not-withstandyng that, the counceyl was taken emonge  
them, that they shold put Reyner to deth as sone as  
they shold be in Fraunce. Charles sent for them to  
come to hym, and said to them: “ye haue done to me

Rayner warns  
Charles not to  
trust Ganelon or  
his friends. (4096)

Ganelon's friends  
abuse Rayner,  
4103)

who knocks  
Alorys down.  
(4117)

A great disturb-  
ance ensues,

which is quieted  
by Fierabras and  
Charles. (4136)

Ganelon's party  
vow vengeance  
against Rayner.

<sup>1</sup> h vj, col. 2.

Charles orders  
Alorys to beg  
Rayner's pardon  
on his knees.  
(4149)

Geoffrey d'Hante-  
ville advises  
Charles to follow  
Ganellon's advice.  
(4163)

Charles gives way,

and orders the  
retreat home to  
France. 4189

To the great grief  
of Rayner and  
others. 4195

a grete shame; but yf it be not amended now tofore  
me, I shal do opene Iustyce. Alwaye nedes must the  
kyng be obeyed." in suche wyse that alory<sup>1</sup> on hys  
knees cryed due Reyner mercy, but he wold neuer haue 4  
doon it yf it had not been for to appease the furour of  
kyng charles; & thus they maad the pees. And after  
themperour sayd his oppynyon, that yf he tordned backe  
that it shold be to hym grete dyshonour. Therfor cam 8  
geffroy daulteuylle, fader of Ganellon, whyche sayd:  
"Syr Emperour, I am olde, and haue seen moche thyng,  
wherfore me semeth that ye ought to bylene me as wel  
as any persone of your companye. ye knowe wel that I 12  
and Ganellon my sone haue alwaye lored you, And, how  
that it be that he counceylleth you to retorne, hath good  
ryght. I haue now my body alle to-brused for beryng  
of armes; and be ye sure, that tofore that twenty yere 16  
be passed, the chyldren that be now in fraunce shal be  
grete & myghty to bere armes, and they shal be so grete a  
companye, that lystely ye shal mowe conquere spayn, and  
auenge the deth of rolland and of hys other felowes." 20  
Whan Charles vnderstode these wordes, he wepte byt-  
terly, & saw that by force he must ayenst hys wyll  
retorne in to fraunce, and leue hys enemyes. Wherfore  
by the sowne of trompettes was cryed the retraytte. 24  
And anon the artylleryes were assembled and the  
harnois trussed, wherof<sup>2</sup> the companye of traytres were  
loyous, and many of the other were enyl contente, &  
in especial Reyner, whych retordned withoute hys sone 28  
Olyner, wherof ye may wel thyuke in what estate was  
hys hert, by cause he hath<sup>3</sup> loste al hys comforte.

¶ How after the complaynte of Charles,  
Rychard come vnto hym, whyche tolde to 32

<sup>1</sup> h vj, back.

<sup>2</sup> h vj, back, col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> orig. hast.

hym thaffayres of the peres of Fraunce :  
capitulo vj

4 **W**han charles was mou/te<sup>d</sup> on horsback, and<sup>e</sup> in  
wage for to retorne, he took remors of Rolland,  
Olyner, and of other, how he lefte them with-  
oute to do otherwyse his deuoyr: he tarye<sup>d</sup> sayeng<sup>t</sup>:  
“O vnhappy that I am, I may wel sorowe whan I now  
8 leue the men that I loue best in the world<sup>e</sup>, and retorne  
fro them, whan I ought by good<sup>e</sup> ryght to auenge them.  
I shal be reputed<sup>e</sup> for a fool, & sore blame<sup>d</sup>. O Rolland,  
how I haue lone<sup>d</sup> you! may euer your vnelle so longe  
12 lyue that he may see your deth auenge<sup>d</sup>? God<sup>e</sup> deffende  
that euer I bere crowne on my hede, seen the pouerte  
of my fayte.” thys sayeng, almoost he fyl a swoune to  
the erthe for the dysplaysaunce that he had: <sup>1</sup>moche  
16 heuynes had he that tyme. “Alas!” say<sup>d</sup> Charles,  
“Rolland, I was moche euyl auysed whan I consented<sup>e</sup>  
that thou sholdest goo to thadmyral! wel am I cause of  
al your perdyeyon!” In makynge<sup>t</sup> thys heuynes, the  
20 hoost made soo grete bruyt to retourne, that it was mer-  
uaylle. & thus as they began to ryde forth, The em-  
perour loke<sup>d</sup> toward the cest, and<sup>e</sup> from ferie he sawe  
rychard<sup>e</sup> come rydynge vpon an hors sore rennyng<sup>t</sup>, and  
24 helde in his hande a swerde al naked<sup>e</sup>, wherfor the Em-  
perour sente for to come to hym the moost grettest  
lordes of hys companye, and made thoost to tarye and  
goo no fether forth. “I see,” say<sup>d</sup> he, “yonder comynge<sup>t</sup>  
28 a man on horsback, which maketh grete haste, and<sup>e</sup>  
ledeth on hys ryght syde a fayr courser, as me thyneketh;  
and<sup>e</sup> he semeth by hys rydynge that he is Rycharde of  
normandye. Now I praye to god<sup>e</sup> almyghty that thys  
32 day he sende me tydynges of rolland and<sup>e</sup> of the other  
barons, that they be alyue.” Thenne the hoost tarye<sup>d</sup>,  
and anone came richard, whyche maad<sup>e</sup> hys hors to lepe

Charles laments  
over the loss of  
his barons; (4207)

he swoons from  
grief. (4221)

The army pre-  
pares to start  
home. (4227)

Charles sees  
Richard coming,  
(4229)

and orders a halt.  
(4235)

He recogni-  
ses  
Richard. (4247)

Charles enquires  
of Richard how  
Roland and the  
others are. (1257)

Richard tells him  
how they are  
besieged by Balan,  
(1265)

that they have  
Floripas and the  
sacred relics,  
(1271)

and have sent him  
to beg Charles to  
come to their  
help. (1276)

The king is  
pleased,

and says if they  
can hold out for  
six days he will  
deliver them.  
(1300)

moche gentylly tofore the kyng, whome he salewed  
moche humbly. And thenne charles sayd to rychar  
of normandy: "Sone of noble baron, how is hyt wyth  
you? what is bycomen of my neuewe Rolland and of  
myn other barons? be ye come allone? be they alyue  
or dede? telle me, I praye you." Rychar answered:  
"Syr Emperour, Rolland & the other, whan I departed  
fro them, were al hole and in good poynt, and been  
in aygremore, in a stronge toure, bysyged by ballant the  
admyral of spayne and fader of Fyerabras; & there been  
aboute them an hondred thousa[n]d sarasyns. And  
knowe ye for certayn that thadmyral is a man moche  
fyers & terryble, whyche hath sworn by his god mahoun  
and Termagaunt, that he shal neuer departe fro thens but  
that they shal be hanged by the necke. And on that  
other syde your barons haue wyth them floripes, the  
curtoys doughter of thadmyral, the fayrest that euer  
was seen, the whyche hath in hyr kepyng the relyques  
that ye soo moche desyre to haue. and sende you worde  
by me that ye shold come and ayde them for to saue  
theyr lyues. And yf it please you to remembre them,  
ye shal mowe conquere the contreye of spayne, & other  
goodes ynough." Grete consolacyon had kyng Charles,  
And thenne he conceyued wel that Ganellon was a  
traytre and ful of wyckednesse, And neuer after hys  
counceyll ne sayeng shold be herde ne allowed in hys  
courte. For he sawe wel, that as for hym it abode not  
but Rolland and hys felowes shold haue dyed. "Now  
gentyl Rychar," sayd the kyng, "is the toure in  
whyche they been bysyged, stronge & wel garnysshed  
of vytayl for to defende them any whyle? yf they may  
holde yj dayes, I shal make thadmyral to dye, and al  
hys complyces." "Syr," answerd Rychar, "I shal  
say to you the trouthe. they haue noo vytayl but they  
gete it with the swerde. thadmyral is meruayllously

<sup>1</sup> h vij. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> h vij. back.



fyers and<sup>l</sup> ful of cruelte, and<sup>l</sup> hath of people a multytude  
 Innumerable, the whyche holde the space of two myle.  
 the town is stronge, where he habyteth, & also there is  
 4 on thys syde of the toun the brydge of mantryble, where  
 the passage is moche dangerous. and<sup>l</sup> the walles of that  
 cyte ben made of marbre cymented<sup>l</sup> and<sup>l</sup> fortifyed<sup>l</sup> with  
 toures, and<sup>l</sup> there renneth a ryuer ryzt hydous, whyche  
 8 is named<sup>l</sup> flagot, and<sup>l</sup> is of depthe of ij speres of lengthe,  
 & renneth so fast and<sup>l</sup> brayeth, that there is noo bote ne  
 shyppe may passe theron. and<sup>l</sup> the brydge is half a myle  
 longe, And in the myddes there is a toure<sup>1</sup> of marbre  
 12 so stronge that it may not be beten doon ; & the yate is  
 garnysshed<sup>l</sup> & kepte wyth barryers of yron fast locked<sup>l</sup>.  
 ¶ The portyer that kepeth thys plase is a paynym hydous  
 and<sup>l</sup> grete, massyf, stronge and<sup>2</sup> felonous, whyche bet-  
 16 ter resembleth the deuyl than ony man or persone. he  
 is as blacke as pythe boyled<sup>l</sup>, & hath x thousand  
 knyghtes in his companye. wherfore I wote wel that by  
 force we may not passe ; For by ony assaulte that may  
 20 be doon to them, they doubtte it not. And<sup>l</sup> yf we passe  
 not by engyne and subtyllte, we may not goo ouer the  
 brydge ; For by force we may noo thyng<sup>3</sup> do. but it  
 byhoueth vs to passe in gnyse of marchaunts ; And<sup>l</sup>  
 24 somme of vs shal be wel armed<sup>l</sup> vnder our clothes ; and<sup>l</sup>  
 there aboue we shal were a mantel of cloth, & theyr  
 swerdes vnder, And<sup>l</sup> there shal come after vs grete som-  
 myers charged with marchaundyses. And<sup>l</sup> ye wyth al  
 28 the chyualrye shal tarye in a lytel wode, & that enery  
 man be in grete poynte. & after whan we haue gotten  
 the fyrst gate, I shal soune & blowe myn horne, And<sup>l</sup>  
 wyth motye ye shal come on. And<sup>l</sup> thus we shal haue  
 32 the passage, by the playsyr of god, and<sup>l</sup> we shal come to  
 our enteneyon." Thys counceyl was wel approued<sup>l</sup> by  
 the kyng<sup>4</sup> Charles, whyche ofte blessyd<sup>l</sup> rycharde by cause  
 he had<sup>l</sup> so wel sayd<sup>l</sup>, & thenne he resembled<sup>l</sup> al his people.

Richard tells him  
 that the tower is  
 surrounded by the  
 Saracens,

and that he will  
 have to pass the  
 bridge of Mantri-  
 ble, (4309)

which is kept by  
 a giant,

as black as pitch,  
 with 10,000 men.  
 (4321)

He proposes a plan  
 by which they  
 may pass it by,  
 disguising some  
 knights as mer-  
 chants. (4345)

Charles approves  
 of the plan. (4356)

<sup>1</sup> orig. tonre.

<sup>2</sup> h vij, back, col. 2.

The standardes were reysed, and the loryflam dyscouerð.  
 Rycharð took hys hors, and gaf it to due Reyner, And  
 wente & <sup>1</sup>bonde heye and grasse to-gyde, and made  
 trusses vpon many sommyers, in the guyse of mar- 4  
 chauntes. every man wel armed vnder hys cloke, &  
 swerde gyrde, and so take theyr horses, to thende that  
 they shold not be espyed: and were in nombre v hon-  
 dred knyghtes, alle men of grete facyon, and dryue to- 8  
 fore them the sommyers for a good enterpryse. Rycharð  
 went tofore as chyef enterprenour, duc howel of Nauntes  
 folowed, Guye de vallee, Ryoll du mauns, Duc Reyner,  
 fader of Olyuer, & other, whyche rode forth wythout 12  
 taryeng. And Charles wyth alle hys baronnye abode  
 in a wode, as tofore I haue maad mencyon.

Five hundred  
 French knights  
 disguise them-  
 selves as mer-  
 chants, (1369)  
 and start on,

while the others  
 lie hid in a wood.  
 (1400)

¶ How by the moeyen & counceyl of Rycharð  
 of Normandye, wyth iij other barons, the 16  
 strong brydge of mantryble was wonne,  
 not wythoute grete payne; And what  
 maner man galafre was: capitulo vij

**T**hemperour charles, with an hondred thousand men, 20  
 abode in the wode tofore sayd, & Rycharð of nor-  
 mandye, hoel of Nauntes, Ryoll, and Reyner, & other  
 people whyche were valyaunte of theyr persone, were on  
 the waye to goo toward man-tryble, and hadde wyth 24  
 them a quantyte of sommyers charged. whan the felowes  
 of Rycharð sawe the ryner of flagot so roryng, And  
 thentree of the eyte of mantryble so stronge, the brydge  
 soo daungerous to passe, & the yates barred and en- 28  
 chayned so wyth yron, they were moche abasshed.  
 For, for to come thyder by assulte, alle the puyssaunce  
 of crystendom myght not entre by that place, but they  
 auaid the brydge and chaynes of yron. Ryol de- 32  
 maunded of Rycharð: "What may there be of this

Richard and his  
 party ride on,

driving the pack-  
 horses before  
 them. (1350)

His companions  
 are frightened at  
 the sight of the  
 river and the  
 strength of the  
 bridge. (1405)

<sup>1</sup> h viij.

<sup>2</sup> h viij, col. 2.

place?" And he answered: "knowe ye that thys is the strongest cyte that is bytwene thys and Acres. And there been in the same cyte moo than a thousand men of armes." Hoel of Nautes was alle afrayed, And commaunded hym self to god, prayeng hym to kepe theyr persones. Rychard sayd: "lordes, I wyl goo before, & shal speke fyrst; and whan we haue passed the fyrst yate, see that ye take of your clokes for to smyte vpon the paynymys: & for ony thyng that happeth, see that the one of you faylle not the other." Ryol answered: "doubte ye not that whan I am emonge the sarasyns but that I shal doo my deuoyr that it shal appyere: and yf I doo not as I say, I wyl that ye reclame me recreaunte, and repute me as rebouted." After these wordes they hasted theyr sommyers toward the brydge; & galafre sawe them fro ferre, and stode restyng hym nygh to the fyrst gate, & helde in his honde a grete axe of fyn stele bended and affyled that there was noo syde but it cutted. Thys paynym was grete, and fourmed so hydously, and of suche representacyon, that he semed better a denyll than a resonable persone. he had eyen al enflammed lyke fyre, & he was as blacke as boyled pytche; hys necke large & grete, his nose half a fote longe, his eeres so grete that they myzt conteyne wel half a busshel of whete, hys armes longe & croked, & his feet stode ouerthwart; & as of the remenaunte of hys body, was lothely ynough. Ballant thadmyral loued hym moche, & was his neuewe, and for the grete confydence that he had in hym he gaf to hym the keynyng of the brydge of mantryble, by cause that it was the moost strengest passage that was in al the marches of that contreye. And the sayd paynym was conestable of al the londes of thadmyral, wherfore it was necessarye that none of the freysshe men shold haue be knowen of hym. For yf there had ony be knowen, there shold

Richard encourages them, and tells them to follow him. (1113)

Galafre sees them coming. (1127)

He is as hideous as a devil,

pitch-black, with flaming eyes, his nose is six inches long, and his ears big enough to hold half a bushel of wheat.

Balan loved him greatly

and had made him constable of all the country about. (1115)

Galafre challenges  
the French  
knights. (4451)

neuer none haue escaped<sup>1</sup> but he shold haue ben dede.  
Thus, themme, whan they were <sup>1</sup>at mantryble, Rychard  
passed<sup>2</sup> afore. and<sup>3</sup> whan he was at the entre of the gate,  
Galafre came to hym & sayd<sup>4</sup>: “vassal, what are ye? &  
wherfore come ye hyther?”

Richard tells him  
they are mer-  
chants on their  
way to the fairs,

¶ Rychard<sup>5</sup>, whyche was wyse, chaunged his langage,  
& began aragon, and<sup>6</sup> sayd<sup>7</sup>: “Syr, I am a marchaunte  
whyche cometh fro Taraston wyth these other mar- 8  
chauntes, & brynge grete quantyte of draperye, and<sup>8</sup> wyl  
goo to the fayres, by the helpe of mahon, to whome we  
goo to present our marchaundyses; and yf we were at  
Aygre more, we shold sojourne there, and<sup>9</sup> gyue to thad- 12  
myral somme preeyous yestes that we here brynge.  
These other marchauntes that ben here wyth me ben al  
esclanes, and knowe not the langage, wherfor, fayre syr,  
we praye to aduyse vs what we may best do, & by what 16  
waye we ought to goo.” Galafre ansuerd<sup>10</sup>: “knowe ye,

and bearing pre-  
sents to Balan.  
(4456)

Galafre says that  
twelve Frenchmen  
had passed the  
bridge without  
paying toll, (4475)

that I am kepar of the brydge and<sup>11</sup> of the passages that  
been fyfty myle here aboute. But not longe sythen  
passed hereby xij glotons of fraunce, whiche were mes- 20  
sagers of the emperour Charles, which yet owe to me  
theyr trybute for theyr passage. Neuertheles my lord<sup>12</sup>  
thadmyral kepeth them in pryson, And<sup>13</sup> one of them  
that other day escaped preuxly away as a theef, whiche 24  
rode vpon an hors the best that euer I sawe, & <sup>2</sup>passed<sup>14</sup>  
ouer thys rennyng water; whyche also slewe my eosyn  
the kyng<sup>15</sup> Claryon, for whome I am in grete melancolye.  
now wold<sup>16</sup> god<sup>17</sup> Mahon that he were now here vpon thys 28  
brydge, I shold<sup>18</sup> cleue hym vnto the myddle of his bely  
wythout to haue any merey or pyte on hym.

as well as a  
messenger,

who had slain his  
cousin Claryon,  
(4487)

Syth that tyme thadmyral doubteth of treason, For  
his sone fyerabras whyche hath renyed<sup>19</sup> mahon and<sup>20</sup> the 32  
paynym lawe for to become crysten. And<sup>21</sup> he com-  
maunded<sup>22</sup> me thre tymes that I shold<sup>23</sup> not suffre any  
persone, lord<sup>24</sup>, knyght, ne scruytour, to passe, And<sup>25</sup> that

wherfore Ba'an  
had ordered him  
to let no one pass,

<sup>1</sup> h viij. back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> i j.

- I shold<sup>þ</sup> serche wel al for to knowe the condycyon of  
 theym that come thys waye. Therefore I wyl knowe  
 what ye be." Rycharð heryng thys, bowed<sup>þ</sup> his hede :
- 4 Ryol du mau<sup>ns</sup>, Hoel of Naumes, and<sup>þ</sup> Reyner of genes  
 goon forth ouer the brydge. whan galafre saw them, he  
 began to doubte, and<sup>þ</sup> sayd<sup>þ</sup> to them that there shold<sup>þ</sup>  
 nomoo entre, and<sup>þ</sup> aunanced<sup>þ</sup> hym and<sup>þ</sup> drewe vp the  
 8 brydge; and there were nomoo wythin but foure, whyche  
 he dred<sup>þ</sup> not, and<sup>þ</sup> sayd<sup>þ</sup> to them in grete fyerste : "ye are  
 ouer bokle & hardy to entre herein wythout my com-  
 maundemente, And<sup>þ</sup> therfor ye four shal be sette in  
 12 pryson, and the other that come after you also. And<sup>þ</sup>  
 to-morn I shal sende you prysoners <sup>1</sup>to my lord<sup>þ</sup> thad-  
 myrall, he for to doo with you his playsyr. Take of your  
 mantellys or clokes, for I wyl see what ye haue there  
 16 vnder, For ye seme people for to do euyl." Thus say-  
 eng, he toke noel by the cloke, & drewe hym therby  
 foure tymes aboute : "By god<sup>þ</sup>," sayd<sup>þ</sup> Ryol, "I may no  
 lenger tarye to see hym do thys Iniurye to my cosyn ;  
 20 yf I suffre lenger, be I confounded<sup>þ</sup> !" And<sup>þ</sup> therwyth  
 he threwe of his cloke, and<sup>þ</sup> smote vpon the paynym ; but  
 he was so strongely armed<sup>þ</sup> that he myght do hym no  
 harme, sauf that he smote of a lytel of hys ere. Rycharð<sup>þ</sup>  
 24 and Reyner semblably caste of theyr clokes, and<sup>þ</sup> eche  
 of them with a swerde in theyr hondes smote to-gydre  
 vpon Galafre, and gaf hym many strokes ; but the heed<sup>þ</sup>  
 ne the body they myght not hurte, For he was armed<sup>þ</sup>  
 28 with the hyde of on olde Serpente harde and<sup>þ</sup> maylled<sup>þ</sup>.  
 ¶ Thys Paynym was angry, and<sup>þ</sup> supposed for to haue  
 smyton Ryol, and<sup>þ</sup> enhauned hys axe that was grete  
 and<sup>þ</sup> heuy and<sup>þ</sup> also sharpe. but Ryol sawe the stroke  
 32 come, and was habylle, and<sup>þ</sup> lepte a syde, and<sup>þ</sup> the stroke  
 smote vpon the grounde in suche wyse that hyt claffe a  
 marble stone on whyche the stroke lyghted<sup>þ</sup>.

unless he is  
 known. 4501)

Raoul and two  
 others pass on to  
 the bridge. 4509)

Galafre raises the  
 bridge, 4514)

and calls on them  
 to surrender.  
 (4517)

Raoul strikes at  
 him,

and cuts off a piece  
 of his ear.

The others cut at  
 him, but cannot  
 hurt him. (4541)

Galafre cuts at  
 Raoul with his  
 axe, 4552

but misses him.

Rayner knocks  
Galafre down with  
a branch of a tree.  
(1563)

1000 Saracens  
assemble. (1573)

Richard lets  
down the bridge,  
and the 500  
knights enter.  
(1581)

Then he blows his  
horn. (1575)

and Charles with  
all his men come  
up. (1587)

Ganelon in front.  
(1589)

“Ha ! god of heuen !” sayd Reyner, “how he  
smyteth outrageously ! <sup>1</sup> I am al abasshed of the puyss-  
saunce of thys deuyl whom we may not conquere ne  
gryene.” He thus sayeng, he took a grete branche of 4  
a tree whyche was longe and stronge, and aduysed and  
marked the paynym wel, and he smote hym therwyth  
in suche wyse that he made hym to ouerthrowe to  
therthe ; & whan he was ouerthrowen, he maad a crye 8  
so hye and hydous that the Ryuer and the rockes made  
grete bruyt. Wyth thys voys the paynmys of man-  
tryble were moeued and assembled, that within a lytel  
whyte there were redy armed moo than x thousand. 12  
there was thenne a grete commocyon ; Rycharde of Nor-  
mandye ranne to the yate of the brydge, & aualed down  
the drawe bridge, And thenne entred in v hondred  
knyghtes whych the foure barons had brought wyth 16  
them ; but at the entre of the gate the paynmys en-  
countred them : there was a grete medle and recountre ;  
many mortal strokes were there gyuen, many were there  
slayne and hurte. Rycharde took hys horne and sowned 20  
it hyely thre tymes. Charles themperour vnderstooke  
it wel, whyche was in the wood aforesayd with al his  
puyssaunce. Eevery man was on horsback moche redyly,  
and there was not one that cesset to renne tyl he came 24  
to the brydge. <sup>2</sup>¶ Ganellon, whyche after was tray-  
four, bare hym valyauntly. For he was the fyrst that  
cam to the brydge wyth hys confanon reyse ; but the  
loyalte & trouthe of hym ne of hys kynnesmen endured 28  
not longe, as the laste booke shal more playnly shewe,  
by the playsyr of god.

¶ How by force and strengthe of bataylle  
Charles entred in to mantryble, after that 32  
Galafre was slayn, not wythstandyng that

<sup>1</sup> i j. back.

<sup>2</sup> i j. back, col. 2.

alory the traytre was contrarye to hym ;  
and' many other maters : capitulo viij

- 4 **A**T thentre of mantryble were moche hurt people &  
confounde, as wel of frenssh men as of sarasyns.  
and at that tyme themperour bare hym wel, For whome  
he attayned wyth hys swerde named<sup>t</sup> Ioyouse, he must  
nedes deye, he smote so rudely. and that day was alway  
8 by hym Ganelon, whych dyd<sup>t</sup> wel hys deuoyr. The  
dyches of the towne were depe and<sup>t</sup> ful of water, wherin  
many were drowne. ¶ Thus as Charles passed<sup>t</sup> tofore,  
and<sup>t</sup> hys people after, He sawe galafre on þ<sup>e</sup> grounde,  
12 which was not dede, and<sup>t</sup> that semed<sup>t</sup> better a deuyl than  
a resonable persone, And<sup>t</sup> helde alwaye hys <sup>1</sup>axe in hys  
honde, wyth whyche he had<sup>t</sup> slayn thyrty frenssh men.  
And<sup>t</sup> the Emperour, seeyng<sup>t</sup> the harme that he had<sup>t</sup> doon  
16 to the frensshe men, anone commaunde<sup>t</sup> to slee hym ; &  
so moche they smote at hym wyth axes and<sup>t</sup> stones, that  
they slewe hym. The bruyt and<sup>t</sup> noyse was so grete,  
that fyue myle aboute was anone knowen that the  
20 brydge of mantryble was taken and<sup>t</sup> conquer<sup>t</sup> ; wherfore  
there came I thousand<sup>t</sup> sarasyns, for to gyue ayde to the  
cytyzeyns of mantryble, and to destroye the frenssh  
men. The walles of the towne were of marble, and<sup>t</sup> soo  
24 stronge that it semed<sup>t</sup> a thyng Impossyble to conquere  
or destroye. ¶ To thys medle came a geau<sup>nt</sup> moche  
fyers, named<sup>t</sup> Ampheon, And<sup>t</sup> had<sup>t</sup> a wyf named<sup>t</sup> Amyotte.  
And<sup>t</sup> she was departed fro her gesyne, For she had<sup>t</sup>  
28 borne two sones, whyche were but iiij monethes olde,  
and<sup>t</sup> were two foot brode in the breste, and<sup>t</sup> ten foot longe,  
as thystorye sayth. Thys geau<sup>nt</sup> opened<sup>t</sup> the gate, &  
helde in his honde a club of yron grete and<sup>t</sup> massyf,  
32 And whan he was passed that yate, wyth hys voys  
tenebrouse and dyabolyke he cryed<sup>t</sup> : “ Where is charles  
the kyng of fraunce? wyl he now bere wyth hym the

In the fight at the  
gate of Mantrible

Charles and  
Ganelon bear  
them well. (4595)

Charles sees that  
Galafre is not  
dead,

and orders him to  
be slain. (4611)

50,000 Saracens  
come to help those  
of Mantrible,  
(4639)

amongst them a  
giant and giant-  
ess, named Am-  
pheon and  
Amyot. (4652)

Ampheon chal-  
lenges Charles,  
(4669)

and threatens  
him. (4672)

relyques to Saynt Denys? by mahon, by the whyche I  
comforte my self, it were better <sup>1</sup>for hym, olde dotard,  
that he were now at parys. And late hym knowe cer-  
taynly, that yf thadmyral may haue hym, he shal neuer 4  
haue mercy on hym, but he shal do hym be flayn, &  
hanged alle quyeke, or brenne hym in a fyre." after  
that he had thus spoken, he smote down many frensshe  
men wyth hys club of yron. ¶ In thys recountre were 8  
seen and founden so grete a multytude of dede men  
that they letted men to passe. Charles, whyche sawe  
the facyon, descended and lyght of hys hors, alle wroth  
in hys courage, & sette hys shelde tofore hym, wyth hys 12  
swerde in hys hande, and hys barons came after hym  
ayenst the geaunt. & after that the kyng & he were  
assembled, Charles wyth hys swerde Ioyous smote hym  
soo myghtely that he clefted hym in two pycees, & 16  
myghtely recouerd hys stroke, that he maad hym falle  
to the erthe, And soo he was deed. Wherefore the  
Sarasyus were all mocued and affrayed, And as people  
enraged smote vpon the Frensshe men with dartes, 20  
plombettes, and other engynes mortal.

Charles calls for  
help. 4693  
Richard and three  
others join him,

¶ And thenne Charles cryed socours for to assemble  
hys people. And wyth that crye came to hym Rychard  
of Normandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of nauntes, and 24  
Syr Ryol du mauns, <sup>2</sup>whyche alle had courage lyke vnto  
lyons. These foure barons wyth charles made the pay-  
nyms to remeue, and to reentre ageyn by force in to the  
towne of mantryble. And anone the turkes, whyche 28  
were moo than x thousand, cam to the yate for to shette  
it, in makyng grete defence with bowes and other shotte,  
besyde them that came after, whyche kepte the passages,  
which were wel, as thystorye maketh mencyon, fyue 32  
thousand; but alle they coude not fynde the maner to  
lyfte vp the brydge, For it was conserued and kept  
ayenst the sarasyus by the frenssh men. There was

and drive the  
Saracens back  
into the town.  
4699)

The Saracens  
surround them.  
(4703)

<sup>1</sup> i ij. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> i ij. back.



grete bruyt in thys recountre ; And though Charles  
doubted, it was noo meruaylle. For he knewe wel that  
yf the sarasyns had lyfte vp the brydge to the yate of  
4 the towne, It had not be possyble to hym to haue passed  
ouer. And he, seeyng them reyse vp toward the yate  
grete barres of yron, supposed not to haue passed, And  
wyth a moche wooful herte began to wayle Roulland  
8 his newewe, and the other hys felowes, as he shold neuer  
haue seen them.

Charles is almost  
in despair. (4712)

¶ Rychard of Normandye consyderyng thys, eseryed  
and sayd : “Syr Emperour, in the honour of god esmaye  
12 you not, but thynke to destroye and smyte down these  
Turkes, and god shal ayde & helpe vs. Ye knowe wel  
that there is none so franke ne valyaunte that wyl  
acoward hymself, but that he ought to be despysek, and  
16 wyth good ryght. ¶ And I praye to god that he be  
confounded that suffreth hymself to be taken a-lyue for  
to dye afterward, and that had not leuer be hewen in  
pyeces than to retorne. And wythoute more, late vs  
20 auance vs, For now it is nede that eche man proue hys  
strengthe and the valure of hys persone.” Wyth these  
wordes of a grete courage, entre[d] in to the towne,  
Charles, Reyner, Hoel, Ryol, and Rychard, These fyue  
24 onelye, eche wyth a swerde in hys honde. And ye  
ought to wete that they entred not wythout grete  
slaughter of turkes and of Paynyns.

Richard encour-  
ages him, (4715)

and the fyve push  
forward into the  
town. (4725)

Charles, seying come grete multytude of sarasyns,  
28 cryed “a larme and socours” moche hye and furiously.  
Ganellon vnderstood hym, and had of hym grete pyte ;  
Not wythstondyng at the laste he founde hym not good ;  
& came to geffroy, & eseryed hauteuyle his fader, & the  
32 other hys kynnesmen, whyche were armed moche ryhely  
to the nombre of M vij C, and al they came afote for to  
assayle the yate. The turkes maad grete deffence wyth  
brondes and barres of yron and mortal shotte, where as

Charles calls for  
assistance.  
Ganellon hears  
him,

and wishes to  
help him. (4729)

1 many were dede and hurte, of the people of the sayd  
Ganelon.

Alorys presses  
Ganelon to retire,  
and leave Charles  
to his fate. (4739)

Thenne alory, the traytre, sayd to ganellon: "in fayth,  
we ben grete foles for to late vs thus deye, & suffre thys 4  
torment." And after he sayd to ganellon yet: "late  
vs goo and departe. Charles is wythin wel empessed:  
god forbede that he euer departe! & thou mayst wel  
see now, that of hym and of Reyner we are wel auenge 8  
of the contradyctyons that they made to vs, & of theyr  
subgettes also. And euyl deth mote he deye that folow-  
eth them ony ferther. for we may wyne Fraunce at  
our ease and wyll, & holde it wythout contradyctyon, 12  
Seen that there is no baron that wyl be to vs con-  
trarye." Ganellon ansuerd: "God of glorye forbede  
that euer I shold do suche trayson to my ryghtful lord!  
we holde of hym al our londes & seynouryes. I shold 16  
be holden for an ouer vntrewe man yf I consented to  
hys deth. We haue none other cause but that we ought  
to do our deuoyr for hym." whan Alory vnderstood hym,  
he enraged almoost for angre, and after sayd to ganellon: 20

Alorys calls him  
a fool; (4759)

"ye be a veray fool, that ye tarye whan ye now may  
wel aduenge you. yf themperour Charles be slayn, al the  
other barons shal haue theyr heedes smyton of, And  
thus we shal be aduenged on al our e<sup>n</sup>emyes. Ther- 24  
fore leue of, and come on." Ganellon ansuerd: "god  
forbede that euer I shold be a traytre to my lord, ne  
that I leue hym vnholpen, but doo my deuoyr to ayde  
hym. I had leuer to be dysmembred, than to be shamed 28  
and blamed in this dede." ¶ Of these wordes were  
euyl contente Alory and also geffroy daulteuyle, in  
suche wyse that there was grete debate emonge them.  
Vpon this came Fyerabras in good araye and grete 32  
poynte, and began to crye: "where is Charles?"

But Ganelon is  
infatigable to Charles.  
(4765)

Fierabras comes  
up, and asks  
where Charles is,  
(4775)

¶ The Traytre answerd: "Syr, ye shal neuer see  
hym. He is wythin enclosed, and I suppose he be

<sup>1</sup> i ij.

<sup>2</sup> i ij. col. 2.

dede now.' Fyerabras answerd: "And ye emonge  
 you, what doo you here? what tarye ye? why socoure  
 ye hym not in thys nede? ye may be reproched of  
 4 treson wyth good ryght." And after bygan to crye  
 "socours and ayde" moche lowde; and by hys voys all  
 the frensshe men came, wythoute ony taryeng, to the  
 belfraye, and fonde Fyerabras and Ganelon, that thenne  
 8 had lefte the Traytres at the entree of the brydge.

¶ And Fyerabras thenne was wel Ioyous whan he  
 sawe that the brydge was not drawen up, And thenne  
 he and Ganelon dyd gretely theyr deuoyr, for to entre  
 12 in to the cyte. <sup>1</sup>And whan they were wythin, & the  
 traytres sawe the toun wonne, by a manere to do gretely  
 theyr deuoyr, entred in a foot, & smote down wyth  
 the other comunelye. And grete habundaunce of blode  
 16 runne thurgh the towne oute of the dede bodyes, that  
 eche man meruaylled that sawe it. The paynyns cryed  
 and brayed as wulues enfamysshed, whan they sawe that  
 they coude not resyste them. They sente to the ad-  
 20 myral that he shold socoure them, and cryed on malon  
 & Termagaunt that they wold come to theyr ayde; but  
 for all that, they were dyscomforted sorowfully, put oute  
 of theyr habytacyons, robbed, pyllled of theyr rycheesses  
 24 and goodes, and destroyed. Thus doying, a messenger  
 departed secretlye for to goo to Aygremore, for tacompte  
 and telle the tydynges of theyr destructyons.

¶ How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe  
 28 greued' gretely the crysten men, and' how  
 hyr two sones were baptysed of the Em-  
 perour Charles: capitulo ix

32 **W**Han mantryble was taken, many strokes were  
 gynen; but when Amyotte, the geantesse, knewe  
 & herd the crye of the cytezeyns, whiche <sup>2</sup>were

<sup>1</sup> i iij, back.<sup>2</sup> i iij, back, col. 2.

and calls on them  
 to succour him.  
 (4780)

Fierabras and  
 Ganelon fight  
 nobly,

and the town is  
 won. (1792)

The Saracens send  
 to Balan for help.  
 (4800)

troubled;—She was as blacke as pyche boyled: hyr  
 eyen were rede as bremyng fyre: she had a grete  
 vysage & croked, as hye of lengthe as a spere, & gretely  
 affrayed of the deth of hyr husbon, & also aferde for 4  
 hyr ij sones, of whyche she was late delyuerd;—soo she  
 in a rage lepte out of hyr hous, and fonde a sythe  
 trenchaunt and meruayllously sharpe, and cam vpon  
 the freysshe men so Impetuously that she maad grete 8  
 dyscomfyte, in suche wyse that none durst wel ap-  
 proche hyr. Kyng Charles seeyng thys, was euyl con-  
 tente of the deth of hys peple, and demaunded a crosse  
 bowe. And whan it was bende, he shotte so ryght that 12  
 he atteyned hyr bytwene the browes, so that she fyl  
 down deed to the erthe. She began to cast oute of hyr  
 throte a flamme of fyre, moche hydous. Neuertheles,  
 she was smyton so wyth stones and other thynges, that 16  
 she neuer moeued after; wherfore after that, the yates  
 of the towne and other defences were not kepte ne  
 defended, but that Charles dyd his wyll of alle.  
 ¶ Grete rychesse was founde in that fayre towne, and 20  
 the subgettes of the Emperour Charles were there wel  
 refresshed of gold and syluer, whiche there habounded.  
 For thadmyral Ballant, by cause that place <sup>1</sup> was so  
 stronge & sure, had layed there grete tresours. The 24  
 kyng ordeyned in suche manere, that bothe grete and  
 smale were wel contente wyth hym. And there he  
 abode thre dayes in departyng <sup>2</sup> & destributyng the  
 goodes, after the degrees & qualytees of hys subgettes. 28  
 And after, as charles wente sportyng by the ryuer flagot,  
 In a caue were founden the ij sones, yonge chyldren, of  
 the fornamed grauntesse Amyotte, of whome he was  
 wel loyous, and were baptysed; & one he named Rou- 32  
 land, and that other Olyuer; and dyd do them wel to  
 be nourysshed. But after, wythin two monethes, they  
 were bothe founden dede in theyr beddes, wherfore

Amyot the giant-  
 ess rushes out,  
 armed with a  
 seythe,

and slays numbers  
 of the French.  
 (4820)

Charles shoots her  
 with a cross-bow.  
 (4832)

The town is  
 sacked. (4845)

Charles remains  
 at Mantrible three  
 days. (4847)

He finds the  
 children of the  
 giantes Amyot,

whom he causes  
 to be baptised,  
 under the names  
 of Roland and  
 Oliver. (4865)

<sup>1</sup> i iij.

<sup>2</sup> orig. departyng.

themperour was euyl contente. Neuertheles, in that  
 same tyme, whyche was the moneth of may, that the  
 stronge cyte of mantryble was taken & put in subgee-  
 4 tyon, charles made to come to hym Rycharde of Nor-  
 mandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of nautes, Ryol of  
 mauns, & took counceyl who shold kepe the brydge  
 and passage of mantryble, tyl they had destroyed bal-  
 8 lant the admyral, & delyuerd oute of pryson the other  
 peres of fraunse. Rycharde answerd: "syr emperour,  
 me semeth it shold be good that hoel & syr Ryol shold  
 abyde for to kepe þe brydge & toun wyth fyue thousand  
 12 men." And lyke as Rycharde sayd, so was it doon.  
 and there they ij abode, and the hurt men for to be  
 heled at theyr leyzer. and after, with sowne of trom-  
 pettes, the hoost of the emperour began to depart toward  
 16 aygremore; and there was so moche peple and so grete  
 estate, that it was merueyille. Thus as they were wel  
 on theyr waye, The Emperour wente vpon a lytel hylle  
 for to byholde his peple and subgettes; And seeyng the  
 20 multytude, he lyfte vp hys eyen to heuen, and sayd:  
 "O lord god, my creatour, whiche by thy grace and  
 playsyr hast made me lord and conduytour of this  
 people, wyth ryght good hert I gyue to the, thankynges  
 24 and laude. Thou hast gyuen to me grete puyssaunce  
 sythe they be at my wyll and commaundement."

After that he had sayd thus, he blessyd hym, And in  
 the name of Ihesus he took forth hys waye. And the  
 28 sayd Emperour had in hys companye an hondred thou-  
 sand men wel fyghtyng, And the Admyral had the  
 fyghtars of thyrtene contreyes. the fressh men rode  
 forth: Rycharde of normandye was in the anaunte garde,  
 32 And the Duke Reyner<sup>2</sup> in that other. Anone the  
 tydynges came to thadmyral that galafre was slayn,  
 & that mantryble was taken & dyscomfyted,<sup>3</sup> wherfore  
 he swowned for sorowe, and cryed out, "haroo!" as a

Charles consults  
 as to whom he  
 shall leave in  
 charge of  
 Mantribre. (4875)

By the advice of  
 Richard Howel  
 and Raoul are left  
 there with 5000  
 men. (4881)

Charles, seeing  
 the magnitude of  
 his forces, thanks  
 God. (4907)

He has 100,000  
 men.

Balan is told of  
 the death of  
 Galafre, and the  
 capture of  
 Mantribre. (4923)

<sup>1</sup> i iij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> orig. Reyner.

<sup>3</sup> i iij, bk.

In great grief and  
rage he curses  
Mahoun, (1927)

and smashes his  
image. (1939)

Sortibrant advises  
him to repent and  
humble himself  
before his gods,  
(1943)

and to send out  
spies to see if  
Charles is coming.  
(1951)

Balan is per-  
suaded and  
repents. (1963)

man fro hym self, sayeng: "ha! ha! god mahon! thy  
power is nought. O cursyd god & recreaunte, thou art  
nothyng<sup>e</sup> worth to me! he is a moche fool that trusteth  
in the, whan thou suffrest my men to be slayn, and<sup>e</sup> hast 4  
consented to my dyslionour, as I now wel see, whych  
ouȝtest wel to haue doon the contrarye." Thys sayeng,  
the admyral took a clubbe with his two handes, &  
ranne to mahon & his other goddes, & smote Mahon 8  
soo grete a stroke vpon the heeð, that he fyl down, &  
was al to-broken. yf thadmyral and the other paynys  
were not wel abused, they myght knowe clerely theyr  
Infydelyte and<sup>e</sup> fals creaunce, for to Inuoke the ymages 12  
that can not speke ne gyue comfort, and<sup>e</sup> haue no con-  
solacion. A lytel vnderstandyng and lacke of wytte, &  
also contrarye to nature, for to gyue fayth of helpe to a  
thyng made with the hande of a man. Neuertheles, 16  
Sortybrant of Conymbres, seeyng<sup>e</sup> the desolacyon of  
thadmyral, counceylleð hym, that as moche as he myght,  
to chaustyse hym self of the Iniurye doon to Mahon.  
Thadmyral said to hym: "I may not enelyne to do to 20  
hym obeysaunce, Seeyng<sup>e</sup> that Charles hath wonne by  
his puyssaunce my eyte and stronge tour<sup>1</sup> of mantryble,  
where as I had<sup>e</sup> my laste comforte to kepe me moost  
sure." Sortybrant ansuerd: "Syr admyral, sende forth 24  
an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh  
hyther ageynst you; And<sup>e</sup> yf it be soo, late vs ryde  
ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And<sup>e</sup> yf ye may, late  
hym be taken, and<sup>e</sup> hange hys people, or brenne them, 28  
without any mercy or pyte. And<sup>e</sup> thenne after ye may  
caste out of your tour these glotons that kepe it, and  
smyte of the heeð of Eyerabras, thy sone, that aydeth  
them." Whan the admyral ballant had herde Sorty- 32  
brant, consyderyng<sup>e</sup> hys affectyon, humbly he retorned  
to mahon, purposyng<sup>e</sup> to do as he had<sup>e</sup> sayd.

<sup>1</sup> i iij. back. col. 2.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce were assaylled'  
more strongely than euer they were, And'  
the toure quasi put to therthe, and' recom-  
4 fortod' by the holy relyques, by them  
adoured, and other maters : capitulo x

**S**Ortybrant prayed soo moche thadmyral, & with  
hym the olde kyng Coldroe tempested hym, &  
8 brillant de mommyere, that for thyniurye that he had  
doon to Mahon tofore them al he shold make amendes.  
The admyral beyng content for their <sup>1</sup>affectyon, sware  
that he shold encreace Mahon, and Augment of a thou-  
12 sand weyzt, after their custome, of fyn gold and other  
precyosytees. And anone dyd do sowne trompettes  
and other Instrumentes, at the sowne of whome were  
assembled sarasyns Innunerable, al armed. And the  
16 admyral maad to brynge hys engynes for to throwe  
grete stones at the tour, for to brynge it down, and also  
for to destroye the freysshe men & hys doughter. And  
thus, more feruent than euer he had been, cam for  
20 tassayle the toure, and laye theyr engynes therto ; wyth  
whyeh the paynyns made fyue grete hooles in the  
toure, that thurgh the leste myght passe a carte at his  
ease. whan thys was doon, Olyuer & Rolland, wyth  
24 theyr sheldes tofore them, and theyr swerdes in theyr  
hondes, stode in the wyndowes, and yet they were not  
soo harly emonge them but that they were abasshed,  
not wythstandyng they had good wyll to defende  
28 them. Alway hym that they myght attayne with  
stones or other thynges, they soo hurte hym that he  
dyd them nomore hurt ne damage. This doynge, thad-  
myral cryed : " O my frendes and subgettes, doo your  
32 denoyr to brynge to the erth thys toure ; For yf ye so  
do, ye shal haue my loue eutyerly. And after I shal

Balan humbles  
himself before his  
gods,

and promises  
them gifts. (1065)

He orders batter-  
ing-engines to be  
brought up  
against the tower.  
(1072)

Five great  
breaches are  
made in the wall.  
(1074)

Roland and  
Oliver defend the  
tower well.  
(1081)

Balan threatens his daughter. 1make Florypes the putayne to deye shamefully in a brennyng<sup>t</sup> fyre, for she hath wel deserved<sup>t</sup> it, doyng<sup>t</sup> to me the dyshonour that every man knoweth." ¶ After these wordes the paynims were more feruent than they 4 had ben tofore, & surmounted<sup>t</sup> by strengthe, scaled<sup>t</sup> the toure, and<sup>t</sup> mounted<sup>t</sup> vp, and<sup>t</sup> entred in at holes, in suche wyse that the x barons helde not but þ<sup>r</sup> last stage that was. Rolland seyng<sup>t</sup> thys, sayd<sup>t</sup> to them: 8

The Saracens swarm in at the breaches. 5011, "lordes & brethern! in thouour of god<sup>t</sup> our maker, late vs wyth one courage here vs valyauntly, ellys we shal not passe thys day, but that we shal be surprysed, taken, and<sup>t</sup> defeated." "Brother & felowe," sayd<sup>t</sup> 12 Olyuer, "we been here of vs x, as longe as it shal please our creatour, & we been al good<sup>t</sup> fyghtars. In the name of God<sup>t</sup>, I counceyl that we yssue oute for to assayle our enemyes. I had leuer to dye there withoute, 16 and suffre to be hewen, than to deye here wythin wyth dyshonour." Ogyer the danoys, and the other, sayd<sup>t</sup> semblably. Florypes, seeyng<sup>t</sup> thys, was al abasshed, and<sup>t</sup> demaunded<sup>t</sup> the barons yf they wold goo out for to 20

Oliver proposes a sally. 5020, goo assaylle the paynims, & sayd<sup>t</sup> to them: "ye noble knyghtes of honour & of good<sup>t</sup> partye, I praye to god<sup>t</sup> that at this tyme yeue you grace to doo wel, And I promyse you <sup>2</sup>yf ye put them oute from thys assaulte, I 24 shal shewe to you a thyng wherof ye shal be loyeful."

Floripas encourages them. 5039, wyth tho wordes<sup>3</sup> the barons goo smyte and<sup>t</sup> hewe down the turkes so vygorously, that many of them were dede & hurt whych were in the holes of the walle, & smote 28 them wyth stoones in the tour, in suche wyse that they were caste in to the dyches and drowned. And anone

and they drive the Saracens back, as they had<sup>t</sup> gotten thoo holes, they stoppedit<sup>t</sup> them & faste enclosed<sup>t</sup> them. and after florypes axedit<sup>t</sup> fyrst of naymes 32 duc of bauyere, & of Thyerry duc of Ardyne, and<sup>t</sup> sayd<sup>t</sup>: "Lordes, on a tyme ye promysedit<sup>t</sup> me, and sware, that ye shold not do any thyng ayenst my wyll. I

and stop up the breaches.

<sup>1</sup> i v. col. 2.<sup>2</sup> i v. back.<sup>3</sup> orig. thordes.



wyl shewe to you the crowne of Ihesus, & two of the  
 nayles that he was nayled with to the crosse, whyche I  
 haue long kept." The barons heryng thys, wepte for  
 4 Ioye, & sworn to hyr that they shold do no thyng to  
 hyr, but al loyalte and trouthe. Florypes wente thenne  
 and fette a lytel coffre, moche ryche & fayre, and tofore  
 them she opened it; & assone as the relyques were taken  
 8 & vnwounden, there was seen a grete clerenes and a  
 meruayllous resplendysshour.

Floripas brings  
 out the sacred  
 relics, 5045,

Thenne the barons kneled down to the erthe, de-  
 noutely smytyng them self on their brestes by con-  
 12 trycyon of hert. Duc Naymes <sup>1</sup>of bauyere was the  
 fyrst that kysse<sup>d</sup> them wyth grete reuerence, & the  
 other after, & after came to the wyndowes, For the  
 paynmys were mounted on hye. And assone as they  
 16 sawe them, they tumbled down to þ<sup>e</sup> grounde, dede, & al  
 to-broken. Whan Naymes sawe that, he sayd: "O  
 lord<sup>e</sup> god of glorye, whyche mayst do al thyng, I thanke  
 the, & gyue to the lawde & pray-syng, For now I see  
 20 wel and knowe that these ben the relyques of whome we  
 haue ofte spoken." And Incontynent he took hardynes  
 and courage, and after sayd to hys felawes: "Brethern,  
 now we be recomforted, so that we shal neuer fere ne  
 24 doubte paynmys ne sarasyns." And after, Florypes  
 remyse<sup>d</sup> the relyques in the coffret honestly. Thad-  
 myral sawe the prynces at the wyndowes, & hys dought-  
 er wyth them; & he, ful of a fals enteneyon, escryed<sup>e</sup>  
 28 hyr wyth an hye voys, by cause he wol<sup>d</sup> be vnder-  
 stonden: "O florypes, fayr doughter, I see wel where  
 thou art. A grete fool was thy fader whan he trusted<sup>e</sup>  
 the, & ful of folysshe counceyl was he that put in thy  
 32 hande, by the moyen of thy langage, the fyrst pryson-  
 ers. I haue herde say longe sythe, that a man that  
 trusteth in a woman, of thyng of Importaunce, is a moche  
 fool. but neuertheles thy puterye shal <sup>2</sup>not endure

which the knights  
 kiss with great  
 reverence. 5052

At the sight of  
 the relics the  
 Saracens fall  
 down dead from  
 the walls. 5055.

Balan sees his  
 daughter at a  
 window and  
 abuses and  
 threatens her.  
 5083.

<sup>1</sup> i v, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> i vj.

Floripas threatens  
him with a stick.  
(5003)

The Saracens  
make a furious  
assault and a  
great part of the  
wall is broken  
down. (5101)

The French use  
the Saracen idols  
as missiles. 5113

Balan swoons  
with rage. 5117.

and again abuses  
his gods. 5123

Sortybrant  
reproves him,  
(5127)

longe, as I truste, For I swere to the that I shal departe  
the loue that thou hast wyth the glotons of Fraunce,  
& wythoute pyte I shal doo brenne you al." Florypes  
herde these wordes, & took a baston in her honde, & 4  
made a sygne as though she had menaceð hyr fader;  
wherfore thadmyral, seeyng that, began to sowne to  
gadre hys peple, and comaunded to shote & lose the  
Instrumentes ayenst the toure, in suche wyse that anone 8  
a grete partye of the walle was ouerthrowen to therthe.  
Thenne the barons doubted moche of them vpon the  
walle. And Rolland, Olyuer, and Ogyer went in to a  
chambre, where as were Mahon, Appolyn, Termagaunte, 12  
& Margotte, goddes of the Paynims, whyche were  
moche ryche. And Rolland took Appolyn whyche  
was heuy, and threwe it vpon the Paynims: Olyuer  
lyfte vp termagaunte, & Ogyer Margotte, and smote 16  
wyth them the sarasyns, in suche wyse that them that  
they attayned dyd them neuer hurte after.

Whan thadmyral sawe thus his goddes vytupered  
and throwen, he took suche angre and so grete yre in 20  
hys courage, that for sorowe he tumbled down as a dede  
man to the erthe. Sortybrant, with moche sorowe, took  
hym vp, and many wepte & made grete <sup>1</sup>desolacyon for  
sorowe. and after thadmyral sayd: "lordes & frendes, 24  
he shal euer be my frende & speecyal byloued, þat wyl  
aduenge the shame that these glotons haue doon to my  
goddes." Sortybrant dyd grete payne to recomforte  
hym, sayeng that in short tyme he shold be auenged 28  
on them al, "seen that the toure is broken in moo than  
xv parties." "O Mahon," sayd the admyral, "thou  
hast wel forgotten me; at the moost nede thou fayllest  
me: thou arte now so olde that thou dotest. I haue seen 32  
the day that þou haddest grete pyssaunce." ¶ Sorty-  
brant ansuerd: "Syr, ye haue an euyl custome, whan  
ye speke so euyl ayenst Mahon. Ye knowe wel that

there was neuer borne, ne neuer shal be, so good<sup>t</sup> a god<sup>t</sup> :  
 he gyueth vs plente<sup>1</sup> of whete, of wyn, and<sup>t</sup> of other  
 goodes also ; he shal doo for vs whan he hath bythought  
 4 hym. he is yet euyl contente for the stroke that ye  
 smote hym on the nose. Abyde a lytel tyl he be better  
 aduysed, And the frensshe men shal yelde them vnto  
 you soo that ye shal holde you please<sup>t</sup>.” Vpon these  
 8 wordes Mahon was broughte tofore hym, And a deuyl  
 entred<sup>t</sup> in to hym, whyche sayd<sup>t</sup> in thys manere after  
 that he had adoured<sup>t</sup> hym : “ Admyral, ryeche lord<sup>t</sup>, ne  
 dyscomfort you not : do sowne your trompettes &  
 12 hornes, <sup>2</sup>and assemble your peple, & after assaylle the  
 toure ; and<sup>t</sup> at thys tyme ye shal take the Frensshe  
 men.” wyth these wordes thadmyral was al reioyce<sup>t</sup>,  
 and<sup>t</sup> alle thengynes and<sup>t</sup> Instrumentes he dyd<sup>t</sup> do sette  
 16 ayenst the tour, and threwe stones and<sup>t</sup> maad<sup>t</sup> grete shotte  
 ageynst the toure, whyche was thenne al to-broken, and<sup>t</sup>  
 almoost al ouerthrowen. The peres of Fraunce seyn<sup>t</sup>  
 thys, had<sup>t</sup> grete doubte of daunger, and not wythout  
 20 cause. Neuertheles, Ogyer the danoys sayd<sup>t</sup> to hys  
 felawes : “ O loyal companyons, replenyssed<sup>t</sup> of fy-  
 delyte, For ony payne or doubte of deth emonge vs, late  
 none be founde wyth ony treason, ne suffre to entre in  
 24 to hym ony euyl thought of Infydelyte and<sup>t</sup> cowardyse.  
 ye see now <sup>3</sup>pat the tour gooth to grounde, And almoost  
 these sarasyns be medled<sup>t</sup> wyth vs. But as touchyng<sup>t</sup>  
 to me, I swere by god<sup>t</sup> my maker, that tofore my soule  
 28 shal departe fro my body, yf I haue the puyssaunce to  
 holde in my hande Cortayn my swerde, I shal make so  
 grete a dyscomfyture of these paynyns, that euery man  
 shal menaylle.” With these wordes Rollan<sup>t</sup> byhelde  
 32 durandal ; and<sup>t</sup> Olyuer, with eueryche of the other, by-  
 helde theyr swerdes, & were alle renewed wyth strengthe  
 and<sup>t</sup> courage. And al wyth one wylle goon vpon the  
<sup>3</sup>sarasyns, and<sup>t</sup> there dyd<sup>t</sup> suche dylygence, that alle-

and begs him to  
have patience.

A false devil,  
under the form of  
Mahoun,

urges Balan to  
renew the  
assault,  
promising him  
success. (5110)

Balan is delighted,  
and orders his  
men up again.  
(5117)

The French are  
almost in despair,

but are comforted  
by Ogyer, (5171)

and they drive  
the Saracens  
back again.  
(5189)

<sup>1</sup> orig. plente.

<sup>2</sup> i xj. back.

<sup>3</sup> i vj. back, col. 2.

waye they were lordes of the toure, & made the sara-  
syns theyr enemyes to goo abacke. Florypes, consyder-  
yng<sup>t</sup> theyr affayre, was sorowful that no socours com to  
hem, and<sup>t</sup> also remembryng<sup>t</sup> the menaces of hyr fader 4  
hadmyrall. But Guye of bourgoyn recomforted<sup>t</sup> hyr  
alwaye, in suche wyse, that of al she was contente.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges  
of<sup>1</sup> thoost of charles, and' the admyral also ; 8  
and' how Gauellon bare hym merueyllously,  
which allone was sente to the admyral, and'  
what he dyd' : capitulo x[i]

**T**He Frensshe men beyng<sup>t</sup> in thys contynuel payn 12  
of bataylle for to defende p<sup>r</sup> toure, Duc Naymes of  
bayere went vp on hye, and<sup>t</sup> sawe oute of a wyndowe,  
& sawe bynethe in a valeye the sygne of saynt denys,  
whyche was brought hastely, & after, a grete companye 16  
of men of armes : And<sup>t</sup> thought in hym self that they  
came for to socour and<sup>t</sup> ayde them. and<sup>t</sup> anone sent  
for hys felawes for to come & see them. Assone as  
Florypes vnderstood<sup>t</sup> it, she came to Guy of bourgoyn, 20  
sayeng : " O glorious <sup>2</sup>vyrgyn marie, moder of Ihesus,  
worshypped<sup>t</sup> mote ye be for these tydynges that I haue  
herde ! O noble knyght, guye of bourgoyn, my dere  
loue, approche ye to me yf it playse you, and<sup>t</sup> kysse 24  
me." Of the Ioye of Florypes, were Ioyeful the erles  
and<sup>t</sup> lordes, ye may thynke that they were wel com-  
forted<sup>t</sup> whan they sawe the standard of fraunce, wherin  
was the dragon wel figured<sup>t</sup>. Grete Ioye and grete 28  
consolacion was emonge them, & they had<sup>t</sup> cause, seen  
the daunger wherin they were. Anone a paynym cam  
to thadmyral, & sayd<sup>t</sup> to hym, that Charles wyth an  
hondred thousand men of armes came makynge grete 32  
bryt. The kynge Coldroe counceylled<sup>t</sup> anone that

Naymes from a  
window sees  
Charles and his  
army coming.  
(5207)

Florypes thanks  
God for the news,  
(5223)

and they all  
rejoice.

A messenger  
tells Balan that  
the French army  
is coming. (5231)

<sup>1</sup> orig. yf.

<sup>2</sup> i vij.

every man shold be armed, and that they shold goo mete wyth hym at the fyrst poynte. Hys counceyl was approued by thadmyral and by thother. When-

4 fore anone L thousand turkes were assembled in grete poynte for to kepe the grete vale of Iosue, to thende that he myght not come in to Aygremore. He sends 50,000 men to meet them.

Rolland sawe Rycharde of Normandye wyth hys con-

8 fanon reyseke vp, whyche came al afore: and alle taryed in a medowe for to bayte and refresshe theyr horses, and to tarye there al the nyght, whyche was nyghe. And wythoute making lodgyses or other

12 thyng, they there rested them al nyght, For theyr tentes were lefte at mantryble. On the morne erly, the Emperour dyde arme his peple, & sette them in good araye, and in grete poynte, And after sente for Fyera-

16 bras, and sayd to hym: "Ryght dere frende, thou knowest that I haue doo the be baptysed, wherefore I loue the the better. yf thou myztest pourehae and make that thy fadre be baptysed, and renye Mahon

The French livonaie for the night. 5251)

20 and al hys dyabolike goddes, I shold be wel glad and Ioyous. And I promyse to the, that of al hys goodes I shal not take a peny. And yf he wyl not so do, I promyse that by force I shal fyght ayenst hym; & yf

24 he take harme, wyte it not me, ne come me noo maulgre, for I may not lette it." "Syr Emperour," sayd Fyera-

In the morning Charles tells Fierabras that if Balan will be baptised he shall keep all his kingdom. (5263)

28 bras, "take a messenger, and late hym demaunde hym, yf he wyl soo doo as ye say, and I shal be content. For yf he gaynsaye it I shal neuer praye for hym, ne haue pyte of hym, though I see hym hewen and deye." Hereupon charles demaunded Reyner and rycharde of Normandye, whyche were his nexte counceyllours, and

Fierabras advises Charles to send a messenger to his father. (5275)

32 sayd to them: "Lordes, whome seme you moost propye for to sende on thys message to the Admyrall? By myn aduys, ganellon shold be good therfore, yf he wold, for to recounte & speke hooly thys message. I

Charles proposes to send Ganelon. (5282)

<sup>1</sup> i vij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> i vij. back.

knowe hym for wel suffysaunt, & ye knowe wel that he  
 dyd wel hys deuoyr at the entre of mantryble. yf ye  
 wyl consente, he shal doo the message." Rychard  
 answered, and Reyner also, that he shold doo wel the 4  
 message. The kyng<sup>1</sup> sente for ganellon, and sayd to  
 hym: "My frende, we haue chosen you for to goo say  
 to thadmyral Ballant that he be baptyse<sup>1</sup> & renye  
 mahon, & that he take Ihesu Cryste for hys god, & 8  
 that he byleue in hym, & in hys passyon that he suf-  
 fred for al humayn creatures; & after, that he yelde to  
 me my barons, whyche he holdeth in hys pryson, &  
 also the relyques that longe tyme I haue demaunde<sup>1</sup> of 12  
 hym. & yf he wyl do this, we shal leue to hym hys  
 contreye & hys landes: & yf he wyl doo otherwyse, we  
 shal make to hym mortal warre, and shal take of hym  
 no merex." Ganellon was contente for to goo thyder 16  
 allone, And took & sette on his helme, & mounte<sup>1</sup>  
 vpon his hors, named gascon, and henge on hys necke  
 his shielde, wherein was paynte<sup>1</sup> the lyon, & after went  
 in to the vale of Iosne hastely. and anone he was 20  
 taken of the turkes that kept the passage; but whan  
 they knewe that he was a messenger for to speke to  
 thadmyral, they trouble<sup>1</sup> hym not, but lete hym goo,  
 & he tarye<sup>1</sup> not tyl that he came tofore thabytaeyon of 24  
 thadmyral, & he lente vpon his spere with a knyghtly  
 countenance, & moche resembled a baron of grete  
 valure, for to say wel hys message. whan thadmyral  
 knewe of his comyng, he came to hym, And thenne 28  
 Ganellon spake hardly to hym in this manere: "Sara-  
 syn, take hede & vnderstonde me: I am a messenger of  
 the noble charles, kyng of fraunce & ryght myghty  
 Emperour, & he sendeth the worde by me, that thou 32  
 renye and forsake Mahon & thyn other goddes dya-  
 bolyke, & byleue in Ihesu cryst, the redemptour of al  
 the worlde, whyche took on hym humanyte, and suffred

Richard approves  
 of this,

and Charles sends  
 for Ganellon

and gives him  
 his instructions.  
 (5291)

Ganellon arms  
 himself,  
 and starts. (5307)

He rides up to  
 Balan's tent,  
 (5322)

and delivers his  
 message to the  
 Sultan, (5325)

<sup>1</sup> i vij. back, col. 2.

- deth, cruel & bytter, in the tree of the<sup>1</sup> crosse, for  
to redeme al the worlde. & yf thou so do, thou art  
assured not onely [not] to deye, & also not to lese thy  
4 londe, ne none of thy good, but thou shalt alwaye be  
bylound of hym, & of Fyerabras thy sone. and yf thou  
wylt not accorde herto, & withstande it, knowe for cer-  
tayn, that of Charles thou art deffied, & al thy people.
- 8 & yf thou wylt saue thy self, thynke to flee and wyth-  
drawe the fro this contreye; For yf thou may be taken  
and holden, thou shalt be delyuerd to daungerous deth,  
and alle thy subgettes shal be dysmembred & slayn,
- 12 & after, he shal gyue thy royame and thy rychesses to  
his <sup>2</sup>seruauntes. Therefore aduyse the wel." Whan thad-  
myral had herd hym, he was almoost in a rage of his  
wordes, and by destresse of angre he took a staffe for  
16 to smyte the messenger, and sayd to hym: "Gloton  
payllard! thou art dysmesured in thy langage. by  
mahon, to whome I am yeuen, at this tyme thou hast  
be ouer hardy, & lytel loued the, Charles, whan he sente  
20 the to me. For thou shalt be wel sure that thou shalt  
neuer recomte to hym thy message." Ganelon, seying  
that he was not wel sure wyth them, he took his  
swerde, whyche was heuy & sharpe, & gaf wythal a  
24 stroke to brillant of mommyere in the breste, that he  
ouerthrewe & fyl at the feet of the admyrall, whyche  
seying that, escryed moche strongly tauenge hym.  
Thenne wyth this voys assembled moo than fyfty  
28 thousand turkes, for to take Ganelon, whyche ranne  
after hym thurgh the vale of Iosue; but he escape  
them al, and was not taken. Due Naymes was at a  
wyndowe, and sawe hym chaced, & demaunded Rolland  
32 & Olyuer what he was; & they knewe for certayn that  
he was crysten, and by presumynge made emonge them  
they Iudged that it was Ganelon that had spoken to  
thadmyral. ¶ "Alas!" sayd Rolland, "I praye to

calling on him to  
become Christian  
on pain of death.  
(5337)

Balan, in a rage,  
threatens him  
with a stick.  
(5343)

Ganelon draws  
his sword and  
cuts down  
Brillant. (5353)

Balan calls on  
his men to seize  
Ganelon,  
but he rides off  
and escapes.  
(5369)

The knights in  
the tower  
recognize him.  
(5371)

<sup>1</sup> orig. ithe.

<sup>2</sup> i viij.

Ganelon turns on  
his pursuers,

and slays two of  
them. (5385)

Oliver sees this  
feat,

and wishes he  
were with him.  
(5395)

The Saracens  
pursue Ganelon

till they see the  
army of Charles.

Ihesus our redemour that he graunte <sup>1</sup>hym grace to  
passe wel without daunger. I shal be euyl content yf  
he come not to his good<sup>2</sup> desyre." ¶ The other barons  
sayden semblably, & prayed god to kepe hym fro peryl. 4  
Ganelon ran alwaye forth tyl he came to the toppe of  
a montayne, and there he turned hym ayenst the  
Paynims, & sawe comyng to hym a grete paynym of  
the cyte of Aygremore. and anon he took hys swerde 8  
named murgall, moche trenchaunte, & atteyned the  
paynym vpon the helme, and clefte hym to the breste:  
And after, he slewe Tenebre, whyche was broder of  
kyng Sortybrant. Olyuer sawe al hys feat, and sayd 12  
to Rolland: "Brother, beholde the valyaunce that thys  
baron dooth; I praye god that he conserue hym. And  
wete ye wel that in my hert I loue hym. Saue you &  
Charles, I loue none better. Now wold god that I 16  
were in hys companye, I shold make grete marterdom  
on these Paynims." Neuertheles he was strongely  
chaced of the paynims. But whan they sawe the  
hoost of Charles, they returned aback, and wente & 20  
tolde the affayre to thadmyral, & how Charles had moo  
than an hondred thousand fyghtyng men. wherfore  
they counceylled that euery man shold arme hym, &  
that counceyl was approued. but whan sortybrant 24  
<sup>2</sup>knewe that hys broder was dede, he made to come an  
Innumerable companye of sarasyns, tauenge his deth in  
menacyng to do harm to Charles. Of hys enteneyon  
was moche glad thadmyral, bycause he myght the better 28  
come to hys desyre.

¶ How Charles emperour ordeyned ten  
bataylles, and how they dyd' & were  
recountred' of the puyssaunce of the 32  
admyral, where as themperour dyd' mer-  
uaylles, and' of other maters: capitulo xij

<sup>1</sup> i viij. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> i viij. back.



- W**han Ganellon was comen to kyng<sup>1</sup> Charles,  
 themperour ordeyned x bataylles after that  
 4 Ganellon ha<sup>1</sup> tolde hys message, whyche was suche :  
 “ Syr emperour, I say to you that thadmyral ne fereth  
 you ne your dedes, neyther god ne hys sayntes. I was  
 wel happy that I escape<sup>1</sup>, For I haue been chace<sup>1</sup>  
 8 wyth xx thousand sarasyns. after that thadmyral wold  
 haue had me, & after these wordes, I slewe one of theyr  
 kynges.” wherfore he was praysed of the kyng & other.  
 And anone they sowned<sup>1</sup> hornes and<sup>1</sup> trompettes, & was  
 12 open warre on alle partes in thoost of Charles. Rol-  
 land<sup>1</sup> herde the sowne, and the voys of <sup>1</sup>the frensshe  
 hoost, wherof he and al the barons were al reioyce<sup>1</sup> &  
 made good<sup>1</sup> chyere. whan the ij hoostes recountred, al  
 16 the contrey shone of theyr armes, ther were so many of  
 them. after, as I haue sayd<sup>1</sup> tofore, kyng charles made  
 ten bataylles : In the fyrst, he ordeyned<sup>1</sup> Rychan<sup>1</sup> of  
 Normandy ; Duc Reynier of genes ha<sup>1</sup> the second<sup>1</sup>,  
 20 Ganellon the thyr<sup>1</sup>, Alory the fourth, Geffroy the  
 fyfthe, Machayre the vj, Hardre the seuenth, Amangius  
 the viij, Sampson the ix, And<sup>1</sup> of the tenthe was con-  
 dnytour charles the kyng<sup>1</sup>. & in eche bataylle were x  
 24 thousand<sup>1</sup> men of armes wel fyghtyng atte leste. Whan  
 Ballant the admyral sawe the kyng<sup>1</sup> comyng<sup>1</sup>, he sayd<sup>1</sup>  
 to brullant, “ who shal be the fyrst that shal entre in  
 to bataylle with an hondred<sup>1</sup> thousand<sup>1</sup> paynyms ; ”  
 28 & sayd that yf he took Charles, he shold not slee them  
 ne fyerabras, for he wold after smyte of theyr heedes.  
 & vpon thys poynte the warre was open, & Brullant  
 began to goo a grete bowedraunzt tofore the other, and<sup>1</sup>  
 32 began to crye “ haro ! haro ! where is charles themper-  
 our wyth his euyl chere ? loo ! I come to the ! thou  
 hast enterprysed<sup>1</sup> a grete folye whan thou passest the  
 see, & ouer late thou shalt repente the. On thys day

Ganelon reports  
the result of the  
message to  
Charles, (5439)

who diuides his  
army into 10  
divisions, and  
prepares for  
battle, (5433)

Richard leads the  
vanguard, (5455)

and Charles  
himself the rear.  
(5457)

Balan bids  
Brullant to attack  
the French first  
with 100,000 men.  
(5459)

Brullant rides out  
and challenges  
Charles. (5471)

<sup>1</sup> i viij. back, col. 2.

Charles charges  
at him,

and slays him,  
5485j

and afterwards  
many more of the  
Saracens. (5496)

Tenebres, a  
Saracen king,  
makes great  
havoc amongst  
the French,  
(5523)

but is himself  
slain by Richard.

The French force  
the pass,  
and approach  
Balan's division.  
(5543)

shal be the ende of thy lyf and of thy subgettes lyf.  
And <sup>1</sup> wythoute faulte thou shalte be yolden to thad-  
myral, & alle thy contreye shal be destroyed." Them-  
perour herde wel these wordes; wherfore alle in a fureye **4**  
he lete renne hys hors, & came ageynst the paynym, &  
attayned hym in suche wyse that hys harnoys brake,  
and after, he drewe hys swerde, and neuer lefte hym  
tyl he was dede. fro thens with his spere he came to a **8**  
turke kynge of pyetree, and smote hym in the breste  
that he fyl deed to the erthe. and whan his spere was  
broken, he dyd grete deuoyr with Loyouse hys swerd;  
for hym that he attayned, dyd neuer hurte after. At **12**  
that tyme he bare hym meruayllously, that one of the  
hoostes medled eche wyth other in suche wyse that  
there was neuer seen warre so mortal, for they that  
were lynyng were lette by them that were dede. **16**  
Thenne emonge the paynmys there was a turke, named  
Tenebres, which cam makyng grete bruyt vpon the  
frensshe men, and attayned fyrst the noble Iehan of  
pountayse vpon his shelde, and brake it in pyeces, & **20**  
smote hym thurgh the body that he fyl deed to the  
erthe; and after drewe hys swerde, & put to deth  
huon, and guernyer thaumeyen, and after sayd to the  
frensshe men that on that day Charles and hys sub- **24**  
gettes had loste theyr myght. Rychard of <sup>2</sup> Normandye  
had despyte of hys wordes, & came ageynste hym, &  
attayned hym so daungerously that he brake his haw-  
berke, and brake his shelde in quarters, & so smote **28**  
hym, that he fyl down deed wythout ony more reproch-  
yng & sayeng enyl wordes. & after, by force of  
strengthe they passed the vale of Iosue, & came and  
fonde thadmyral wyth alle hys payssaunce, whyche **32**  
was accompanyed wyth iiij kynges crowned, & wyth  
an CM fyghtyng men, as wel a horsback as a fote.  
Anone a messenger came to the admyral, & tolde hym

<sup>1</sup> k j.

<sup>2</sup> k j, col. 2.

how brullant his brother was dede, and many in hys  
 companye. Thenne he sente for tempest, hys neuewe,  
 & for Sortybrant of conymbres, his moost speycal  
 4 frendes, & said to them: "My barons and trewe  
 frendes, yf euer ye haue loued me, & haue entencion  
 to do me playsyr, Doo so moche that ye fynde charles  
 the kyngt. For I wyl goo to hym, and haue concluded<sup>1</sup>  
 8 in my self to fyght in my persone ayenst hys persone;  
 & sythe I shal deye ones, it suffyseth me that I myght  
 slee hym, & thenne shal I be contente to deye, yf I  
 deye after. For I retche not yf I aduenge me or I  
 12 deye." Sortybrant & many other, consyderyngt thastate  
 of thadmyral, bygomen to wepe for pyte in comfortyngt  
 hym.

Balan determines  
 to seek out and  
 engage Charles in  
 single combat.

¶ How in thys bataylle folowyng', Sortybrant  
 16 was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer,  
 and after how thadmyral dyd' meruaylles  
 and' grete ennoye to the freysshe men:  
 capitulo xiiij

20 **B**Allant thadmyral rode vpon an hors, the beste  
 Brennyng of alle the contreye, ryght wel armed,  
 and it was blacke as a more, & hym self was grete  
 of body, well membreð, & hað hys berde hangyngt to  
 24 the sadel, whyche was whyte as snowe. & after dyd do  
 sowne hys trompettes & hornes tasseuble his hoost, &  
 made the archers to goo byfore, whyche coude wel shiote  
 wyth bowes turquoys, & al furyously that one ayenst  
 28 the other goo shiote, and make mortal warre, so that the  
 shiotte flewe in thayer thyecker than hayl. So moche  
 people was there slayn that the wayes were empossed  
 & lette by dede bodyes. The Duke Reyner passet  
 32 thurgh forth, & the fyrst that he encountred was  
 kyng Sortybrant, & gaf to hym a grete stroke with-  
 out faynyng, that hys shielde auaylled hym not; hys

A general engage-  
 ment ensues,

and the slaughter  
 is immense.  
 (5516)

Reyner attacks  
 and slays  
 Sortibrant.

<sup>1</sup> k j, back.

Balan grieves  
over the death of  
Sortibrant.

He charges into  
the French,

and slays Huon of  
Milan and 20  
others. (5571)

Ganelon and his  
friends make  
great slaughter of  
the Saracens.

Milo's horse is  
killed by Balan,

but he is rescued  
by Ganelon.

hauberk al to-brake, so that he made his spere to plunge  
and bayne in hys body soo depe, that he abode there  
deed<sup>l</sup> lyke a beest; & after, wyth hys swerde made so  
grete murdre & slaughter of the fals turkes, *þat* it was 4  
meruaylle. Anone the admyral knewe the deth of  
Sortybrant, wherof he was almoost oute of hys wytte  
in a rage, and<sup>l</sup> sythe sayd<sup>l</sup>: “O Sortybrant, my special  
frende, I see wel now that I shal be auenged yf I 8  
venge not thy deth.” with thyse wordes he maad<sup>l</sup> his  
hors to renne vpon þ<sup>e</sup> frenssli men so despytously that  
whome he attayned<sup>l</sup> he put to deth, and<sup>l</sup> came to huon  
of myllan, & slewe hym. thenne he dyd<sup>l</sup> grete dom- 12  
mage, and fought that tyme so strengely, that he put to  
deth wel seuen frensshe men & xiiij Normans moche  
valyantly, sayeng<sup>t</sup>: ¶ “O ye vnhappy frensshe men, I  
shal now make you knowe that thadmyral of spayne is 16  
comen. in this day shal thoost of fraunce be destroyed,  
& shal neuer repayre home ageyn in to fraunce. I  
shal lede awaye with me the kynge Charles with his  
florisshe berd, & I shal do hange or brenne hym, & 20  
also with hym, Rolland & Olyuer, & their felowes.” &  
with these wordes the paynems enhardyed<sup>l</sup> them in  
suche wyse *þat* they dyd<sup>l</sup> gretely theyr deuoyr ayenst  
the frensshe men. At this medle the counte ganellon, 24  
haldre, alory, & geffroy daulteuyle, & *þat* lygnage, dyd<sup>l</sup>  
gretely theyr deuoyr and<sup>l</sup> bare them wel. For in a shorte  
space by them were slayn moo than a M paynims.  
Thadmyral, moost valyaunt of the sarasyns, <sup>2</sup>attayned<sup>l</sup> 28  
the counte myllon by hys helme, that almoost he had<sup>l</sup>  
abyden in the place, and with a stroke thadmyral smote  
of hys hors hede that he fyl to the erthe. and<sup>l</sup> after he  
took hym, & layed<sup>l</sup> hym tofore hym, for to haue born 32  
hym awaye, but the lygnage of ganellon saued<sup>l</sup> hym,  
notwythstondyng<sup>t</sup> that many of theym were slayn and<sup>l</sup>  
dede. Neuertheles the frensshe men surmounted the

<sup>1</sup> k j, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> k ij.

paynyns, and that was by the ayde of fyerabras, which  
for loue of Charles dyd fyght, and made grete dys-  
comfyture of the sarasyns. for there he put to deth

4 Tempeste, and the okle Rubyon, and moo than fyfty  
other of these mastyns mysereantes. & he there bare  
hym in suche wyse that there was not one persone that  
durst come tofore hym to resyste hym.

Fierabras slays  
more than 50  
Saracens.

8 ¶ How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in  
the toure came oute whan they sawe the  
hoost, & how thadmyral was taken &  
holden prysonner : capitulo xiiij

12 **T**He paynyns & freusshe men, alwaye perseuer-  
yng in mortal bataylle, coude not make thende,  
eche one of other, For the multytude of the pay-  
nyns was so grete that they myzt not be dyscomfyted.

16 Whan <sup>1</sup>the barons that weie in the tour sawe the fayt,  
& that they that kepte the toure were goon to the  
socours and crye of thadmyral, they sprange out, & eche  
took an hors of them þat were dede, which ranne at al

The French  
knights, seeing  
the battle, sally  
out, and seizing  
each a stray  
horse, (5533)

20 aduenture ; and eche also took his swerde in his hond,  
& sodeynly cam vpon the sarasyns for to passe thurgh  
them to the freusshe hoost, & made so grete bruyt that  
the moost hardyest of the paynyns gaf them waye, &

charge the Sara-  
cens, and force  
their way through  
them, (5542)

24 lete them passe, and in especyal rolland, for where he  
smote with durandal, cam neuer after tofore hym. & at  
thys departyng was derly recomanded guy of bourgoyn  
of florypes, for she had fere of hym. Neuertheles, whan

28 they were assembled wyth the other, wythoute letyng  
them to be knowen, went vpon the sarasyns, & helde  
them soo short that anone they slewe them in suche wyse  
þat the other put them to flyght : for there was neuer

scattering them  
like larks before  
the hawk, (5550)

32 larke fledde more ferfully tofore þ<sup>e</sup> sperhawke than the  
sarasyns fledde tofore rolland. Thadmyral knewe wel

<sup>1</sup> k ij, col. 2.

his destructyon by the comyng<sup>t</sup> of the peres that were  
 in þ<sup>e</sup> toure, & cryed wyth an h[y]e voys : “ malon, my  
 god, to whome I haue gyuen my self, and haue doon to  
 so moche honour, thou hast forgotten<sup>1</sup> me !    Remembre 4  
 me now !    ¶ For and euer I may gete the, I shal bete the  
 bothe flankes,<sup>2</sup> hede & vysage, and also put out thyn eyen,  
 fals recreaunt god that thou art.”    he thus sayeng<sup>t</sup>, he  
 was so pursyewed and smyton that he fyl down vnder 8  
 his hors, and was taken, and not slayn, at the request of  
 his sone fyerabras, to thende that he shold be aduysed  
 to byleue in Ihesu cryst, & in the holy Trynyte, &  
 bycome crysten, & al his contreye.    Thenne the bataylle 12  
 took an ende ; and he that wold not be conuerted was  
 incontynent put to deth.    Somme fledde, and somme  
 were taken.    Thenne after thys the Frensshe men  
 wente & vnarmed them, & Charles sawe there his 16  
 barons whom he desyred so moche to see, & in especial  
 his neuw rolland, & Olyuer, whom he loued so moche,  
 & were so gretly valyaunt.    It can not be sayd no  
 expresse<sup>t</sup> the Loye that was emonge them ; & the con- 20  
 solacyon & reioyeyng<sup>t</sup> of kyng<sup>t</sup> charles was Inestymable.  
 Thenne they recounted alle thynges what were happend  
 to them, & of theyr daungers and Leopardyes whiche  
 they had escaped, & sorowes & lamentacions that they 24  
 had endured, wherfore Charles and many other wept for  
 pyte.    And thys endured many dayes, there where as  
 the hurt men & seek were heeled, & they that were  
 holt passed theyr tyme in deduyte, tryumphe, and 28  
 Loye.

Balan invokes his  
god Mahon (5569)

with threats.

He is unhorsed  
and taken  
prisoner, (5647)

and the battle  
ends. (5681)

There is great  
rejoicing over the  
safety of the  
knights. (5670)

The army rests  
some days to  
recruit their  
strength.

<sup>3</sup> ¶ How ballant, thadmyrall, for ony admony-  
 cyon that was shewed to hym, wold not  
 be baptysed, and how after, guy of bour- 32  
 goyn espoused florypes, & was crowned

<sup>1</sup> *orig.* forygoten.

<sup>2</sup> k ij, back.

<sup>3</sup> k ij, back, col. 2.

kyng, and she queene of that contreye :  
capitulo XV

- 4 **W** Han charles had al appeased, he took ballant Charles sends for Balan, (5719)  
the admyral tofore hys noblesse, & sayd to  
hym in this maner: "ballant, al creatures  
resonable owen to gyue synguler honour & pertyculer  
loue to hym that hath gyuen to them beyng, knowleche,  
8 & lyf, & it is wel requesyte & nedeful that he haue  
honour and reuerence that hath made heuen and erthe,  
& al that therein enhabyteth. Wherfore by good ryght  
he is superyour and abouen al; And a grete abusyon and, declaring the evil and folly of idolatry,  
12 is compryse in hym which gyueth fayth and hope  
in that whyche he hath made wyth hys hondes, & of  
mater dede, Insensyble, and that hath neyther reson  
ne soule, as thy goddes dyabolyke, whyche may not  
16 ne can gyue consolacyon to theyr subgettes. Wher-  
fore I warne the for the helthe of thy soule, and for the  
preseryng of thy body & of thy goodes, that thou  
take awaye alle these Iniquytees and peruerse affectyons,  
20 & byleue in the holy Trynyte, fader, sone, <sup>1</sup>and holy  
ghoost, one onely god almyghty; and byleue that the  
sone of god, for to repayre thoffence of our formest fader  
adam, descended in to thys worlde, and took humanyte  
24 in the wombe of the blessed vyrgyn marie, whyche was  
al pure and wythoute spotte. And bylene in the  
artycles of the fayth, and obeye and kepe hys comande-  
mentes, which he hath gyuen to vs for our helth. and  
28 byleue how he was taken of the Iewes, and by enuy  
hanged on the crosse for to redeme vs fro the paynes  
of helle. Bylene hys resurrexyon and asceneyon in hys  
body gloryfied, and the other thynges, as the holy  
32 baptesme whyche he hath establysshed, wyth the other  
sacramentes. & yf thou wylt thus byleue thou shalt  
be saued, & thou shalt neyther lose body ne goodes." and says that if he will be converted, nothing shall be taken from him. (5722)

<sup>1</sup> k iij.

Balan swears he  
will never forsake  
Mahon. (5749)

Charles threatens  
him with death.  
(5756)

Fierabras inter-  
cedes for his  
father, who  
agrees to be  
baptised. (5783)

The font is pre-  
pared. (5789)

but Balan spits in  
it, and nearly  
kills the bishop,  
(5809)

who is saved by  
Ogier.

Fierabras again  
intercedes for  
Balan. (5813)

but Floripas urges  
Charles to put  
him to death at  
once. (5849)

Thadmyral answerd that he wold no thyng do so, and  
sware that for deth ne for lyf he wold not leue  
Mahon. Themperour holdyng a naked swerd, sayd to  
hym, that yf he forsoke not Mahon he shold do put 4  
hym to deth. Fyerabras, seying thys, kneled down to  
cherthe, & prayed hys fader to do as the emperour had  
sayd. Thadmyral fered the deth, & sayd that he was  
contente that the fonte shold be blessed. Charles was 8  
glad, and dyd do make redy a fonte wyth <sup>1</sup> fayr water in  
a fayr vessel; and the bysshop wyth other mynystres of  
the chyrche dyd halowe the fonte, and made alle redy.  
& after, whan thadmyral was vneladde, the bysshop 12  
demaundyd hym, sayeng: "Syr ballaut, forsake ye  
mahon, and crye ye mercy to god of heuen for your  
trespaces? and bylene ye in Ihesu cryst, the sone of  
the vyrgyn marye?" whan thadmyral vnderstode these 16  
wordes, al hys body began to tremble. than, in despyte of  
Ihesus, he spytte in the fonte, and caught the bysshoop,  
& wold haue drowned hym in the fonte, and had  
plonged hym therin, ne had not Ogier haue been, 20  
whyche letted hym, & yet notwythstondyng, he gaf a  
grete stroke to thadmyral, that the blood came oute of  
hys mouthe habondantly. Of thys were al abashed  
that were present; and thenne the kyng sayd to 24  
Fyerabras: "ye be my speeyal frende, Ye see that your  
fader wyl neuer be crystened, And also the oultrage that  
he hath doon to the fonte, it can not be excused but  
that he must be dede and dysmembred." 28

¶ Fyerabras requyred hym yet of a lytel pacyence,  
and yf he wold not amende hym, that thenne he shold  
doo hys wylle.

¶ Florypes, the doughter of the Admyrall, seeyng 32  
thys, sayd:

¶ "O Syr Emperour, wherfore <sup>2</sup>delaye ye so moche  
to put thys deuyll to deth? I reche not though

<sup>1</sup> k iij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> k iij, back.



he be put to deth, so that I onely may haue guye  
of bourgoyne to myn husbond, whom I haue so moche  
desyred." Fyerabras answerd: "fayr suster, ye haue  
4 grete wronge. For I ensure you, and swere by god  
whiche hath made me, that I wold that I had lost  
two of my membres, on the condycyon that he were a  
good cristen man, & were baptyse<sup>d</sup> and bylene<sup>d</sup> in  
8 Ihesu Cryst. ye wote wel that he is our fader whiche  
hath engendred vs; we ought to honour hym, and to  
loue hys helth. ye are wel obstynat whan ye haue of  
hym noo pyte." And after in wepyng<sup>t</sup> say<sup>d</sup> to his  
12 fader: "O moost dier fader, I praye you to be better  
aduysed, and byleue in hym that hath fourmed<sup>d</sup> you  
to hys ymage, whyche is Ihesus, god souerayn, lyke as  
themperour hath say<sup>d</sup>; and leue mahon, which hath  
16 neither wytte ne reason, ne noo thyng<sup>t</sup> is but gold &  
stones, wherof he is composed. yf ye thus do, ye shal  
do to vs grete Ioye, & of your enemyes ye shal make  
frendes."

Fierabras re-  
proves her for her  
unfilial conduct,  
(5823)

and implores his  
father to consent  
to be a Christian.  
(5823)

20 Ballant ansuerd: "fool & glouton that thou art,  
speke nomore to me therof, thou art al oute of reson!  
I shal neuer byleue in hym that deyed V. C. yere a-goon,  
& acursed be he that putteth in hys byleue that he is  
24 arysen fro deth<sup>1</sup> to lyf. by mahon, my god, yf I were  
on my hors back, or I were taken, I shold angre charles,  
that fool." whan fyerabras had al vnderstonden hym,  
he said to charles that he shold do wyth hym hys  
28 playsyr, "For by good<sup>t</sup> ryght he ought to deye." Anon  
themperour demanded who wold<sup>t</sup> slee ballant, the vn-  
mesurable felon. Thenne Ogier was present which  
hated hym in his hert, & forthwyth he smote of hys  
32 hee<sup>d</sup>, & Fyerabras pardoned hym gladly. Thenne  
after this, florypes say<sup>d</sup> to Rollan<sup>d</sup> that he shold  
accomplysshe his promesses by-twene hyr and guy of  
bourgoyn. rolland ansuerd: "ye say trouth," and

Balan calls him a  
fool, and declares  
he will never do  
so. (5813)

Charles asks who  
will kill the  
Sowdan. (5839)

Ogier volunteers,  
and smites off his  
head. (5865)

<sup>1</sup> k iij, back, col. 2.

Roland reminds  
Guy of his promise  
to marry Floripas.  
(5871)

Guy says he is  
quite ready. (5875)

Floripas is  
stripped to be  
baptised. (5879)

All are struck by  
her exceeding  
beauty,

and especially  
Charles. (5889)

She is baptised,

but her name is  
not changed.  
Guy and Floripas  
are married,

and crowned king  
and queen of  
Spain. (5905)

after sayd to gye: ¶ “Syr, ye remembre wel what  
wordes and loue hath been bytwene you & the  
curtoys Florypes: kepe your trouth and promesse to  
hyr.” Guy ansuerd that he was redy to do al that 4  
themperour wold haue hym to doo. Charles was  
contente. Thenne anone afore theym alle she was  
despoyled, and vncled hyr for to be baptyse. She  
beyng there al naked, shewed hyr beaute, whyche was 8  
ryght whyte and wel forme d, so playsaunt and amerouse  
for the formosyte of hyr persone, that euery man  
merueylled. ¶ For she had hyr eyen as clere as two  
sterres, a fayre forhede and large, hyr nose ryght wel 12  
stondyng in <sup>1</sup>the myddes of the vysage; hyr chekes  
were reed & whyt medled, hyr browes compacel as it  
had been a lytel shadowe to the colour of the vysage;  
hyr heyr shynnyng as golde, & that in soo good an ordre 16  
acemmyled that it henge bynethe hyr <sup>2</sup>knees; hyr mouth  
was wel composed with an attemperat roundenes, a  
smal longe necke, and hyr sholdres fayr & wel syttyng,  
& ij pappes tofore, smale, rounde, & somewhat enhaunced 20  
lyke ij rounde apples. And so wel was she made, and  
so amerouse, that she smote the hertes of many, and  
enflammed theyr enteneyon wyth concupyscence, and  
specyally of charles the Emperour, how wel that he was 24  
unneyen & olde; and in the fonte whyche was ordeyned  
for the Admyral hyr fader, she was baptyse. And  
charles & Duc thyery of ardayne were her godfaders,  
wythout chaunchyng hyr name. And anone after, whan 28  
she was honourably cladde, the bysshop wedded them,  
& after, themperour comanded to brynge forth the crowne  
of ballant, and crowned wyth-al guy of bourgoyn and  
Florypes. And the bysshop sacred and blessed them. 32  
And so tho said guy was kyng of that contreye, & gaf  
a partye to Fyerabras, by condycion, that yf Fyerabras  
wold haue it, he shold holde it of gye, and all <sup>3</sup>that

<sup>1</sup> k iij.

<sup>2</sup> orig. knees.

<sup>3</sup> k iij, col. 2.

1<sup>e</sup>uer guye shold<sup>t</sup> haue, he shold<sup>t</sup> holde it of charles.

After thys, the feest of the weddyng<sup>t</sup> and<sup>t</sup> espousaylles The wedding festivities last 8 days. (5913)  
endured<sup>t</sup> viij dayes. And charles abode there two

4 monethes and two dayes, tyl that the contreye was wel assured<sup>t</sup>.

¶ How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to  
themperour, and how they were proued'  
8 by myracle, & of the retournyng' of  
Charles, and of the ende of thys book.  
[capitulo xvj]

12 Charles dyd suche dylygence in aygremore and<sup>t</sup> in  
the contreye adiacent, that he that wold<sup>t</sup> not be  
baptysed was put to deth, and<sup>t</sup> so serched<sup>t</sup> oueral.

And on a sonday after masse he sente for florypes, and  
sayd<sup>t</sup> to hyr: "fayr doughter, ye knowe how I haue

16 crowned<sup>t</sup> you and<sup>t</sup> maad<sup>t</sup> you quene of thys contree. I haue  
accomplysshed<sup>t</sup> your desyre as to guye of bourgoyn, Charles reminds Floripas of all he had done for her, (5933)

your husbond<sup>t</sup>, And more ouer ye be baptysed<sup>t</sup>, and in  
waye of sauacyon, and ye haue one of the valyauntest

20 body that is from hens in to Affryque. ¶ And he  
and<sup>t</sup> fyerabras your broder shal haue thys regyon, And<sup>t</sup>

I shal lene with hym xx M of my subgetes, to the  
ende that the paynyns be alwaye in drede; but ye

24 haue not yet shewed<sup>2</sup> to me nothyng<sup>t</sup> of the holy  
reliques that ye kepe." Florypes answerd<sup>t</sup>: "Syr  
emperour, they shal be redy whan it pleseth you," and

thenne she brougt forth the chest in whyche they were

28 honestly. Floripas brings him the coffer containing them, (5936)

¶ Themperour kneled<sup>t</sup> down on bothe hys knees, and<sup>t</sup>  
enelyned bothe wyth hert & body, and bad the bysshop

to opene it, & shewe them, and so he dyd<sup>t</sup>. And fyrst  
32 he shewed<sup>t</sup> the precyous crowne with whyche Ihesu

Cryst was crowned<sup>t</sup> wyth, whyche was of prykyng

which Turpin reverently opens.

<sup>1</sup> orig. ener.

<sup>2</sup> k iiij, back.

The bishop takes out the holy crown of thorns, (5050)

which remains unsupported in the air,

emitting a delightful odour. (5951)

The other relics are proved in the same way.

Charles thanks God for his mercies to him.

Turpin blesses the army with relics, and replaces them in the coffer.

Charles's glove, in which is a small piece of relic,

thornes & of Ionques of the see. and wyth grete deuocyon it was shewed & adoured. And many there wepte & wayled the deth of our lord Ihesu Cryst, and were in grete deuocyon & contemplacyon. The bysshop, 4 which was deuoute & wyse, wold preue it, And lyfte it vp on hye in the ayer, & wythdrew hys hond, and the crowne abode by itself in the ayer. & thenne the bysshop certefyed to the <sup>1</sup>people that was present, that it was the crowne of Ihesu cryst, which he had on his hede in the tyme of his passyon. Thenne euery man honoured it deuoutely; & it had soo grete an odour that eueryche meruaylled. and after, the bysshop took 12 the naylles by whyche god had hys handes<sup>2</sup> & feet perced, and preued them as he had proued the crowne tofore, and semblably they abode <sup>3</sup>in the ayer myraculously. And Charles, seynge al this, thanked humbly 16 God in sayenge: ¶ "O lord god eternal, whyche hast gyuen to me grace that I haue surmounted myn enemyes Infydels, and hast put & sette me in the waye, and gyuen conduyte to fynde your relyques whyche I 20 haue so longe desyred, I humbly rendre and gyue to you thanks and praysynge. For now my contrey may wel say that it shal be perpetuel honour to hit to possede and haue thys precious tresour, whan it shal be 24 conteyned therein." The bysshop blessyd alle the people there in makynge the sygne of the crosse with the said relyques, & after he sette them deuoutely ageyn in their places. And the emperour dyd do sette them 28 on a ryche cloth of golde deuoutely. And whan they were theron, the remenaunt that abode of them as smale pyeres, he took them deuoutely and put them in hys gloue; and after, he beyng in purpoos to retorne in to 32 hys contreye, he threwe the gloue to a knyght, but the knyght took none hede & took it not; & whan Charles was a litel withdrawen he took hede of hys gloue, &

<sup>1</sup> orig. peyle.

<sup>2</sup> orig. handes.

<sup>3</sup> k iij, back, col. 2.

retorned<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> sawe hys gloue,—in whyche the said smale  
 pyeces of the sayd<sup>3</sup> relyques were,—abode hangyng<sup>4</sup> in  
 thayer without susteynyng of ony thyng. Thenne  
 4<sup>1</sup> was this myracle seen euidently, and<sup>2</sup> al thys was  
 shewed to the peple, For it abode in that maner whyles  
 they myght haue goon half a leghe. And by this they  
 were al reconfermed to say that there was none abusyon  
 8 in byleuyng<sup>5</sup> & adouryng the sayd<sup>6</sup> relyques. And these  
 thynges tofore writon in this second book ben vnder-  
 stonden in the best partye & sygnyfycacion that I can  
 or wold<sup>7</sup> say, And<sup>8</sup> I haue not sayd<sup>9</sup> ony thyng but that  
 12 I haue been wel enformed<sup>10</sup> by writyng<sup>11</sup>. And as for the  
 book ensuyng, it shal make mencion of somme bataylles,  
 and of the ende of the barons of fraunce, of whome I  
 haue tofore spoken al alonge.

16 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book, whyche con-  
 teyneth two partyes, by the chapytres  
 folowyng declared<sup>12</sup>.

20 ¶ The fyrst partye of the thyrde book con-  
 teyneth xiiij chapytres, and speketh of the  
 warres made in spayne, and<sup>13</sup> of two mer-  
 nayllous geauntes.

24 ¶ How Saynt Iames appyered<sup>14</sup> to Charles,  
 and how, by the moyen and<sup>15</sup> the conduyte  
 of the sterres, he went in to galyce, &  
 what cytees he subdued : ca. j

28<sup>16</sup> Charles, the noble Emperour, after he had taken  
 moche payne for to mayntene the name of god<sup>17</sup>  
 for tenhaunce the crysten fayth, and to brynge al  
 the world<sup>18</sup> in one trewe fayth and<sup>19</sup> bylene, & that he  
 had<sup>20</sup> goten many contrees, he purposed neuer more to

remains miracu-  
 lously suspended  
 in the air

for an hour. (6002)

The contents of  
 the third book.

Charles wishes  
 after all his  
 labours to rest  
 from fighting,

<sup>1</sup> k v.

<sup>2</sup> k v. col 2.

and to devote  
himself to  
religion;

but in a vision he  
sees a line of  
stars,

pointing to  
Galicia.

A man appears to  
him,

who declares he  
is St. James,  
the Apostle of  
Galicia,

and reproaches  
him for not  
recovering that  
country from the  
Saracens,

fyght ne to make bataylle, but to reste & lede forth a  
contemplatyf lyf, in thankynge his maker of þ<sup>e</sup> grace  
that he had gyuen to hym in surmountynge hys enemyes.  
Neuertheles on a nyght it happed hym that he byhelde 4  
the heuen, & sawe a quantyte of sterres in ordre tendynge  
alle the nyght one waye and one path. And they  
began at the see of fryselond in passynge bytwene  
alemayn and ytalye, bytwene Fraunce and guyanne, 8  
And passed ryght the sayde sterres by gascoyne, basele,  
Nauarre, and espayne, whyche contrees he had by hys  
puyssaunce and contynuel payne conquerd and maad  
crysten. And after, the ende of the sayde sterres thus 12  
goynge in ordre, cam vnto galyce, where-as the body of  
the holy appostle was, he nat knowynge the propre  
place. Euery nyght charles byhelde the waye of the  
sayde sterres, and thought moche contynuelly what thys 16  
myght be, & that it was not wythoute cause. ¶ In  
one nyght emonge the other that <sup>1</sup>charles thought on  
thys waye, a man appyered to hym in vysyon, whyche  
was so fayr, so playsaunte, and so shynynge, that it was 20  
meruaylle; whyche sayde to hym: "what doost thou,  
my fayre sone?" Charles, beyng al rauysshed, answerd:  
"who arte thou, fayr syr?" That other answerd: "I  
am Iames, the appostle of Ihesu Cryst, the sone of 24  
Zebedee, and propre broder of saynt Iohan the euan-  
gelyst, & am he whom god chaas to preche the crysten  
fayth and hys doctryne in the londe of galyce and of  
galylee, by hys holy grace, and he whom herode dyde 28  
put to deth by swerde; and my body abyded emonge  
the sarasyns, whyche haue entreated it vylaynly, &  
lyeth in a place whyche is not knowen. But I mer-  
ueylle that thou hast not conquerd my londe, Seen and 32  
consyderyd that thou hast conquerd so many regyones,  
townes, & cytees in the worlde, wherfore I do the to  
wete, that lyke as god hath chosen the, and made the

<sup>1</sup> k v, back.

- superyor in worldly puyssaunce aboue al other kynges  
 & worldly prynees, in lyke wyse emong al them that  
 lyuen thou art chosen of god, after the conduyte of  
 4 the sterres, to delyuer my londe fro the hande of the  
 mescreaunt sarasyns and enemyes of crystendom. ¶ And  
 to thende that thou sholdest knowe in to what <sup>1</sup>place  
 thou sholdest goo, thou hast seen on the heuen the  
 8 sterres by dyuyne magnyfyceence. And for to obteyne  
 the more Ioye & gretter glorye in heuen, by haultayn  
 and grete puyssaunce, thou shalt surmounte thyn ene-  
 myes, & in that same place thou sha[<sup>1</sup>]t make and doo  
 12 edefye a chyrche in my name, to the whiche shal come  
 the crysten peple of al regyons, for to gete helthe &  
 pardon of their synnes. After that thou shalt haue  
 vysited my sepulture, and have made the waye sure, and  
 16 ordeyned crysten men for to kepe and conserue the  
 place, it shal be a memoyre perpetuell." Thus in thys  
 maner appyered thre tymes saynt Iames to the emperour  
 Charles. After these vysyons and certyfycacyons of  
 20 god, he called and assembled hys subgettes, whome he  
 dyd do put a grete multytude in good poynte, & after  
 took hys waye & drewe toward the contre where the  
 sterres had shewed the waye aforesayd, and came fyrst  
 24 in to spayne: and the fyrst cyte that was rebelle to hym  
 was panpyloune, whyche was ryght stronge of murayl  
 and towres, & garnysshed wyth sarasyns. and he  
 abode tofore it thre monethes, or he coude fynde maner  
 28 to confounde it. Thenne Charles knewe not what to  
 do, but to praye god and saynt Iames, for whom he  
 went, <sup>2</sup>that in the vertu of hys name he myght take  
 that cyte, and sayd in thys manere: "Fayr lord god,  
 32 my maker, helpe me that am comen in to thys contree  
 for to enhaunce the crysten fayth, for to establysshe  
 and mayntene thyn holy name. And also thou holy  
 saynt Iames, by the reuelacyon of whome I am in thys

as God wishes  
him.

He promises  
him success,  
and bids him raise  
a church to his  
name,

as a perpetual  
memorial.

After this vision  
had appeared  
thrice,

Charles starts  
with his army for  
Galicia.

He besieges Pam-  
peluna in vain for  
three months,

and then invokes  
in prayer the help  
of St. James.

<sup>1</sup> k v, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> k vj.

Tourneye, I requyre the that I may subdewe thys cytee, & entre therin, for to shewe the mysbyleyng<sup>1</sup> peple the cause of theyr errour, to thende that this begynnyng may the better determyne the ende of myn enteneyon." 4

Immediately after his prayer the walls of the city fall down.

Assone as Charles had<sup>t</sup> fynysshed<sup>t</sup> his oryson, the walles of the cyte, whyche were of marble merueillously strong, ouerthrew to the erthe, & fyl alle in pyeces; and<sup>t</sup> after, charles and his hoost entred<sup>t</sup> in to the cyte; 8 & he that wold<sup>t</sup> be baptyse<sup>t</sup> & bylene in god<sup>t</sup> wythoute fyctyon, was saued<sup>t</sup> and put a-parte, and who sayd<sup>t</sup> the contrarye, was forthwyth put to deth. Al the people of that contre, whan they knewe of these tydynges & 12 meruayllous operacyons of this cyte, torned<sup>t</sup> in to Ruynie at the symple postulaeyon of charles, without contra-dyctyon came and<sup>t</sup> yeldest<sup>t</sup> them to the mercy of kyng<sup>t</sup> charles. And<sup>t</sup> thus many were baptyse<sup>t</sup>, and chyrches 16 were ordeyned<sup>t</sup>, and<sup>t</sup> al the contreye reducd<sup>t</sup> to certeyn trybute vnder the fydelyte of the emperour charles, and<sup>t</sup> brought theyr trybutes fro the cytees wyth-oute any other gaynsayeng in sygne of seynourye. 20

All the country yields to Charles, who causes the people to be baptised, and builds churches.

¶ Of the cytees gotten in espayne by charles,  
& how somme were by hym destroyed'.  
[capitulo ij.]

Charles arrives at the tomb of St. James,

After that charles had<sup>t</sup> the domynacyon quasi in al 24  
Espayne, he came to the sepulture of Saynt Iames, where he dyd<sup>t</sup> hys deuocyon, and<sup>t</sup> made deuoutely hys prayers; & after came to a place in þ<sup>e</sup> lond which was so ferre, that he myght goo no ferther, and<sup>t</sup> there fyxed<sup>t</sup> 28  
& pyght hys spere, and that place was called<sup>t</sup> petronium; & thanked<sup>t</sup> god and saynt Iames, that by theyr suffraunze he was comen so ferre wythoute any contra-dyctyon surely vnto suche place that he myght passe 32  
no ferther. And<sup>t</sup> in that londe who that wold<sup>t</sup> byleue

at a place called Petronium.

<sup>1</sup> k vj, col. 2.



in god, tharchebysshop Turpyn baptysed them; & who  
 that wold not, he was slayn, or put in pryson. And after  
 Charles wente from one see to that other, and thenne he  
 4 gate in galyce xiiij cytees, emonge whome compostelle  
 was thenne the leste. In espayne he had xvj grete  
 townes & stronge, emonge whome <sup>1</sup>was onsea, in which  
 were wont to be x stronge toures, & a town named  
 8 petrosse, in whyche was made the fynest syluer that  
 had thenne cours. Also another cyte named attentyua,  
 where as the body of saynt Torquete rested, whyche was  
 dyseuple of saynt Iames, and there vpon the sepulture  
 12 was an olyue tree, [whyche dyd] florysshe & bere rype  
 fruyt a certayn day of may euery yere withoute faylling.

He captures 13  
 cities in Galicia,  
 and 16 in Spain,

Alle the contreye of spayne that tyme was subgette  
 to charles, That is to wete, the londe of alandaluf, the  
 16 londe of perdoures, the londe of castellans, the londe of  
 maures, The londe of portyngale, the londe of sarasyns,  
 the londe of nanarre, the londe of Alemans, The londe  
 of byscoys, the londe of baseles, the londe of palargyens,  
 20 and somme of theyr cytees taken by warre, subtyl and  
 mortal, And somme wythoute warre. he coude not  
 wyne the grete towne of Lucerne, tyl at the laste he  
 layed syege tofore it by the space of foure monethes.

the whole of  
 which was subject  
 to him.

24 and it stode in a grene valeye. And after, whan he saw  
 that they wold not yelde them, & that he coude not  
 wyne them, he made his prayer vnto god, and to  
 saynt Iames, that he myght be vyctorious, seen that he  
 28 had nomore to termyne in that contreye, but that cyte  
 onely. his oryson was herde, soo that <sup>2</sup>the walles fyl  
 down to the erthe, and was put to destructyon in suche  
 wyse, þat neuer man dwelled therein after, and after it

He besieges  
 Lucerne for 4  
 months,

but in vain,

and then prays to  
 St. James,

when the walls  
 fall down, and  
 the city is taken,

32 sanke, and therein was an abyssme or swolowe of water,  
 In whyche were founden after, fysshes alle blacke.  
 Emonge the other cytees that he took, there were iiij  
 that dyd hym moche payne, or he myght gete them, &

and turned into a  
 lake containing  
 black fishes.

<sup>1</sup> k vj, back.

<sup>2</sup> k vj, back, col. 2.

therefore he gaf them the maladyctyon of god, and they were curse, in suche wyse that vnto thys day there is in them none habytacion; & the sayd cytees been name, lucerne, ventose, caperee, & adame. 4

¶ Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte, whyche coude not be smyton down, and of the condycyons and' sygnes therof: ca. iij 8

Charles destroys  
all the idols;

but at Salancadys  
was a great idol,

kept so by devils  
that none could  
destroy it,

and which no  
Christian dare  
approach.

It stood on a  
large stone,  
richly carved,

When Charles had doon in spayne & other places, wyth the Inhabytauntes of it at hys wylle, Alle thydolles and' other symlaeres that he fonde, he dyd do destroye and put to confusyon. But in the londe of 12 Alandaluf, in a cyte called Salancadys, in arabyque, was<sup>1</sup> the place of a grete god, as the sarasyns sayd. That ydolle was made of the honde of Machomme in the tyme that he lyned, & was named Mahomet<sup>2</sup> in 16 thonour of hym: and by arte magyke and dyabolyke he closed therin a legyon of deuylles, for to kepe it and make sygnes for to abuse the peple. and thys ydolle was kepte so by deuylles, that noo persone luyng coude by 20 strengthe destroye it, ne put it down. In suche wyse that yf ony crysten man came nyghe for to see it, or to coniure it, or to destroye, Assone as he began to coniure and preche, anon he was perysshed & destroyed. And 24 the sarasyns that came for to preche, adoure, make sacrefyse, or doo obeyssaunce therto, were wythout peryl; and yf by aduenture, a hyrde fleyng came & rested vpon it, Incontynent it was deed. The stone 28 vpon whyche thydolle was sette was meruayllously made. It was a stone of the see, wrought of sarasyns, and grauen subtylly of grete and ryeche facyon, the whyche was enhaunced vpryght, not without grete 32 crafte & conyng. toward the erth it was meruayllously

<sup>1</sup> orig. and was.

<sup>2</sup> k vij.

- grete, & alway vpward it was lasse ; and that stone was  
 so hye as a crowe myght flee : vpon whyche stone was  
 thydolle sette, whyche was of fyn yuorve, after thas- and was of fine  
ivory,  
 4 semblaunce of a man stondyng<sup>i</sup> vpryght on his feet, &  
 had hys face turned to the south, & helde in his ryght and held in his  
hand a key,  
 honde a grete keye, & the sarasyns were certefyed<sup>1</sup> for  
 trouthe that whan a kyng<sup>i</sup> of fraunce shold be borne,  
 8 & in strengthe to subdue the contreye of spayne, and  
 brynge it in to crysten fayth, the ymage shold lete falle which was to fall  
when a king  
should come to  
subdue the  
country.  
 the keye, which shold be a sygne p<sup>r</sup> the kyng of  
 fraunce shold conquere them. So the<sup>me</sup> in the tyme  
 12 that the noble kyng<sup>i</sup> charles regned in spayne, for to  
 brynge it to the crysten faith, the ydolle lete the keye On the approach  
of Charles the  
key falls.  
 falle down to the grounde. And whan the sarasyns  
 sawe that, They hydde theyr tresours, as golde, syluer,  
 16 and precyous stooncs, in therth, by cause the crysten  
 men shold no thyng fynde therof, & they al wente in  
 to another regyon, and durst not abyde the comyng of  
 the kyng<sup>i</sup>.

20 ¶ Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in galyce,  
 and of dyuers other whyche Kyng' Charles  
 founded : capitulo iiij

- 24 **C**harles beyng in galyce had Innumerable quantyte Charles, having  
an immense  
quantity of gold  
and silver,  
 of golde, of syluer, and of precyous stones, of many  
 kynges, prynces, and other lordes, and of trybutes of  
 cytees that was gyuen to hym as lord.

¶ Also he had moche of the tresour that he conquerd  
 28 of the townes and contreyes of Spayne <sup>2</sup>aforesayd.  
 Thenne he, seying the grete habundaunce of good, dyd  
 do compose and make a chirche of Saynt Iames, in the builds a church  
to St. James,  
 place where-as he had founde the body of hym. and  
 32 he abode there the space of thre yere wythout departyng,  
 and in that same place he ordeyned a bysshop, and and ordains a  
bishop

<sup>1</sup> k vij, col. 2.<sup>2</sup> k vij, back.

and three canons.

He endows the church,

and supplies vestments and ornaments.

Another church he builds at Acon to Our Lady,

and four to St. James,

besides abbeyes and monasteries.

founded there chanonnes regular, vnder the rule of saynt Ysodore the confessor; & bought & ordeyned for them rentes & trybutes suffyceent, and gaf to them singuler seynourye. He furnysshed the chyrche wyth 4 belles, vessellys of golde and syluer, adournements of preeyous clothes, & al thynges necessarye & apperteynyng in a chyrche pontyfical. also of bokes, vestymentes, chalyces, & other holy escriptures. And of 8 the resydue of gold and syluer, that he brought oute of spayne, he dyd doo edefye these chyrches folowyng.

¶ Fyrst, at Acon, in almayne, where as he is buryed, he dyd doo make a chyrche of our lady; and though it 12 be lytel, yet is it moche ryche made. The chyrche of Saynt Iames in the toun of vyterbe; also the chyrche of saynt Iames in the cytee of Tholouse: The chyrche of Saynt Iames in gascoyne; also the chyrche of saynt 16 Iames in parys, bytwene the sayne & the mounste of martres. & aboue the chyrches aforesayd, he founded, rented, & releued many & dyuers chyrches, monasteryes, & other abbeyes in the world, in many and dyuers 20 places.

¶ How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne & put to deth the crysten people, Charles recouerd' it, and' other 24 maters: capitulo v

After Charles's return to France,

Aigolant, an African giant, reconquers Spain,

and puts the Christians to death.

After that charles was returned in to Fraunce, a kyngt sarasyn of affryque, named aygolant, wyth grete puyssaunce came in to spayne, and remysed it in 28 hys subgectyon. And the crysten which charles had left there, as many as he myght gete, he put to deth, and the other fledde. And in shorte tyme the tydynges came vnto kyngt Charles, wherof he was moche abasshed 32 & angry, because it was shewed to hym so pycetously.

wherefore Incontynent he assembled a grete hoost, & wyth a grete multytude of fyghtyng men he went thyder wythout taryeng. And he made the conduytour  
4 of them al Myllon of anglers, the fader of Rolland. & they cessed not tyl that they had tydynge where Aygolant the geaunt was, whyche had doon thys feat. whan charles knewe where Aygolant was lodged, <sup>1</sup>and  
8 semblably aygolant knewe where Charles was, Anone the geaunt sente to charles that he wold delyuer bataylle suche as he wold. That is to wete that Charles shold sende to hym xx of hys men to fyght ageynst xx of hys  
12 sarasyns, or xl ayenst xl, or an C ayenst C, or a thousand ayenst a thousand, or two men ayenst two, or one man ayenst one man onely. kyng Charles, seying thentencion of aygolant, for thonour of noblesse he wold not  
16 refuse hys demaunde, but sent to hym an C knyghtes in grete poynte, and the geaunte sente another hondred ayenst the crysten men, but anone the sarasyns were vanquysshed & put to deth, and after were sente by  
20 aygolant two hondred sarasyns ayenst two hondred crysten men, whyche Sarasyns were anone wythoute grete resystence put to deth and slayn. Aygolant was not contente, ne wold not leue herby, but sente two  
24 thousand sarasyns ayenst ij M crysten men, and whan they were in batayll, many of þ<sup>e</sup> sarasyns were slayn, and the other put to flyght for to saue them self. The thyrde day after, Aygolant maad certeyn experyences,  
28 and knewe that yf Charles made warre to hym he shold haue grete losse, and sent to Charles to wete yf he wold make playne warre. Charles <sup>2</sup>was contente, and there vpon they made redy theyr peple, and  
32 speecially charles, for hys subgettes had grete affectyon to goo to bataylle without ony fere of deth. And also somme of the crysten men, the day tofore the bataylle, dyd do amende and araye theyr harnoys, and sette

Milo, Roland's father, is put in command.

Aygolant challenges any number of Charles's men to fight against an equal number of his.

Charles sends 100 knights,

who slay the 100 Saracens ;

and after 200, who also kill their opponents.

Aygolant sends 2000 Saracens,

but they also are defeated.

Both sides prepare for a general engagement.

<sup>1</sup> k viij.

<sup>2</sup> k viij. col. 2.

theyr tentes nygh a ryuer named ceye, and pyght there  
 theyr speres, euen in the place where as the bodyes of  
 saynt faconde and saynt premytyf rested, where after  
 was made a chyrche deuoutely founded, and also a 4  
 stronge cyte by the moyen of the sayd Charles, and in  
 the place where the speres were pyght, our lord shewed  
 grete myracle. For of them that shold deye there and  
 be gloryfyed marters of god & crowned in heuen, theyr 8  
 speres on þ<sup>e</sup> morn were founden al grene, floessed  
 and leued, whyche was a preecedent sygne that they  
 whyche shold deye shold haue the Ioye in heuen.  
 ¶ Eche man took his owne, and cutte of the bowes & 12  
 leues, wyth whyche the leues were planted and vnder-  
 roted, wherof in a lytel whyle after grewe a grete wode,  
 whyche stondeh there yet. It was grete meruayle of  
 the Ioye that the horses made, whyche dyd theyr 16  
 deuoyrs as wel as the men after theyr qualyte, whyche  
 was a grete token. Thenne L valyaunt <sup>1</sup>crysten men  
 were slayne, And emonge the other was slayne due  
 Myllon, fader to Roulland. Also that same day the 20  
 hors of charles was slayn vnder hym, & whan he was a  
 fote he maa grete murdre wyth hys swerde Ioyouse,  
 and dyd so moche that the sarasyns, dredyng the  
 euenyng, fledde & wythdrewe them in to place of 24  
 surete. And as it was the wyll of our lord, the next  
 day after came to Charles in to his helpe iiij marquyse  
 of ytalie, accompanied wyth iiij M stronge fyghtyng  
 men & chosen. wherfore Aygolant, assone as he knewe 28  
 of theyr comyng, he fled and wythdrewe hym ouer the  
 see toward hys contree. but they myzt not for hast bere  
 with them al theyr tresours, wherfor fraunce was  
 enryched meruaylously aboue alle other contrees. 32  
 ¶ And whan charles sawe his departyng he came  
 wyth al hys rychesse in to fraunce, and thezue, duryng  
 seuen yere, he dyd do ordeyne the seruyce and offyce of

By a miracle it is  
 shown which of  
 the French  
 soldiers should be  
 killed in the  
 battle.

From their spears  
 springs up a great  
 wood.

M<sup>o</sup>lo and 50  
 knights are slain,

but the Saracens  
 are put to flight.

Reinforcements  
 come to Charles,

whereupon Aigo-  
 lant flies to Africa.

Charles returns to  
 France,

<sup>1</sup> k viij, back.

the chyrehe by preestes & clerkes, and the festes of sayntes of all the yere; and grete vertu & meruayllous effect was comprysed in thys man. For whan it was  
 4 not warre for to mynysshe thynfydellys and encrease the crysten fayth, For tenhaunce the name of god he made the offyces and legendes of holy sayntes, & dyd <sup>1</sup>reduce in to mynde and remembraunce the passyons of holy  
 8 marters in establysshyng theyr feestes, to thende that we shold ensyewe them, and to eschewe al euyl. And the magnytude of thys kyng was wel preued by sygnes seen on the heuen. For in the same yere the mone  
 12 derked thre tymes, and the somme ones, and companyes of people were seen meruayllous, whyche shewed that thys Charles was of grete magnytude, that is to wete bytwene heuen and erthe.

and occupys himself in drawing up rules and services for the Church.

This year were three eclipses of the moon, and one of the sun.

16 ¶ How Aygolant sent to charles that he shold come to hym trustely for to make Iust warre, and how Charles in habyte dys-symyled spake to hym, and of other  
 20 maters: capitulo vj

**A**S I haue sayd the kyn[ge,] Aygolant the geaunte, fledde in to hys contreye, whan socours cam to Charles of foure marques. he slepte not vpon his  
 24 purpoos, but maad grete dylygence for to assemble hys people, whyche were sarasyns Innumerable, for he assembled mores, Moabytes, Ethiopiens, Affryeans, and pereyens; he brought wyth hym also the kyng of  
 28 arabye, the kyng of barbarye, the kyng of malroste, the kyng of <sup>2</sup>maiorie, the kyng of meques, the kyng of cybylle, & the kyng of Cordube, the whych cam with peple wythout nombre, certain, in to gascoyne, in to a  
 32 stronge cyte named Agenne, and took it. And after sent to Charles that he shold come to hym peasybly &

Aigolant collects an immense army,

and again invades Gascony, and captures the city of Agenne.

<sup>1</sup> k viij. back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> I j.

Ayrolant invites  
Charles to visit  
him unattended.

Charles sets out  
with 2000 knights,

whom he leaves,  
except 10,  
near the city.

He himself, in  
disguise and with  
only one attend-  
ant, enters the  
city,

and presents him-  
self as a messenger  
from Charles,

to say he had  
come with only  
40 attendants.

Ayrolant replies  
that he will go  
and meet the  
French king.

trustly, with a fewe peple, promysynge to hym for to  
gyue to hym ix hors laden with gold, syluer, and pre-  
cious stones, yf he wold thus come at hys desyre. this  
paynym shewed to hym this by cause he wold knowe 4  
his persone, for hys strengthe & puyssaunce knewe he  
wel by experyence, and also to thende whan he knewe  
hym that he myght in the warre flee hym. whan kyng  
charles knewe this mandement he gadred not grete 8  
peple, but he came onely wyth ij M knyghtes of honour  
and of grete strength. And whan he was foure myle  
nygh the cyte, where Aygolant and al the kynges tofore  
named were, he left his people secretly, & came vnto a 12  
mountayne nygh the cyte, accompanied wyth xl  
knyghtes onely. And fro thys place they saw the cyte,  
by cause to wete yf the multytude of peple were de-  
parted, soo that he shold not be deceyued. Neuertheles 16  
vpon thys montayne he lefte hys people secretly, and  
took of hys clothes, and cladde hym in the guyse of a  
messenger, and took one knyght onely with hym,  
whyche bare his spere & swerde and boeler vnder hys 20  
mantel, and soo came in to the cyte, and anone he was  
brought tofore aygolaunt the geaunt. And whan he was  
tofore hym he sayd in thys manere: "Charles the kyng  
hath sente vs vnto the, and leteth the wete by vs that 24  
he is comen lyke as thou hast comanded, accompanied  
wyth fourty knyghtes onely, for to do that he ought to  
doo. Now themme come to hym wyth xl knyghtes,  
withoute moo, yf thou wylt accomplysshe and holde 28  
that thou hast promysed." Aygolant sayd to hem that  
they shold retorne to charles, and that they shold say  
to hym that he departe not, but abyde hym there, and  
he wold come and vysyte hym. After this that charles 32  
had knowen the geaunt, and after vysyted the towne,  
for to knowe the feblest parte for to take and conquer  
it whan he shold come agyn, & sawe al the kynges



forsayd & their puyssaunces, he after retorned to his  
 peple whiche he had left vpon the montayne, & after  
 came to hys ij M knyghtes. & anone after aygolant,  
 4 accompanied wyth vij M knyghtes, came after them  
 withoute taryeng. But charles took hede whan he cam  
 that there were many moo paynyns than crysten men,  
 and <sup>1</sup>wythout lenger taryeng charles & his peple de-  
 8 parted, and returned in to fraunce wythout hauyng  
 other delyberacyon.

Charles, having  
 spied out all the  
 city, departs.

Aigolant, with  
 7000 men, follows  
 him,

but Charles  
 escapes.

¶ How Charles, accompanied with moche  
 peple, returned in to the place aforesayd &  
 12 toke the cyte of agenne, & other maters :  
 [capitulo] vij

After that charles was returned in to fraunce he  
 assembled moche peple, & after came to the cyte  
 16 of agenne, & assyged it there by grete facyon,  
 the space of vij monethes. Aygolant was therin &  
 many sarasyns, & the crysten men had made fortresses  
 & castelles of tree tofore this cyte for to greue it. Whan  
 20 Aygolant & the grete lordes of his compaignie sawe þat  
 they myght not endure, they maad hooles & caues vnder  
 therth for tescapen oute secretly : in that maner they came  
 out of the cyte, & passed ouer a ryuer, which ranne by  
 24 the cyte, named goronna, and so they saved them self.  
 The next day after, whan there was noo grete resyst-  
 ence made to the crysten men, Charles wyth grete  
 tryumphe & puyssaunce entred in to the cyte, & put to  
 28 deth x M sarasyns that he there fonde. The other,  
 seying that, put them to flyght by the ryuer. Aygolant  
<sup>2</sup>was in another stronge toun, & whan charles knewe it  
 he came thider & assaylled it, & sente to hym to delyuer  
 32 ouer the cyte. aygolant ansuerd that he wold not so  
 doo, but by a moyen that was, that they shold make a

Charles assembles  
 a large army,

and lays siege to  
 Agenne, which he  
 surrounds.

Aigolant and his  
 lords escape by  
 mines.

Charles enters the  
 city,

and after besieges  
 the city to which  
 Aigolant had fled.

<sup>1</sup> 1 j, back.

<sup>2</sup> 1 j, back, col. 2.

Aigolant proposes  
a general battle.

batayll, & he that shold wyne the bataylle shold be  
lord of þe toun, & so they assygned the day of the  
bataylle. and nygh to that place, bytwene the castel  
thalabout & a ryuer called carantha, somme of the 4  
crysten men planted theyr speres in the grounde, espe-  
cially they that on the morn shold deye, & obteyne the  
crowne of glorie as marters of god. and on the morne  
they fonde their speres al grene & myraculously leued, 8  
& ful of bowes, wherof the cristen men were moche  
loyous of this myracle, and raught not for to deye for  
þe crysten fayth in mayntenynge the name of god.  
After that they cutte of theyr speres and wente to 12  
bataylle, and put many sarasyns to deth. But in  
thende were slayn and martred, of crysten men moo  
than iiij M whiche were saued in heuen; & that tyme  
the hors that Charles rode on was slayn vnder hym, 16  
and at that bataylle were slayn by the sayd Charles the  
kyng of Agabye [&] the kyng of bugye, merueyllous  
myghty sarasyns.

Those of the  
Christians who  
were destined to  
die are again  
pointed out by a  
miracle.

The Saracens are  
utterly defeated.

<sup>1</sup>¶ Of the vertuous operacions that charles 20  
made whan he was retourned' in to fraunce,  
& what barons he had' in hys companye, &  
of theyr puyssaunce: ca. viij

After his defeat  
Aigolant flies to  
Pampeluna.

**T**He bataylle toforesayd made, Aigolant fledde and 24  
came in to panpylone, and sent to kyng charles  
that he shold abyde hym for to gyue hym bataylle  
more ample & large. Whan charles knewe hys desyre  
he retourned in to fraunce for to haue helpe of hys 28  
peple, and made an open maundement thorough out al  
Fraunce that al maner peple that were of euyl condycyon  
and in bondage, that they that were present, and theyr  
successours, shold be free, & there vpon tabellyons shold 32  
be delyuerd accordyng to the lawe, that wold goo with

Charles returns  
to France for  
reinforcements.

hym ayenst the myscreauntes. Also alle prysonners  
 that were in fraunce, he delyuerd<sup>t</sup> them al out of He frees all  
prisoners,  
 pryson, & to al them that shold haue ben delyuerd to  
 4 deth for felonnye, murdre, or treason, he pardouned  
 them & gaf to them theyr lyf; and to al poure peple  
 that had not wherby to lyue, he gaf to them good<sup>t</sup>  
 largely, & them that were euyl clark, he clothed them clothes the poor,  
 8 after theyr degree. alle them that were at debate he  
 peased them & accorded<sup>t</sup>; Alle them þat were dys-  
 heryted & put oute from theyr lyuelode he restored al  
 to them; Alle þe peple<sup>1</sup> that myght bere armes he  
 12 armed them. The valyaunt squyers of theyr persones  
 he made knyghtes, & al them that were in hys Indyg-  
 naeyon & pryued [f]ro hys loue, & bannysshed<sup>t</sup> for the  
 loue of god, he was constraynede to pardonne them, &  
 16 made pees with every man. and thenne he was four-  
 nysshed of moo than an C thousand men wel fyghtyng,  
 wythoute them that were a-fote, whyche were Innume-  
 rable. And for to gyue courage to the prynces of Charles,  
 20 Turpyн sayd<sup>t</sup> in this maner: "I, Turpyн, archebysshop  
 of Raynes by the grace of god, shal gyue good<sup>t</sup> courage  
 to crysten people, and shal slee the Infydels, sarasyns,  
 with myн owne handes." ¶ Wyth Charles was Turpin assures  
him of success.  
 24 Roulland<sup>t</sup> of Cenonye, neuewe of Charles, sone of hys  
 syster, dame Berthe, & of Duke Myllon, wyth foure  
 thousand fyghtyng<sup>t</sup> men; Olyuer, duc of genes, sone of  
 duc Reyner, with iij M fyghtyng<sup>t</sup> men: Aristagius,  
 28 kyng<sup>t</sup> of brytayne, wyth vij thousand fyghtyng<sup>t</sup> men;  
 Not wythstondyng that in brytayne was another kyng,  
 Eugelius, whyche was duke of Guyan, whome Au-  
 gustus Cezar had ordeyned<sup>t</sup>, wyth the byturyciens, the  
 32 monyques, pictauyns, scauctonens, and Elogysmes,  
 eytees with their prouynces vnder guyan: & he cam  
 with iij M horsmen <sup>2</sup>good fyghtars; Garferns, kyng<sup>t</sup>  
 of bordeloys, with iiij M men; Salamon, fellow of estok;

With Charles are  
 Roland, Oliver,  
 and Aristagius  
 with 14,000 men.

Besides were men  
 from Guienne,

<sup>1</sup> 1 ij. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> 1 ij. back.

hawdewyn, brother of Rolland; Naymes, duc of bayere,  
 wyth x M fyghtyng<sup>t</sup> men; Hoel of Naantes, &  
 Burgundy, Lambert, prynce of bourgoyn, wyth ij M fyghtars;  
 Sanson, duc of bourgoyn, with x M; Garyn, duc of 4  
 Lorraine, and many other; and Charles hað of his  
 other provinces, owne contre moo than fyfty M men. The excereyte  
 of Charles, the noble emperour, and ryght puyssaunt  
 kyng<sup>t</sup> of Fraunce, was so grete and so ample that it helde 8  
 two iourneyes longe, & in brede half o iourneye &  
 more; In suche wyse that of the bruyt that was made  
 for the grete multytude of the freusshemen, it was herde  
 two myle ferre and more. 12

¶ Of the tryews of Charles & of Aygolant,  
 and of the deth of hys peple, & wherfore  
 aygolant was not baptysed<sup>1</sup>: capitulo ix

Aigolant, fright-  
 ened at the num-  
 bers of the French,

proposes a con-  
 ference.

**T**He whyl that charles was a yonge chyld he 16  
 lerneð at Toulete the langage of sarasyns, and  
 spake it whan he wold. Aygolant, thys geaunt  
 and grete Lord, coude not absteyne hym, and cam  
 nygh vnto crystyente, and sente to Charles to come to 20  
 hym vnto Pampylone, and tryews was<sup>1</sup> maad bytwene  
 them. For Aygolant consyderyð the multytude of hys  
 people and the puyssaunces of their persones. For by  
 cours of nature hym semeð he shold surmounte the 24  
 crysten peple, but he thought that the god of crysten  
 people was more certayn and trewe than the god of the  
 paynmys; but er he wold deelyne fro the worshiippyng of  
 hys goddes, he hað desyre to assaye yet ones the nombre 28  
 of paynmys ayenst the nombre of crysten men. And  
 he was contente to make a pacte and couenaunt wyth  
 charles, that he that shold obteyne the vycторыe vpon  
 others peple, that his god were holden and worshiyyed, 32  
 And that the god of hym that shold lose the bataylle

It is agreed to  
 leaue the question  
 of religion to a  
 trial of arms  
 between equal  
 numbers.

<sup>1</sup> 1 ij. back, col. 2.

shold be of noo valure, renyed, and reputed for nought.  
 And vpon thys couenaunte were sente twenty crysten  
 knyghtes ayenst xx knyghtes paynyns. And anone  
 4 as they were assembled and medled to-gyder, the twenty  
 sarasyns were slayn. And after were sente fourty ayenst  
 fourty, And anone the sarasyns were slayn and vayn-  
 quysshed. And after he sent an C. ayenst an C., but  
 8 they were not slayne, but fledde. Aygolant thougt he  
 wold do better, and sent ij hondred ayenst ij C., and  
 anone the sarasyns were ouercomen & slayn. <sup>1¶</sup> Thys  
 geaunt was euyl contente of the destructyon of hys  
 12 peple, and for to make a grete descomfyte, he sente a  
 thousand sarasyns ayenst a M cristen men, and wyth-  
 oute makynge grete rebellyon, the sarasyns were anone  
 slayn and put to deth. Thenne the kyng Aygolant, by  
 16 experyence for-made, afermed the fayth & the lawe of  
 crysten peple to be better, more sure, & more certeyn  
 than the lawe of the paynyns and sarasyns, and thus he  
 was enclyned to the crys'en fayth, & dysposed hym to  
 20 receyue baptym on the morne without fayntyse; and  
 here vpon he demanded tryews and surete for to goo &  
 come to Charles, & he graunted it to hym wyth good  
 hert. and thus atte houre of tyerce, whan charles was  
 24 at dyner, Aygolant had entencyon to see charles and  
 hys maner at mete, for to knowe hys astate, yf it were  
 vaylherous and soo grete as it was in armes and in  
 bataylles. And also he came pryncypally for to be  
 28 baptysed, and he sawe Charles at hys table with grete  
 magnifycence, and after behelde the ordre of hys peple  
 and sawe that somme were in habyte of knyghtes and  
 grete prynces, Other in habyte of channons & monkes;  
 32 & asked so that he was certefyed of euery ordre, and  
 the cause of theyr estate, and after <sup>2</sup>that he sawe  
 in a parte of y<sup>e</sup> halle syttyng on the grounde, xiiij  
 poure persones, which dyned & ete as other dyd. for

20 Christians  
engage as many  
Saracens, and  
slay them;

and after 40 over-  
come 40 Saracens;

and finally 1000  
Christians slay  
1000 Saracens.

Aigolant is con-  
vinced, and agrees  
to receive baptism.

He asks to see  
Charles at meat  
with his lords.

He sees 13 poor  
men, sitting on  
the ground at  
dinner,

<sup>1</sup> 1 iij.

<sup>2</sup> 1 iij, col. 2.

and asks who and what they are.

Charles tells him they are maintained in memory of our Lord and His Apostles.

Aigolant reproves Charles for treating his lords so much better than the servants of God,

and refuses to be baptised.

charles of custom wold not take his repaste tyl he had xiiij poure men in the worshypp of our lord and of his xij apostles, & he toke hede how these poure men satte on the grounde without towayl in ryght poure 4  
 habyte, & dyned al soronfully, & he demaunded what people they were. Charles ansuerd & sayd: "they be goddes peple and messagers of our lord Ihesu cryst, whome I susteyne in thonour of hym & his xij apostles 8  
 that he had with hym, & gyue to them refectyon corporel." Aigolant said: "certeynlye he serueth euyl his lord y<sup>t</sup> receyueth his messagers in thys manere. I see wel that they that ben aboute the been in good 12  
 poynt & wel arayed, & wel serued of mete & drynke, & the seruautes of thy god lyue pourely & euyl clothed ayenst y<sup>e</sup> colde, & ben withdrawen ferre fro the. he dooth grete shame to his lord that receyueth his mes- 16  
 sagers in this manere. & more ouer, I see now wel that the lawe whyche thou hast sayd to me to be good & holy, by thy werkes thou shewest them to be fals & of no valewe." & herof aigolant was all moeued & troubled 20  
 in his entendement, & he beyng put out alle fro his purpose, toke leue of the <sup>1</sup>kyng & retourned to his peple, & renounced to be baptysed, and sente word to charles for to begynne warre ageyn on y<sup>e</sup> morne more 24  
 stronge than euer he had doon tofore.

¶ Of the deth of aigolant and of his peple, & how moche crysten peple were slayn by concupyscence of syluer, & of crysten men 28  
 founden dede by myracle: [ca.] x

Charles is enraged,

**W**Han charles sawe Aigolant come for to baptyse hym he was moche ioyous, but whan he retourned & forsoke it he was euyl contente, & 32  
 took aduys vpon the pour men whyche he sayd were

<sup>1</sup> 1 iij, back.

messagers of god. For after the pouerte of them, and after that they were named, fore to holde them so, was none honour to theyr mayster, & the emperour remembred wel that the peple of god ought to be receyued honestly, & honourably holden & serued. wherfor the poure men that he fonde in thexcercyte he dyd them to be wel clothed & honestly, and gaf to them mete largely, And took suche custome in hym self that he faylled not, but the pour peple were receyued with honour in his companye. vpon thys purpose on a day folowyng, the sarasyns put them to bataylle, and to fyght <sup>1</sup>ayenst the crysten men by grete fyerste, and there was soo grete destructyon that day of the sarasyns, that the crysten men were empresshed and lette by the blood that ranne so habundantly, as it had rayned many dayes water and blood. wherefore<sup>2</sup> Aigolant, seying the destructyon of his people as he that doubted nothyng to deye, aduauuced<sup>3</sup> so hym self that he was slayn and put to deth, and after the cristen men entred in to the cyte of pampylone, and put to deth al the sarasyns that they fonde therein.

and has all these poor men clothed and honourably treated.

A great battle takes place,

in which the Saracens are defeated,

and Aigolant himself slain.

Thenne the kyng of Cybylle & the kyng of cordube saued them self with somme of their subgettes. After thys the crysten men ful of couetyse for to haue gold and syluer of the sarasyns that were deede retorne, And whan they were wel charged & laden wyth golde, syluer, and other hauoyr, the kyng of Cybylle and the kyng of Cordube took hede ther of, And wyth al their meyne came couertly vpon the crysten men, and put to deth moo than a thousand.

The kings of Seville and of Cordova fall on the Christians laden with booty, and kill more than 1000,

¶ Thus may be knowen that the ardeur of concupyscence was cause of the deth of the soule wythoute vycторыe, and to god dysplaysaunte. ¶ On the morne tydynges came how so many sarasyns were slayn, and

from which we may see the danger of covetousness.

<sup>1</sup> l iij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> orig. wherforr.

<sup>3</sup> orig. and aduauced.

The king of  
Navarre chal-  
lenges Charles.

He accepts, and  
prays to God to  
point out which  
of the Christians  
are destined to  
die.

This being shown  
to him,

he locks them up  
in his chapel,

and goes to battle  
without them.

On his return he  
finds them all  
dead.

specyally of aygolant, vnto the prynee <sup>1</sup>of Nauarro  
named Furre, wherfore he sent to Charles to haue  
batayll ordynayre. Charles was so noble, so puyssaunt,  
& so trustyng<sup>t</sup> in god, whan he faught for the crysten 4  
fayth that he refused hym not. and after, at the day of  
bataylle, whyche was assygned on bothe partyes, Charles  
put hym self to prayer, and prayed god deuoutely that  
it plesed hym, to shew what crysten men shold deye in 8  
that bataylle. and on the day folowyng whan euery  
man was armed for to fyght, by the wylle of our lord  
Charles sawe that same day the sygne of the crosse alle  
rede vpon the sholdres behynde vpon theyr harnoys. 12  
whan charles sawe it he thanked our lord & had com-  
passyon of theyr deth, by cause of the valyaunce of  
theyr persones. Thenne he sent for all them that bare  
thensigne & made them to goo in to hys oratorye, and 16  
after shette them fast therin, to the ende that they shold  
not take deth that day ; and thenne wyth al his other  
hoost he went ayenst thoost of the prynee furre, but it  
was not longe but furre and hys people were destroyed 20  
and put to deth. and whan that was doon the emperour  
came in to hys oratorye vycoryous vpon hys enemyes,  
and fonde al them that were shette wythin dede &  
expyred, & thenne knewe<sup>2</sup> he wel that alle they that 24  
were marked with the crosse were assygned that day to  
be receyued in to heuen with glorie & crowne of marter-  
dom, & that it apperteyned not to Charles to prolonge  
theyr helthe. wherfore he is wel symple that wyl put 28  
hym in payne to eschewe the passage of whyche he is  
not maystre.

¶ Of feragus the merueyllous geaunt, how he  
bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce 32  
wyth out daunger, & how Roulland' faught  
wyth hym : capitulo xj.

<sup>1</sup> 1 iiij.

<sup>2</sup> 1 iiij, col. 2.



**A**fter that aygolant was slayn, & Furre, & many  
 kynges sarasyns as tofore is wryton, the tydynges  
 cam to the admyral of babylo<sup>ne</sup>, the which had a  
 4 geant moche terryble, that was of the generacion of  
 goliath, & he made hym to be accompanied with xx M  
 turkes moche strong, and sente hym for to fyght ayenst  
 charles themperour. For hys puyssaunce was redoubte<sup>d</sup>  
 8 thurgh the world, & the sayd feragus cam vnto the cyte  
 of vagyere, nygh to saynt Iames, bytwene cristendom  
 & hethenes, & sent to Charles that he shold come to  
 fyght ayenst hym. This geant was moche meruayllous,  
 12 For he doubted neyther spere ne swerde, ne arowe, ne  
 other shotte. And he had the strengthe of xl <sup>1</sup>myghty  
 men and stronge. Anone as Charles knewe the tydynges  
 of hys comyng, he went to hym and was vpon his  
 16 watche nygh by vagyere. Whan thys was knowen this  
 geaunte yssued oute of the towne, and demaunded syn-  
 guler persone ayenst a persone. Charles, whiche neuer  
 had refused that to persone, sente to hym Ogier the  
 20 danoy. but whan the geant sawe hym allone on the  
 felde, without makyng of any semblaunte of warre, he  
 came allone to hym, & took hym wyth one hande &  
 put hym vnder hys arme, wythoute doyng to hym any  
 24 harme, and bare hym vnto hys lodgys, and dyd do put  
 hym in pryson, and made nomore a-doo to bere hym,  
 than dooth a wulf to bere a lytel lambe. The heyght  
 of thys geaunt was of twelue cubytes: he had the face  
 28 a cubyte brode, the nose a palme longe, the armes &  
 thyes four cubytes long. The backe of his hand was  
 thre palmes longe. After that Ogier was borne thus  
 awaye, Charles sente raynold daulbepyn. whan Feragus  
 32 sawe hym, he bare hym a-waye as lyghtly as the other.  
 Charles was abasshed and sent tweyne other, that is to  
 wete, constayn of Rome, & therle hoel. This geaunt  
 took that one wyth <sup>2</sup>the ryght honde and that other

The Amir of  
 Babylon sends  
 Ferragus, a mar-  
 vellous giant,

to fight against  
 Charles.

He challenges any  
 French knight.

Charles sends  
 Ogier to meet him,

but Ferragus  
 takes him under  
 his arm and

carries him off,  
 as a wolf would a  
 lamb.

Charles then  
 sends Raynold,  
 and he also is  
 carried off.

Then Constayn  
 and Hoel are sent,

<sup>1</sup> liij. back.

<sup>2</sup> orig. wyght.

but Ferragus  
carries them off,  
one in each hand.

Roland asks leave  
to fight the giant.

Charles reluct-  
antly gives his  
consent.

Ferragus lifts  
Roland up with  
one hand, and  
lays him on his  
horse before him.

Roland, by an  
effort, overthrows  
the giant.

Roland kills the  
Saracen's horse,

and wounds  
Ferragus in the  
arm.

in the lyft honde, and bare them <sup>1</sup>bothe tweyne in-to  
pryson in to hys lodgyng, that euery man myght see.  
yet after charles sent other tweyne, and semblably they  
were bothe borne away wythoute ony wythstandyng or 4  
contradyctyon. whan Charles saw the feet of this man,  
he was al abasshed, & durst nomore sende ony persone.  
For no man myght resyste hym. Roulland, whyche  
was prynee of al thexeersyte of Charles, was euyl con- 8  
tente of thys that the geaunt was vyetoryous, & came  
to Charles and presented hym self for to goo fyght wyth  
hym, but charles wold not graunte hym. At the last,  
by force, he was constrayned to gyue to hym lycence, 12  
& Roulland made hym redy, and cam tofore Feragus;  
but anone he was taken and reteyned wyth hys ryght  
hande lyke the other, and the geaunt layed hym tofore  
hym on hys hors. whan Rolland sawe that he was 16  
taken & borne awaye soo vylaynsly he took a grete<sup>2</sup>  
courage in hym self, and called the name of Ihesus to  
help, & to be in hys ayde, and torned hym ayenst  
Feragus, and took hym by the chynne, and made to 20  
ouerthrowe fro hys hors, & fyl to the grounde, and  
rolland also. And after anone they arose, and eueryche  
took hys owne hors. Roulland, whyche was moche  
habyle and courageous, drewe <sup>3</sup>hys swerde durandal 24  
and came ayenst the geaunt, and gaf soo grete a stroke  
on the Paynyns hors that he earf hym a-sondre in the  
myddes, and the paynym fyl to the erthe. Feragus,  
beyng euyl contente for hys hors that was dede, took 28  
hys swerde for to smyte Rolland, & had slayne hym  
wyth the stroke yf he had attayned hym; but assone  
as he lyfte vp hys arme for to haue smyten Rolland,  
Roulland auanced hym self and smote the geant vpon 32  
the arme, with whiche he helde hys swerde, suche a  
stroke, that hys swerde fyl to the grounde; wherof  
Feragus had grete despyte and supposed to haue smyten

<sup>1</sup> I liij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> orig. gtete.

<sup>3</sup> I v.

hym wyth hys fyste, but he attayned rollandes hors in  
 suche wyse that he slewe hym. Thus were they bothe  
 two on fote, whyche wythoute swerd begynnen to fyght  
 4 wyth theyr fystes and wyth stones continually, tyl the  
 houre of none: wherfore they bothe were wery, and  
 took tryews to-gyder by one acorde vnto the morne,  
 and that they shold fyght wythout spere and wythoute  
 8 hors: and here vpon eche of them went vn-to hys  
 lodgys.

Roland's horse is  
 killed.

Being both weary,  
 they leave off  
 fighting for the  
 day.

¶ How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus  
 foughten & dysputeden the fayth, and by  
 12 what <sup>1</sup>moyen Feragus was slayn by Roul-  
 land': capitulo xij

**T**He next day folowyng<sup>e</sup> erly, Rolland and Feragus  
 came to the felde of the bataylle. The geaunt  
 16 brought hys swerde moche grete, but it was nothyng  
 worth, for rolland made prouysyon of a grete staffe or  
 clubbe, ryzt longe wyth whyche he smote the geaunt;  
 but he myght nowher hurte hym. & also he smote  
 20 hym with grete stones and rounde, & coude in noo  
 wyse hurte ne entre in-to hys flesshe. And in this  
 maner they cessyd not to fyght tyl the houre of myd-  
 day. The geaunt was wery, and demaunded tryews of  
 24 Rolland for to slepe and reste hym a lytel. Rolland  
 was contente, and was so noble and so valyaunt, that  
 whan the geaunt was layed he went and fette a grete  
 stone and layed it vnder hys heel, to the ende that he  
 28 myght the better slepe and reste at hys ease. And  
 after that he had a lytel slepte, & that he was awaked,  
 he satte vp. And the noble Rolland came and sat by  
 hym and sayd to hym: "I meruaylle moche of thy  
 32 feat, How thou art so stronge and so terryble that thou  
 mayst not be hurt ne wounded in thy body by swerd,

Next morning the  
 duel is renewed.

Roland takes with  
 him only a great  
 staff.

At noon Ferragus  
 is tired, and  
 wishes to sleep a  
 while.

Roland makes  
 him comfortable.

He asks him how  
 it is he cannot  
 by any means  
 wound him.

<sup>1</sup> 1 v. col. 2.

Ferragus tells him that he is vulnerable only in the navel.

The Saracen inquires about the doctrines of Christianity.

Roland tells him,

and how that all that are baptised shall be saved.

Ferragus proposes to settle the question of religion by arms.

ne by staffe, ne by stones, ne in<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>noo wyse." The  
geaunt, which spake spaynyssh, sayd to hym : " I may  
not be slayn, but by the navel." whan Rolland herde  
that he made semblaunte that he vnderstood hym not. 4  
After Feragus demaunded hym what was hys name,  
and of what lyguage he was. Rolland sayd to hym :  
" I am named Rolland, and am neuwe of charles, the  
ryght myghty Emperour." & Feragus asked of hym 8  
what lawe he helde. Rolland answered : " I holde the  
cristen fayth by the grace of god." Feragus sayd :  
" what fayth is that, and who hath gyuen it?" to  
whyche Rolland answered : " It is tronthe y<sup>t</sup> after god 12  
almighty had made heuen and erthe, and our fyrst fader  
adam, which was dysobeyssaunt to hys commaunde-  
ments ; the world was Juge here in erthe wythoute  
hauyng<sup>t</sup> of beatytude, ne of felycyte : and long tyme 16  
after the sone of god, the second persone of the Trynyte,  
remembreth hym of the valure of the soule, the whiche  
is gyuen to euery persone, and descended fro heuen and  
took our humanity and suffred greuous passyon of 20  
paynes. And he beyng in this world hath gyuen en-  
seygnements and stablyssed constytucyons for to saue  
vs, & pryncypally who hyleueth in hym & in hys  
werkes parfychtly, and that he be baptysed, After this 24  
<sup>3</sup>mortal lyf he shal be saued in heuen : and, loo ! this  
is the fayth that I holde, in the which I wyl deye."  
And after that Feragus had made to hym many ques-  
tyons in the fayth, and that Rolland had answered to 28  
hym honourably in euery poynte, Feragus said in this  
manere : " thou art crysten, and wylt mayntene the  
fayth of whyche thou hast spoken, and I am a paynym,  
& holde for my god Mahoun. who of vs tweyne that 32  
shal be vanquysshed & ouercome, late hys lawe be  
holde for nought and of noo valewe, and the fayth of  
hym that is vyctoryous late it be holden for good &

<sup>1</sup> orig. in.

<sup>2</sup> 1 v. back.

<sup>3</sup> 1 v. back, col. 2.

- trewe, and that it be enterly kepte and obserued.”
- The valyaunt Rolland<sup>l</sup> was contente ryght wel, & ac- Roland agrees.  
cepted<sup>l</sup> hys langage. thenne eche of them was redy to
- 4 fyght. Anone Rolland<sup>l</sup> came to hym, and<sup>l</sup> Feragus lyft The fight is renewed.  
vp hys arme for to smyte Rolland<sup>l</sup> moche malycyously,  
and<sup>l</sup> Roulland<sup>l</sup> sawe the stroke come vpon hym, and<sup>l</sup>  
for to voyde it he launced<sup>l</sup> hys staffe ayenst the swerde,
- 8 and wyth the stroke the staffe was cutte asondre; and<sup>l</sup> Roland's staff is cut in two,  
there-wythal the geaunt ranne to Rolland<sup>l</sup> and had<sup>l</sup> hym  
doun vnder hym. Rolland<sup>l</sup>, consyderynge that he myght  
not flee ne escape, he called<sup>l</sup> in hys hert deuoutely the
- 12 name of Ihesus, and yelded<sup>l</sup> hym to god<sup>l</sup> & <sup>1</sup>to the  
vyrgyn marye: & he anon re pryse<sup>l</sup> suche strengthe & but by a great effort he gets the giant under him  
myzt that he aroos a lytel, & myghtyly repugned<sup>l</sup> the  
geaunte, in suche manere that he brought the geaunte
- 16 vnder hym, and<sup>l</sup> thenne moche quyeckly and<sup>l</sup> subtylly he  
sete hande on hys swerde, and pryched hym in the and stabs him in the navel.  
nauyll therwyth, & anone after aroos, and fledde al that  
he myzt to thoost of charles. Anone as feragus felte
- 20 hym self hurt in that place, he cryed<sup>l</sup> so hye & lowde,  
that alle they that were in that place were aferd<sup>l</sup> &  
abashed<sup>l</sup> of hys crye, & he sayd<sup>l</sup>: “O Mahomet, my  
god<sup>l</sup>, to whom I haue gyuen my fayth, come & socour
- 24 me, for thou seest wel that I dye, and tarye noo lenger.”  
with that hydous voys the sarasyns camen to hym and The Saracens bear Ferragus away.  
bare hym awaye in theyr armes the best wyse they  
coude vnto hys lodgys; and by that tyme rolland<sup>l</sup> was
- 28 comen alle hool and<sup>l</sup> sauf vnto Charles. And forthwyth Charles assaults the town,  
the crysten men went Impetuously vpon the Sarasyns  
that bare Feragus, and<sup>l</sup> entred<sup>l</sup> in to the cyte, and so takes it and  
moche dyd<sup>l</sup> that the geaunt was dede, and<sup>l</sup> after came
- 32 in to the pryson valyauntly, and<sup>l</sup> took out Ogger, releases his knights.  
Regnault, Constantyn, Hoel, and the other prysonners.

<sup>1</sup> 1 vi.

¶ How Charles went to Cor<sup>1</sup>dube, where the kyng of the same place and' the kyng' of Cybylle abode, for their destructyon :

ca.

xiiij 4

The kings of Cordova and Seville defy Charles,

who marches against them.

The Saracens, by a stratagem,

frighten the horses of the Frenchmen, and put them to flight.

Charles devises a remedy,

and the battle is renewed next day.

Of the standard of the Saracens.

AFTER this aforesayd, the kyng<sup>t</sup> Corbude and the kyng<sup>t</sup> of Cybylle sent to Charles that he shold come to cordube for to fyght. Anone as charles knewe it, he came thyder wyth all hys puyssaunce. And 8 whan they were nygh for tassemble in bataylle, the sarasyns maad<sup>t</sup> a moche subtil and<sup>t</sup> wylde thyng. For tofore the Sarasyns that were on horsback they had ordeyned men on fote, whyche had<sup>t</sup> vysieres counter- 12 feyted<sup>t</sup> all black & rede, horned, and berded lyke deuylls, for to deceyue the crysten men ; and eueryche of these foot men bare in hys honde a lytel belle. And at thentre of the bataylle they began to sowne and<sup>t</sup> 16 make suche a bruyt, that assone as the horses of the crysten men sawe them so counterfayted and sowne their bellys, so Impetuously they began to flee, disreng & to be aferde, in suche maner that no man might holde 20 theyr horses, but by force they must flee and<sup>t</sup> wythdrawe them. Charles deuysed<sup>t</sup> a remedye, and on the morne he blynfelde the horses and couer<sup>t</sup> theyr eyen wyth clothes, And<sup>t</sup> stopped<sup>t</sup> theyr eres, to the ende that they 24 shold<sup>t</sup> not see ne <sup>2</sup>here the sarasyns dysguysed<sup>t</sup> & countrefayted<sup>t</sup>. And whan they came to bataylle in this manere they spared<sup>t</sup> not, but slewe down ryght, & put the sarasyns to deth tyl mydday ; but yet they were 28 not al vaynquysshed<sup>t</sup>, For they had<sup>t</sup> a carte myghty and<sup>t</sup> grete for to resyste and<sup>t</sup> make grete empresshement to theyr enemyes. And<sup>t</sup> this engyne was drawen wyth viij oxen in the warre, & ther-vpon<sup>3</sup> stode on hye the 32 standard of theyr ensygne. & theyr custome was that on payne of deth noo persone, shold retorne, ne goo

<sup>1</sup> 1 vj. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> 1 vi. back.

<sup>3</sup> orig. thre-vpon.

aback for no thyng as long as the standarke stode vpryght. herof Charles was enformed, wherfore moche puyssauntly he rode thurgh the sarasyns tyl he came to

4 the standarke, and with Joyouse hys swerde he smote it asondre: and anon as the sarasyns sawe that they fledde, & mony of y<sup>e</sup> paynyns were slayn and dede.

Charles himself cuts down the standard, and the Saracens flee.

& on the morne after the towne was delyuered vnto Charles by the lord of the toun,<sup>1</sup> whyche coude not resyste hym, & charles was content to lete hym haue hys lyf yf he wold be baptysed, and also the toun for to holde it of hym and none otherwyse. And thenne

The town is taken, and all who will not become Christians put to death.

12 charles ordeyned in spayne certayn of hys barons to kepe it, in suche wyse, that none durst assayle it, ne make to it warre. For he was <sup>2</sup>alwaye vetyorous of his enemyes by the puyssaunce that he ledde, and also  
16 by dyscrecyon of hys persone, and pryneypally by the grace of god, whyche faylled not in him and in hys subgettes.

¶ How the chyrche of Saynt Iames was  
20 halowed by tharchebysshop Turpyn, & the chyrches of spayne subgettes therto, and of other pryneypal chyrches: capitulo xiiij

24 CHARLES the noble emperour, after that he had put and sette good estate and good warde in spayne, he went to saynt Iames wyth fewe people. And whan he was there, suche cristen men as he there fond he rewarded them, & dyd to them moche good,  
28 and he punysshed suche as were apostates, & other maner of peple, suche as he fonde vntrywew and dysobeysaunte to holy chyrche, he lete slee and put to deth, or he sente theym in to fraunce to do penaunce, and  
32 banmysshed them. And thenne thorough al the cytees of spayne he ordeyned bysshops, relygyous, and other

Charles goes to St. James, and makes regulations for the church:

appoints bishops and monasteries,

<sup>1</sup> orig. toun.

<sup>2</sup> 1 vj. back. col. 2.

and ordains that all the bishops of Spain shall be subject to the bishop of St. James.

Tarpin consecrates the Church of St. James.

Charles appoints the payment of tithes to the church,

and orders that all consecrations and coronations shall take place there.

The body of St. John is deposited on the right side, and that of St. James on the left.

people of the chyrche, & made many constytueyons,<sup>1</sup> synodals, and other ordynaunces vp-on the chyrche, and vpon other people. And in thonour of saynt <sup>2</sup>Iames he made constytueyons, and Instytuled that al the bysshops, 4 prynees, and kynges dwellyng in spayne, shold all be subget to the bysshop of saynt Iames, and al they shold owe to that chyrche fydeleyte, wyth al the peple of the londe of galyce. And accordyng to the same the arche- 8 bisshop Turpy n wryteth in thys manere: "And I, Turpy n, archebysshop of Raynes, was in the same place, where the ordenaunces aforesayd were maad. And I, accompanied wyth ix honourable bysshops & of good 12 lyf, at the requeste and postulacyon of Charles in the moneth of Iuyl. haue halowed, dedycated, blessyd, and consecrated the chyrche of saynt Iames, & the aulter of the same. And after themme the kyng Charles gaf al 16 the londe of spayne & of galyce to that chyrche, And after ordeyned y<sup>t</sup> every hous of spayn and galyce shold gyue to the chyrche of saynt Iames iiij pens of the money corraunt for annuel<sup>3</sup> trybute. And by the 20 moyen therof they shold be franke and free of seruytude. And for the honour of saynt Iames he estab- lysshed that the chyrche of the sayd place shold be sayd apostolyque for the exaltacion of the place. And 24 more ouer, that the bysshopryches and specyal dygnyte of alle spayne & of galyce, and semblably the coronacions of kynges of al the contre. shold be crowned & sacred by the bysshop of saynt Iames, al in lyke wyse 28 as it hath been tofore doon in Asye in the place of ephesym, for the honour of holy Saynt Iohan theuangelyst, brother of saynt Iames, and sone of Zebedee. & thus Saynt Iohan was lodged in the ryght syde, And 32 Saynt Iames, hys brother, in the lyfte syde. Thenne was accomplished the peticyon of their moder and of

<sup>1</sup> orig. constytueyons.

<sup>2</sup> 1 vij.

<sup>3</sup> orig. amuel.

<sup>4</sup> 1 vij, col. 2.



1 hyr two sones, gloryouse fiendes of our lord Ihesu  
 Cryst, whan she desyred that hyr two sones shold sytte,  
 one on the ryght syde, and that other on the lyfte,  
 4 whyche was thenne accomplyshed and termyned. &  
 therefore in the world ben thre syeges and chyrches  
 pryncypal, whyche crysten men by ryght owen texalte,  
 deffende and mayntene wyth all theyr myght. ¶ That  
 8 is to wete, the chyrche of Rome, The chyrche of Ephe-  
 sym of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, And the chyrche of  
 Saynt Iames in galyce. And yf any demaunded the  
 cause of these thre places and syeges pryncipal of cris-  
 12 tyente, the cause is ynough apparence. These thre  
 places ben honoured pryncypally by cause the synners  
 may haue theyr recours to them for tamenye theyr  
 lynes, and put away theyr synnes, & obteyne parlon  
 16 and forgyuenes. Fyrst these iij appostles, that is to say,  
 Saynt Peter, Saynt Iohan, & saynt James, haue pre-  
 ceeded all the other in the companye of Ihesu Cryst  
 whan he was in thys worlde, & haue ben called to hys  
 20 secretes, and that haue moost contynued wyth hym.  
 Thus by good ryght, the places in whyche they haue  
 conversed and contynued theyr lynes, and where theyr  
 bodyes resten, oughten to be honoured and to be  
 24 habundaunt in grace. ¶ Pryncypally, saynt Peter was  
 the fyrst and moost hye, & preched at Rome, and there  
 was martred & buryed; Therfor the chyrche of Rome  
 is enhaunced & exalted aboue al other chyrches. &  
 28 after saynt Iohan, whyche sawe the secretes of god in  
 his souper, & in ephesym he made the gospel '**In  
 principio erat verbum & cetera,**' And by his holy  
 prechyng hath conuerted thynfydellys to the holy  
 32 crysten fayth. And also saynt James, whyche had  
 grete payne in spayne and in galyce, for the honour of  
 god as wel for hys holy lyf, for hys myrales, as for hys  
 marterdom and hys sepulture, by good ryght ought the  
 memorye of them to be thorough the vnyuersal worlde."

Thus the three  
 chief churches in  
 the world are  
 those of Rome,  
 Ephesus,  
 and St. James,

because St. Peter,  
 St. Iohn, and St.  
 James were the  
 chief of the  
 Apostles.

The church of  
 Rome is the head,  
 because there St.  
 Peter is buried.

Ephesus is next,  
 because there St.  
 Iohn wrote his  
 Gospel,

and the church of  
 St. James is third.

<sup>1</sup>¶ The second' parte of the thyrd book con-  
teyneth x chapytres, & speketh of the  
treason made by ganellon, and' of the deth  
of the pyeres of Fraunce. 4

¶ How the treason was comprysed' by Ganel-  
lon, and of the deth of crysten men, &  
how ganellon is repreuyd by thauctour:  
capitulo primo 8

Marsurius and  
Bellegandus,  
kings of Sara-  
gossa, pretend to  
be ready to sub-  
mit to Charles.

**I**N this tyme were in Cezarye two kynges sarasyns  
moche myghty, that one was named marfurrius, and  
that other bellegandus, his brother, whyche were  
sente by thadmyral of babyllonne in to spayne, the 12  
whyche were vnder kynge Charles, & made to hym synge  
of loue and of subgectyon, and went by hys commaunde-  
ment holyly and vnder the shadowe of decepcyon.  
Themperour, seyng that they were not crysten, and for 16  
to gete seygnourye ouer them, he sente for ganellon, in  
whome he had fyaunce, that they shold doo baptyse  
them, or ellys that they shold sende to hym trybute in  
sygne of fydelite of their contre. Ganellon, the traytre, 20  
went thyder and dyd to them the message, and after  
that he had with them many deceyuable wordes, they  
sente hym ageyn to charles wyth xxx hors laden with  
gold & syluer, wyth clothes of sylke, <sup>2</sup>and other 24  
rychesses, & iiij hondred hors laden with swetewyn,  
for to gyue to the men of Warre for to drynke; & also  
they sente, aboue thys, to them a thousand fayr wymmen  
sarasyns, in grete poynte and yonge of age: And al thys 28  
in sygne of loue and of obeyssaunce. and after they  
gaf to ganellon xx hors charged wyth gold and syluer,  
sylkes, and other preeyosytees, that by hys moyen he  
shold brynge in to theyr hondes the companye of 32  
charles yf he myght doo it.

Charles sends  
Ganelon,  
requiring them to  
be baptizd and  
pay tribute.

The Saracens send  
presents to  
Charles, and in-  
duce Ganelon, by

bribes, to promise  
to betray the  
French army.

<sup>1</sup> 1 vij. back. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> 1 viij.

Thenne ganellon was surprysed wyth thys fals  
 auaryce, whych consumeth alle the swetenes of charyte  
 that is in persones, for to haue gold<sup>1</sup> or syluer & other  
 4 rychesses, & made a pacte an<sup>d</sup> couenaunte wyth the  
 sarasyns for to betraye hys lord<sup>2</sup>, hys neyghbours, &  
 crysten brethern, & sware that he wold not faylle them  
 of thenterpryse; but I merueylle moche of ganellon,  
 8 which made thys treason, wythoute to haue<sup>1</sup> cause  
 coloured ne Juste.

Ganelon bargains  
 to betray Charles  
 and his fellow-  
 countrymen.

¶ O wycked Ganelon, thou were comen of noblesse,  
 & thou hast doon a werke vylaynous: thou were ryche  
 12 & a grete lord<sup>2</sup>, and for money thou hast betrayed<sup>1</sup> thy  
 mayster. Emonge alle other thou were chosen for to  
 goo to y<sup>e</sup> sarasyns for grete trust: emonge al the other,  
 and for the fydelite that was thought in <sup>2</sup>the, thou  
 16 hast consented<sup>1</sup> to trayson, and<sup>2</sup> allone hast commysed<sup>1</sup>  
 Infydelite. Fro whens cometh thyn Inyquyte, but of  
 a fals wylle plunge<sup>1</sup> in thabysme of auaryce? Thy  
 naturel souerayn lord<sup>2</sup>, Roullan<sup>2</sup>, Olyuer, & the other,  
 20 what haue they doon to the? yf thou haue a wycked  
 hate ayenst one persone, wherfore consentest thou to  
 destroye thynnocentes? was there noo persone that thou  
 louedest whan to al crysten men thou hast ben traytre?  
 24 was there ony reason in the, whan thou hast ben capy-  
 tain ayenst the fayth? what auayleth the prowesse that  
 thou hast made in tyme passed, whan thyn ende shew-  
 eth that thou hast doo wyckednes? O fals auaryce, and<sup>2</sup>  
 28 ardeur of concupiscence! he is not the fyrst that by the  
 is comen to myscheyf. by the Adam was to god<sup>2</sup> dys-  
 obeysaunt, and<sup>2</sup> the noble cyte of Troye the graunde put  
 to vtire ruine and destructyon. Thus in thys manere  
 32 ganellon brought gold<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> syluer, wyn, wymmen, and  
 other rychesses, as tofore he had enterprysed<sup>1</sup>. Whan  
 charles sawe al this, he thought that al way doon in  
 good<sup>1</sup> entent and<sup>2</sup> equyte and<sup>2</sup> wythout barat. The grete

The author's re-  
 proach to Ganelon  
 for his treachery,

for which he had  
 no reason but  
 avarice,

which had ruined  
 so many.

Ganelon presents  
 the presents to  
 Charles,

who falls into the  
 trap.

<sup>1</sup> orig. hane.

<sup>2</sup> l viij. col. 2.

He takes the gold  
and silver himself,  
and gives the  
wine to his  
knights.

Charles, per-  
suaded by Gane-  
lon, sends his  
homewards.

Marsurius and  
Bellegandus lay  
an ambush in  
Roncesvalles,

which falls on the  
French.

The fight lasts all  
day.

At night the  
French soldiers  
get drunk on the  
wine.

Then 30,000 Sara-  
cens fall on them,

lordes & knyghtes toke the wyn for them, and charles  
took onely the gold and syluer, & the moyen people  
took the hethen wymmen. Themperour <sup>1</sup>gaf consente  
to the wordes of ganellon, For he spake moche wysely, 4  
and wrought in suche wyse that charles and alle hys  
hoost passed the porte of Cezarye; for ganellon dyd  
hym to vnderstonde that the kynges aforesayd wold  
become crysten and be baptyse, and swere fydelite to 8  
the emperour; And anone sent his peple tofore, and  
he came after in the ryere warde, & had sente Roulland  
& Olyuer & the moost speeial of hys subgettes wyth a  
thousand fyghtyng men, and were in Rouneyuale. 12  
Thenne the kynges Marfuryus & Bellegandus, after  
the counceyl of ganellon, wyth fyfty thousand sarasyns  
were hydde in a wode, abydyng & awaytyng the frenssh  
men, & there they abode ij dayes and two nyghtys, & 16  
deuyded theyr men in two partyes. In the first they  
put xx M sarasynz, and in that other they put xxx  
thousand sarasyns. ¶ In the vaunte garde of charles  
were xx thousand crysten men, whyche anone were 20  
assaylled wyth xx thousand sarasyns, and maad warre  
in suche wyse that they were constrayned to withdrawe  
them; For fro the mornyng vnto the houre of tyrece  
they seaced not to fyght and smyte on them, wherfore 24  
the crysten men were moche wery, and had nede to  
reste theym. Neuertheles, they <sup>2</sup>dronken wel of the  
good swete wyn of the sarasyns moche largely, And  
after many of them that were dronke went & laye by 28  
the wymmen sarasyns, & also wyth other that they  
had brought oute of fraunce, wherfore the wyll of god  
was that they shold al be dede, to thende that their  
martyrdom & passyon myght be the cause of theyr 32  
sauceyon & purgyng of their synne. For anone after  
the thyrty thousand sarasyns cam that were in the  
second batayl vpon the frenssh men soo Impetuovsly

<sup>1</sup> 1 viij, back.

<sup>2</sup> 1 viij, back. col. 2.

that they were al dede and slayn, Except Roulland, and slay all except  
bouldouyn, & Thyerry. The other were slayn and dede Roland, Thierry,  
and Baldwin.

with speres: somme slayn, *somme* rosted, and other  
4 quartred, and submysek to many tormentes. And whan  
thys dyscomfyture was doon, Ganellon was with charles,  
and also tharchebysshop Turpyn, whych knewe nothyng  
of this werke so sorouful, sauf onely the traytre, whyche  
8 supposed that they alle had be destroyed and put to  
deth. ¶ Of the languysshe that was comynge to Charles,  
he wyste not, how sone it was comyng.

¶ Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how  
12 Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mor-  
tally after that al his peple were slayn :  
capitulo : ij

16 **T**He bataylle, as I haue sayd tofore, was moche  
sharpe. whan Rolland, whyche was moche wery,  
retorned he recountred in hys waye a sarasyn  
moche fyers & blacke as boyllid pytche, and anone he  
took hym at thentre of a wode & bonde hym to a  
20 tree straytely, wythoute doying to hym any more harme,  
and after took and rode vpon an hylle for to see the  
hoost of the sarasyns, And the crysten men that were  
fledde : & saw grete quantyte of paynmys. Wherefore  
24 anone he sowned and blewe his horne of yuorye moche  
lowde. And wyth that noyse cam to hym an hundred  
cristen men wel arayed and habyled wythoute moo.  
And whan they were come to hym he retorned to the  
28 sarasyn that was bounde to the tree, And Roulland  
helde hys swerd ouer hym, sayeng that he shold deye,  
yf he shewed to hym not clerely the kyng Marfuryus,  
& yf he so wold do he shold not deye. The sarasyn  
32 was contente, and sware, that he shold gladly do it for  
to saue his lyf ; & soo he brought hym wyth hym vnto

Roland captures  
a Saracen,  
whom he ties to  
a tree,

and afterwards  
compels to point  
out to him Mar-  
surius.

The Saracen  
points out Mar-  
surius,

whom Roland  
kills,

The Saracens fly  
before him.

All the French  
are killed, except  
three.

Bellegandus and  
his men fly.

the place where they sawe the paynymis, and shewed to  
 Rolland Whyche was the kyng, whyche rode vpon a  
 rede hors, & other certeyn tokenes. And in thys poynt  
 Roulland, reconfermed in hys strengthe, trustyng<sup>1</sup> 4  
<sup>1</sup>veryly in the myght of god and in the name of Ihesus,  
 as a lyon entred in to the bataylle, & emonge them he  
 encountred a sarasyn whyche was gretter than ony  
 of the other, & gaf to hym so grete a stroke wyth 8  
 durandal vpon the hede that he clefted hym & hys hors  
 in two partes, that the one parte went on one syde &  
 that other on the other syde. wherfore the sarasyns  
 were soo troubled and abashed of the myght and puy- 12  
 saunce of Rolland, that they alle fledde tofore hym, &  
 thenne abode the kyng Marfuryus wyth a fewe folke.  
 Thenne rolland sawe thys kyng, And wythoute fere came  
 to hym and put hym to deth Incontynent. And alle 16  
 the hondred crysten men that were wyth Roulland in  
 thys recountre were dolorously slayn & put to deth,  
 Except onely bailluyn and Thyerry, whyche for fere  
 fledde in to the wode. But after that Rolland had 20  
 slayn kyng Marfuryus he was sore oppressyd, & in  
 suche wyse deteyned that wyth foure grete speres he  
 was smytyn and wounded mortally, & beten with  
 stoones, and hurte wyth dartes and other shotte mor- 24  
 tally. And not withstondyng these greuous hurte &  
 woundes, yet, maulgre al the sarasyns, he sprange out  
 of the bataylle, and saned hym self the best wyse he  
 myght. <sup>2</sup>Bellegandus, broder of Marfuryus, doubtyng 28  
 that helpe & ayde shold come to the crysten people,  
 retorne in to another contreye<sup>3</sup>, wyth hys peple moche  
 hastely. And temperour Charles had thenne passed  
 the montayne of Roneyuale, and knewe nothyng of 32  
 these thynges afore sayd, ne what had be doon.

<sup>1</sup> m j, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> m j, back.

<sup>3</sup> orig. coutreye.

¶ How Rolland deyd' holyly, after many mar-  
tyres & orysons made to god ful deuoutely,  
& of the complaynte maad' for hys swerde  
4 durandal : capitulo iiij

**R**olland the valyaunt, and champion of the crysten  
fayth, was moche sorouful of the crysten men, by  
cause they had noo socours ; he was moche wery,  
8 gretely abasshed, & moche afflebled in hys persone, for  
he had lost moche of his blode by his foure mortal  
woundes, of whyche the leste of them was suffysaunt  
for hym to haue deyed, and he had grete payne to gete  
12 hym oute fro the sarasyns for to haue a lytel com-  
memoracion of god tofore or the soule shold departe  
fro his body. so moche he enforced hym, that he came  
to the fote of a montayne, nygh to the porte of Cezarye,  
16 and brought hym self nygh to a rocke ryght by Ron-  
cyuale, vnder a tree in a fayr medowe. whan he sat  
down <sup>1</sup> on the grounde he behelde his swerde, the best  
that euer was, named durandal, whyche is as moche to  
20 say as gynyng an hard stroke, whyche was ryght fayr  
& rychely made : the handle was of fyn beryle, shynyng  
meruallously ; on hye it had a fayre crosse of gold, in  
the which was wryton the name of Ihesus. It was so  
24 good & fyn, that sonner shold the arme faylle than the  
swerde. he took it out of y<sup>e</sup> shethe & sawe it shyne  
moche bryght, and by cause it shold chaunge his maister  
he had moche sorowe in his hert. and wepyng, he sayd  
28 in thys maner pytously : ¶ “ O swerd of valure, the  
fayrest that euer was, thou were neuer but fayr, Ne  
neuer fonde I the but good : thou art long by mesure ;  
Thou hast be so moche honoured, that alwaye thou  
32 barest with the the name of the blessyd Ihesus, sauyour  
of the world, whyche hath endowed the wyth the power  
of god. who may comprehend thy valure ? Alas !

Roland, although  
greatly exhausted  
by loss of blood,

struggles nearly  
to Saragossa,

where he lies  
down.

He looks with  
grief on Durandal,

and weeping,  
bids it farewell.

<sup>1</sup> m j, back, col. 2.

Roland laments  
over his sword  
Durandal.

Determined that  
no Saracen shall  
ever have it,

tries to break it  
on a rock,

but Durandal  
cleaves the rock  
without harm to  
itself.

Roland blows his  
ivory horn so hard  
that it breaks,

and the veins of  
his neck burst.

Charles hears the  
horn and recog-  
nizes it,

who shal haue the after me? who someuer hath the  
shal neuer be vaynquysshed, alwaye he shal haue gooð  
fortune. Alas! what shal I more ouer say for the,  
goodð swerde? many sarasyns haue ben destroyed by 4  
the; thynfydels andð myscreauntes haue ben slayn by  
the; the name of godð is exaltedð by the; by the is  
made the path of <sup>1</sup>saument. O, how many tymes  
haue I by the auengeð thyniurye made to godð! O, 8  
how many men haue I smyton andð cutte a-sondre by  
the myddle! O, my swerde, whyche hast ben my com-  
fort andð my Joye, whych neuer hurtest persone that  
myght escape fro deth! O, my swerde, yf ony persone 12  
of noo value sholdð haue the & I knewe it, I sholdð deye  
for sorowe." After that Rollandð had wepte ynough, he  
had fere that somme paynym myght fynde it after his  
deth, wherfore he concluded<sup>2</sup> in hym self to breke it, 16  
andð toke it & smote it vpon a rocke wyth alle hys  
myght iij tymes wythoute hurtyng<sup>3</sup> ony thyng the  
swerde, and clefte the rocke to therthe, and coude in no  
wyse breke the swerde. Whan he sawe the faeyon and 20  
coude do nomore therto, he took his horne, whyche was  
of yuorye moche rychely made, and sowned & blewe it  
moche strongly, to the ende that yf there were ony  
crysten men hydde in the wodes or in the waye of 24  
theyr retournyng<sup>3</sup>, that they sholdð come to hym tofore  
they wente ony ferther, andð to fore he rendredð hys  
sowle. Thenne, seyng<sup>3</sup> that none came, he sownedð it  
ageyn by soo grete force andð vertu, andð so Impetuously, 28  
that the horne roof a sondre in the myddle, andð the  
vaynes of hys necke braken a sondre, andð the <sup>3</sup>synewes  
of his body stretcheden. Andð that noys or voys by the  
grace of godð came to the eeres of Charles, whyche was 32  
eyght myle fro hym. The Emperour, heeryng the  
horne, he knewe wel that Rollandð hadð blowen it, and  
wold haue retorneð ageyn, but Ganellon, the traytre,

<sup>1</sup> m ij.

<sup>2</sup> orig. concluded.

<sup>3</sup> m ij. col. 2.



- whyche knewe wel alle the fayt, dystourneð hym, in  
 sayeng<sup>r</sup> that Rolland<sup>h</sup> had<sup>h</sup> blowen his horne for somme  
 wyld beest that he chased<sup>h</sup> for his playsyr; For ofte  
 4 tymes he wold blowe hys horne for lytel thyng, and  
 that he shold<sup>h</sup> not doubte of nothyng. ¶ And thus he  
 dyd<sup>h</sup> the kynge to vnderstonde that he byleued<sup>h</sup> hym,  
 and made none other semblaunte. Neuertheles, Rol-  
 8 land, leyng<sup>r</sup> in thys sorowe, he peased<sup>h</sup> hys woundes also  
 wel as he myght, and<sup>h</sup> stretched<sup>h</sup> hymself on the grasse  
 to the fresshenes for to forgete hys thirst, whyche was  
 ouer grete.
- 12 ¶ Here vpon Baulduyn, hys brother, came vnto hym,  
 whyche was moche heuy and<sup>h</sup> sorouful for hys brother  
 Roulland<sup>h</sup>, whyche was in that necessitye. And anone  
 Roulland<sup>h</sup> sayd<sup>h</sup> to hym, “my frende and<sup>h</sup> my brother,  
 16 I haue so grete thirst that I must nedes deye yf I haue  
 not drynke to aswage my thirst.
- ¶ Baulduyn had<sup>h</sup> grete payne in goyng<sup>r</sup> here and<sup>h</sup> there,  
 and<sup>1</sup> coude fynde no water, and came to hym ageyn &  
 20 sayde he coude fynde none; and<sup>h</sup> in grete anguysshe he  
 lepte<sup>2</sup> on Roulandes hors, and<sup>h</sup> rode for to feteche charles,  
 For he knewe wel that rolland<sup>h</sup> was nyghe hys deth.  
 Anone after came to hym Thyerry, due of Ardayne,  
 24 whyche wepte vpon Rolland<sup>h</sup> so contynuelly that he myzt  
 not speke, but with grete payne Rolland confessyd hym  
 and<sup>h</sup> dysposed<sup>h</sup> hym of hys conseyence. neuertheles, that  
 same day Rolland<sup>h</sup> had<sup>h</sup> receyued<sup>h</sup> the body of our lord<sup>h</sup>,  
 28 For the custome was that the subgettes of Charles that  
 day whyche they shold<sup>h</sup> fyght were confessyd & commed  
 wythoute fayllyng by men of the chyrche, which alway  
 were wyth them. Rolland, whyche knew hys ende by  
 32 entyer contemplacyon, hys eyen lyfte vp to heuen, &  
 hys hondes loyned<sup>h</sup>, al stretched<sup>h</sup> in the merlowe, began  
 to say thus: “Fayre lord<sup>h</sup> god<sup>h</sup>, my maker, my redemour,  
 sone of the glorious moder of comforte, thou knowest

but Ganelon per-  
 suades him that  
 Roland is hunt-  
 ing.

Roland stretches  
 himself on the  
 grass.

Baldwin comes to  
 him.

Roland asks for  
 water, but Bald-  
 win can find none,

and rides off to  
 fetch Charles.

Roland confesses  
 himself,

and knowing his  
 end is near,

commends him-  
 self to God,

<sup>1</sup> in ij, back.

<sup>2</sup> orig. lefte

myn entency[o]n, thou knowest what I haue doon for  
 praying for mercy the bounthe that is in the. by thy grete mercy of  
 whiche thou art enuyronned, by the grace whiche in  
 through the the haboundeth, by the meryte of thy passyon, holy 4  
 merits of Christ, and bytter, with a good and humble hert I requyre the  
 y<sup>t</sup> tofore the thys day my faul-tes, synnes, and ygnor-  
 aunces may be pardoned to me, and take noo regarde  
 to the trespasses that I haue doon to the; but beholde 8  
 that I deye for the, and in the fayth that thou hast  
 ordeyned. remembre that thou hengest on the tree of  
 the crosse for the synnars, and so as thou hast redemed  
 me, I beseeche the that I be not loste. Alas! my maker 12  
 god! omnypotent, wyth good wyll I departed oute of  
 my contreye for to defende thy name, and for to mayn-  
 tene crystendom. ¶ Thou knowest that I haue suffred  
 and for the dan- many anguysshes of hungre, of thirst, of hete, of colde, 16  
 gers and troubles he has gone through for the  
 Christian religion. & many mortal woundes. And day and nyght to the,  
 my god, I yelde me culpable; I mystrust not thy mercy.  
 thou art pyetous; thou art comen for the synnars; thou  
 pardonest marye magdelene and the good thief on the 20  
 crosse, by cause they retorned vnto the; they were  
 synnars as I am; lyke as they dyd I crye the mercy,  
 & better yf I coude saye it. thou byheldest how Abra-  
 ham was obeyssaunt to the of hys sone ysaac, wherfor 24  
 he ferde moche the better; byholde me how I am obe-  
 dyent to the commaundements of the chyrche: I byleue  
 in the, I loue the aboue all other, I loue my neyghbour.  
 ¶ O good lord, I beseeche the to pardoune & forgyue 28  
 alle theym that thys day ben deed in <sup>2</sup>my companye,  
 & that they may be saued. Also, my maker, I requyre  
 the to take hede of the pacyence of Job, for which he  
 was moche the better, that I deye here for thirst, and 32  
 am allone. I am wounded mortally, and may not helpe  
 my self, and take in pacyence alle the sorowe that I  
 suffre, and am therwyth content whan it pleaseth the.

He prays for the  
 souls of his com-  
 rades.

<sup>1</sup> in ij. back. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> in ij.

as al thys is trewe, pardone me, comferte my spyryte,  
receyue my soule, and brynge me to reste perdurable."

Whan Rolland had prayed thus, he sette hys handes  
4 on hys body, hoklyng hys flesshe, and after sayd thre  
tymes, ¶ "**Et in carne mea videbo deum saluatorem**  
**meum,**" and after layed his handes on hys eyen, and  
sayd, "**Et oculi isti conspecturi sunt,** In thys  
8 flesshe that I holde I shal see my sauour, and these  
eyen shal beholde hym;" and after he sayd that he  
sawe thynges celestyal, whyche the eyen of mankynde  
myght not see, ne the eeres here, ne the hert thynke,  
12 the glorie whyche god hath maad redy to them that  
loue hym; and in sayeng, "**In manus tuas, domine,**  
**commendo spiritum meum,**" he layed hys armes vpon  
hys body in maner of a crosse, & gaf and rendred hys  
16 soule to god the xvj kalendes of Juy.

Then he crosses  
his hands on his  
breast,

and saying, "Into  
thy hands I com-  
mend my spirit,"  
expires.

1¶ Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland',  
and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how  
he complayned' hym pyetously, & other  
20 maters: capitulo iiij

"**T**He day that Roulland the martir rendred hys  
soule vnto god, I, Turpyn, archebysshop of  
Raynes, was in the valeye of Rounceyuale, tofore  
24 charles the Emperour, and sayd masse for the soules  
whyche were passed oute of thys world. And as I  
was in the secrete of the masse I was rauysshed, and  
herde the aungellys of heuen synge and make grete  
28 melodye. And I wist not what it myght be, ne wher-  
fore they soo dyd. And as I sawe the aungellys mounte  
in to heuen on hye, I sawe comyng a grete legyon of  
knyghtes, alle blacke, ageynst me, the whyche bere a  
32 praye, wherof they maad grete noyse and desraye.  
whan they were tofore me in passyng, I sayd to them

"The day that  
Roland died, I,  
Turpin,

was celebrating  
mass before  
Charles,

and in the  
'secret' I saw a  
vision of black  
spirits passing  
with great noise,

and I asked them who they were, and<sup>1</sup> demaunded<sup>1</sup> who they<sup>1</sup> were, & what they bare. One of the deuylles ansuerd<sup>1</sup> & sayd<sup>1</sup>, ‘we bere the kyng Marfuryus in to helle, for long a-noon he hath wel deserved<sup>1</sup> it. And Roulland<sup>1</sup>, your trompette, wyth 4 Mychel thaungel & many other in his companye, is brouzt in to Joye perdurable to heuen.’ And as the masse was fynnyshed<sup>1</sup> I <sup>2</sup>recounted<sup>1</sup> to charles the vysyon whyche I had seen, how thangellys of heuen bare the 8 soule of Roulland<sup>1</sup> in to paradys, & the deuylles bare the soule of a sarasyn in to helle. Thus, as I sayd and, while I was speaking, came Baldwin, and told us of the slaughter of our men. these wordes, baldwyn, whyche rode on Rollandes hors, cam hastely and said to charles how the crysten men 12 were dede & bytrayed, and<sup>1</sup> how Rolland<sup>1</sup> was hurte, and<sup>1</sup> in what estate he had lefte hym. Assone as he had tolde thys, the erye was made thurgh thoost that euery man shold<sup>1</sup> retorne backe, & there was a grete 16 bruyt. But themperour Charles, to whome thys mater touched at the hert more than to ony other, anaunced<sup>1</sup> hym for to goo thyder; and<sup>1</sup> whan he came he fonde Rolland expyred<sup>1</sup>, hys hondes in crosse vpon hys vysage 20 al stretched<sup>1</sup>. And<sup>1</sup> anone Charles fyl down vpon hym, and<sup>1</sup> began to wepe moche tenderly, smytynge<sup>1</sup> hym on his vysage, rendyng his clothes, & tormented hys body, & myght not speke a grete whyle. whan he was re- 24 turned<sup>1</sup> to hym self by ardeur of dylectyon and exerecyte of sorowe, he sayd<sup>1</sup> in thys wyse: ‘O comferte of my body, honour of frenssh men, suerd of Iustyce, spere that myght not bowe, hawberck that myght not be 28 broken, helme of helthe, resemblyng<sup>1</sup> to Indas<sup>3</sup> machabens in prowess, samblant to sampson <sup>4</sup>in strengthe, & to Absalon in beaulte! O ryght dere neuw, fayr & wyse, in batayl ryal! O destroyer of the sarasyns, de- 32 fendour of crysten men, walle of clergie, staffe to wydowes & of poure orphelins, Relouer of chyrrches,

<sup>1</sup> orig. w. hothey.<sup>2</sup> m. iij, back.<sup>3</sup> orig. Indas<sup>4</sup> m. iij, back, col. 2.

tonge of trouthe, Mouthe wythout lesyng<sup>t</sup>, trewe in al  
 Iugement, prynce of bataylle, conduytour of the frendes  
 of god, Augmentour of the crysten fayth, & byloned  
 4 of euery persone! Alas! why haue I brought the in  
 to a straunge contreye? wherfor am I not dede with<sup>1</sup>  
 the? O Roulland, wherfor leuest thou me heuy &  
 sorouful? helas! caytyf that I am. what shal I doo?  
 8 Alas! sorouful, whyther shal I goo? I praye to almyghty  
 goð that he conserue the; I requyre thangellys of heuen  
 that they be in thy companye; I requyre the marters,  
 of whom thou art of the nombre, y<sup>t</sup> they wyl receyue  
 12 the in to the Ioye *perdurable*. alway I shal remembre  
 the wepyng, alway I shal fele thy departyng, as danyd  
 dyd of natan & of absalon. Alas! Rolland, thou goost  
 in to lyf & Ioye *perdurable*, & leuest me in thys world  
 16 sorouful. Thou art in heuen in consolacion, & I am in  
 wepynges & tribulacions. Alle the world is euyl con-  
 tent of thy deth, & thangellys hath bronght the in com-  
 forte.' In thys manere and otherwyse Charles bewept  
 20 and<sup>2</sup> soroweful his neuwe Roulland. And he made hys  
 tentys to be sette vp there, for to lodge there al that  
 nyght, & dyd doo make grete fyres and grete lyghtes  
 for to wathe the body of Roulland; & after he dyd  
 24 do enoynte hys body with myrre & baulme and other  
 thynges aromatiques, for to conserue the body from euyl  
 sanour; and his obsequyes were made, & hys enty-  
 erment with grete prayers, offrynges, & almeses in grete  
 28 contemplacion."

And he lamented  
 over him as David  
 over Absalom,

and, after, caused  
 his body to be  
 embalmied.

¶ How Olyuer was founden slayn, and' of the  
 deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of  
 ganellon, whyche was hydous: capitulo v

32 **I**N the morne erly, charles came where the bataylle  
 had been with his peple, and there they fonde the  
 noble Olyuer stretchyd oute in maner of a crosse,

Next morning the  
 body of Oliver is  
 found,

<sup>1</sup> orig. thith.

<sup>2</sup> in iijj.

fastened to four  
stakes,  
and flayed.

Charles vows he  
will never cease  
till he has avenged  
the death of his  
men.

By a miracle the  
day continues till  
he overtakes the  
Saracens, and

slays 4000 of  
them.

Then Charles  
enquires who was  
the traitor.

Thierry accuses  
Ganelon.

Charles appoints  
a knight to fight  
for Ganelon.

Thierry slays him,

whyche was fastned to foure stakes with iiij cordes & sharply bounden, and fro the necke to the nayles or vngles of his feet and handes he was flayn; he was al to-hewen, and shotte & hurte wyth speres, sharp dartes, 4 quarellys, & arowes, & beten wyth staues; he was al to-faisshe<sup>1</sup> and broken. wherfore the crye of many of the crysten began to renewe for the hydous deth of Olyuer, and of many other. wherfore Charles <sup>1</sup>swore by 8 god almyghty that he wold neuer cesse tyl that he had founden the sarasyns, & forthwyth he went wyth his hoost & noblesse. and by cause that the paynmys were moche<sup>2</sup> ferre fro them, god shewed a fayr myracle; 12 For that same day was prolonged thre dayes longe wythout that the sonne remeue<sup>3</sup> ony thyng. and they fonde the sarasyns by a ryuer named Ebra in Cezarye, whyche rested them, and ete & dranke at theyr ease, 16 wythout doubtyng of ony thyng. and charles & hys people came vpon them so Impetuously that in a litle whyle there were slayn iiij M sarasyns, and the other fledde & saued them self. Thenne themperour, seyng 20 that he myght goo no farther, retorned to rounyuale, And began tenquyre vpon the fayt of trayson, and who had doon it, & what man. Thenne he was enforme<sup>4</sup> that Ganellon had made it, and that was the comune 24 oppynyon of them alle. And emonge alle other Thyerry accused and appeled hym of the treason, and that he wold fyght in the quarel. ¶ For Thyerry had know-leeche by the sarasyn that rolland had bounden to a tree. 28 The kyng charles ordeyne<sup>5</sup> a knyght for ganellon, named pynable, to fygt ayenst thyerry. And whan these ij champyons were in the lystes, <sup>3</sup>anone pynalle was slayne by Thyerry; and as wel by thys moyen as 32 by other, it appere<sup>6</sup> clerely that ganellon had bytrayed them. wherfore the emperour Charles, wythoute goyng ony farther, dyd to take iiij grete horses, & made to sytte

<sup>1</sup> m iiij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> orig. moebe.

<sup>3</sup> m iiij, back.

on them iiij stronge men, & bonde ganellon to two  
 horses by his ij handes, and bonde the two feet to the  
 other ij horses, & made hym to be drawn with the one  
 4 hors toward y<sup>e</sup> eest, & that other toward the weste, that  
 other ayenst the southe, and that other toward the  
 north. In this maner eche of the hors drewe forth his  
 quarter of the body of the parte whyche he was  
 8 bounden vnto.

and Charles  
 has Ganelon  
 drawn in pieces  
 by horses.

¶ How after the thynges afore sayd' charles  
 gaf thankynges & preysynges to god &  
 saynt Denys, & of the constytucions that  
 12 he made in fraunce: capitulo vj

**W**Han thexecueyon was doon of Ganellon and  
 executed, charles & hys people cam in to the  
 place where the frensshe men had be slayn, &  
 16 bygan to knowe theyr parents, frendes, & lordes, for to  
 bere them in to halowed place. they caryed somme  
 vpon theyr horses; Other salted them wyth salte, for  
 to mayntene them to brynge them in to theyr contreye;  
 20 Other buryed them in the same place, & <sup>1</sup>some bare  
 theym on their sholdres. Somme ennoynted them wyth  
 oyle and myrre, & somme wyth baulme the best wyse  
 they myght. Neuertheles, there were two cymtoyres  
 24 or chireheyredes, ryght deuoute & pryneypally halowed  
 emonge the other, whych were sacred and blessyd wyth  
 vij bysshops. That one of the cymtoyres was in erles,  
 and that othe[r] in burdegale. & Saynt maxymyen of  
 28 ays, Saynt Trophyn of arles, poule of nerbonne, Saynt  
 Saturyn of Tholouse, saynt fontyn of poytyers, saynt  
 Mareel of lymoges, and saynt Eutrope of xayntes had  
 sacred and halowed them. In whyche places were  
 32 buryed the moost party of the frensshe men slayn and  
 destroyed in rouneynade. Themperour dyd do bere

The French army  
 attend to their  
 dead comrades:

some they bury,  
 others they em-  
 balm and take  
 with them.

Two cemeteries  
 are made, one at

Arles, the other  
 at Bordeaux,

where the French  
 dead are buried.

<sup>1</sup> in iiij. back, col. 2.

Roland is buried  
at Blois, at the  
Church of St.  
Romain.

Oliver and others  
are buried at  
Bordeaux.

Charles gives all  
the land for seven  
miles round to the  
church of St.  
Romain, for the

sake of Roland,

and appoints  
masses for the  
dead.

At Arles are  
buried Samson,  
Naymes, and  
others.

Constantine's  
body is taken to  
Rome.

rolland, the glorious marter, vpon two mules couerd  
wyth clothes of sylke, honourably vnto bloye, & in the  
chyrche of saynt Romain, the whyche he had edefyed  
and founded wyth chanonnes regular, he dyd rychely 4  
burye hym, and wyth grete magnyfycence ; & on hye,  
ouer his sepulture, he dyd do sette hys swerde, and at  
hys feet he dyd do sette his horne of yuorye. Not  
wythstondyng, after, the horne was taken awaye and 8  
borne to Saynt Seueryn at bourdeaws. At bourdeaulx  
were buryed olyuer & gaudeboy, <sup>1</sup>kyng of Fryse, Ogyer,  
kyng of denmark ; and Crestayn, kyng of bretayne ;  
Garyn, due of Lorayne, and many other. As for Eafe- 12  
rus, kyng of bourdeaulx ; Euglerius, kyng of guyan ;  
lambert, kyng of bourges, and galerus reygnant, with  
v M other, charles gaf xij C vnces of siluer of money  
that tyme courant, & as moche of talents of gold, & 16  
many robes and mete to poure peple, for sauacyon of  
their soules. and al the londe seven myle aboute he gaf  
to the chyrche of saynt Romain, and maad it subgette  
to that relygion. And al bloye, wyth thappertenautes 20  
and the see ayenst the sayd terrytorye, he gaf semblably  
to the sayd chyrche for charyte & lone of Rolland, and  
ordeyned it so for euer. and on the day of their pas-  
syon he ordeyned that in the same place shold euery 24  
yere perpetuelly xxx poure men be fedde and clothed  
competently, and thyrty messys songen for them that  
there were buryed and entyered, and for alle them that  
were dede in spayne for the crysten fayth. In Arles 28  
was buryed the counte of lengres ; samson, due of bour-  
goyne ; Naymes, due of bauyere ; Arnold de bellandus,  
and Albert bourgoynon, and other fyue knyghtes, wyth  
ten thousand other moyen peple. Constantyn, pro- 32  
uoste of <sup>2</sup>Rome, was borne to Rome wyth many other  
Romainys, and for y<sup>e</sup> remedye of theyr soules them-  
perour gaf in arles for almesse xij C vnces of syluer

<sup>1</sup> m v.

<sup>2</sup> m v, col. 2.



and xij talentes of gold, whyche was worth a grete  
somme of gold & syluer courant in that tyme.

¶ How Charles wente in to Almayne, where  
4 he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed  
to 'Turpyn, and' of hys buryeng' Impery-  
ally : capitulo vij

- 8 **A**fter the thynges afore sayd, Themperour charles Charles goes to  
and Turpyn, wyth the other, came and passet by Vienna,  
vienne; & there Turpyn tharchebysshop, a moche  
holy man, abode, for he was wery and moche febled  
of the payne that he had had for the fayth in spayne. where he leaves  
12 and Charles wente to parys, & anone after he assemaled Turpin,  
al the nobles and the moost grettest lordes of hys con-  
treye, for to establyssh certayn ordynaunces, and for to  
gyue thankynges to god & to saynt Denys of the vye- and thence to  
16 torie that he had obteyned in his tyme vpon the sara- Paris.  
syns, paynymys, & myscreauntes. And after that he  
had thanked god and saynt denys, and to his chyrche  
fast by parys, lyke as saynt Poule thapostle and saynt  
20 Clement the pope had<sup>1</sup> doon in tyme passed, he maad  
constytueyon entyere that al the kynges of Fraunce  
present & to come shold obeye to the pastour that shold  
be for y<sup>e</sup> tyme of that chyrche, and that neuere kyng<sup>t</sup>  
24 shold be crowned wythoute the pastour of that chyrche,  
ne the bysshop of parys shold not be receyued at Rome  
wythout hys consent & comandement. And he gaf  
many rychesses to y<sup>t</sup> chyrche, & in token that fraunce  
28 was gyuen to that chyrche of saynt denys, he ordeyned  
that euery possessour in al y<sup>e</sup> nacyon of fraunce shold  
gyue & be bounden to gyue to the chyrche of saynt  
denys, for to edefye & augmente it, iiij pens of money  
32 courant yerely & perpetuelly, & al they that shold gyue  
it wyth a good wylle, yf they were of bonde & serue

Charles goes to  
Vienna,

where he leaves  
Turpin,

and thence to  
Paris.

He ordains that  
all kings of France  
shall be crowned  
at St. Denis,

and all bishops  
should be subject  
to the priest of  
that church.

Also that every  
person should pay  
to it yearly four  
pence,

<sup>1</sup> in v, back.

and any bondmen  
who paid this  
should be free.

He prays for the  
souls of his  
soldiers.

St. Denis ap-  
pears to him,

and declares that  
all who pay the  
annual pence to  
his church, shall  
have forgiveness  
of their sins.

And this payment  
was called the  
Frank of St.  
Denis,

whence the coun-  
try has its name  
of Fraunce.

condycion, he wold<sup>e</sup> they shold be franke & free of con-  
dycyon. And<sup>e</sup> after anone these thynges ordeyned, he  
went & came tofore the body of saynt denys moche  
denoutely, & there he prayed the glorious saynt that he 4  
wold<sup>e</sup> praye vnto our lord Ihesu Cryst, that alle they y<sup>t</sup>  
were dede of the crysten fayth in the tyme that he had<sup>e</sup>  
regned<sup>e</sup> that they myght be saued<sup>e</sup>, and<sup>e</sup> that the payne  
that they had<sup>e</sup> taken myzt be to them the crowne of mar- 8  
tyrdom in the glorye perdurable; & in semblable wyse  
he prayed<sup>e</sup> for al them that wold<sup>e</sup> <sup>1</sup>paye gladly the pens  
aforesayd<sup>e</sup> to his chyrche. As god<sup>e</sup> wold<sup>e</sup>, that nyght  
folowyng<sup>e</sup> saynt denys appyered<sup>e</sup> to hym, & sayd<sup>e</sup> to 12  
hym in thys manere: "O kynge, vnderstonde me,  
knowe thou, that I haue made prayer to god, my maker,  
& he hath graunted that alle they that haue been ayenst  
the sarasyns with the haue pardon of al theyr trespasses, 16  
& that wyllingly shal paye the penyes for the edefy-  
cacyon of my chyrche & augumentyng the seruyce of  
god<sup>e</sup>, they shal haue amendement of lyf and pardon of  
theyr synnes." This vysyon on the morne themperour 20  
recounted to hys peple, lyke as he had herd, by cause  
they shold wyth a good wylle pay the penyes that he  
had ordeyned; & he that gaf it was called the franke of  
saynt denys, by cause that he was free and<sup>e</sup> quyte of al 24  
seruage by the commandement of the kyng. After  
came the custome that that londe whyche was called  
Gallia loste hys name, & was called fraunce, as it is  
named<sup>e</sup> at thys day, & Fraunce is as moche to say as 28  
free of al seruage anenst al peple; and<sup>e</sup> therefore the  
lordes of Fraunce for this cause emonge al crysten men  
owen to be honoured<sup>e</sup> & praysed<sup>e</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> m v. back, col. 2.

¶ The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, & of  
his deth at Acon, & of hys sepulture:  
capitulo viij

- 4 <sup>1</sup> **T**He kyng Charles contynued gloriously his lyf  
in vertuose operacyons, And whan he felte the  
deelyne of hys lyf he went vnto Acon, where he  
had tofore doon moche good, & enobled a chyrche of  
8 our lady the rounde, the whyche he dyd do make, and  
gaf therto grete tresour of relyques of bodyes of sayntes,  
of gold & syluer, of clothes of sylke, & other precy-  
sytees mervayllous, and there he deyed in the yere of  
12 hys age lxxij. & for the magnyfycence of hys werkes  
he was called charles the grete; & he had iij sones  
thezue lyuyng, of whom the fyrst was named Charles,  
the second Pepyn, & the thyrd Lowys; & also he had  
16 iij daughters, that one was named Rotrudys, that other  
berga, & the thyrd gylla. & whan he knewe that he  
myght noo longer lyue, hys sone lowys, whome he had  
ordeyned for speccial loue kyng of guyan, he lefte to  
20 hym the mageste Imperyal. For to knowe the holynes  
& the glorious ende of Charles, & how he was saued in  
heuen, and renomed an holyman, The deuoute Turpyn,  
archebysshop of Raynes, sayth in this manere, “I Tur-  
24 pyn, archbyshop of Raynes, was in vyenue in the  
chyrche tofore thaulter, & was ranysshed in sayeng the  
psalm, ‘**Deus in adiutoryum**’ <sup>2</sup> **meum intende.**’ I sawe  
a companye of blacke peple lyke Ethyopyens, whych  
28 were in quantyte Innumerable, whyche went toward  
lorayne; and I sawe one tofore hys felowes, & I de-  
maunded hym whyther al they wente. the whyche,  
beyng constraigned to ansuere, sayd, ‘we alle goo to  
32 Acon to the dethe of Charles, whyche lyeth a-dyeng.  
And we wyl see yf we may haue hys soule for to bere  
in to helle to perpetuel dampnacyon.’ Thenne I sayd

Charles retires to  
Acon,

where he dies at  
the age of 72,

leaving three sons

and three daugh-  
ters.

His youngest son,  
Louis, succeeds  
him.

Turpin, at Vienna,

sees a vision of  
devils,

who tell him of  
the death of  
Charles, and that  
they mean to have  
his soul.

<sup>1</sup> m vj.

<sup>2</sup> orig. adintoryum.

<sup>3</sup> m vj, col. 2.

to hym, 'I adiure the by the vertue of the name of  
our Lord Ihesu cryst that, wythoute fayllyng, after that  
ye haue doon, that thou retorne by me.'” Anone after,  
or he coude fynyshe hys psalme, the deuylles cam 4  
retournyng ageyn in the same ordre that they wente.  
“And thenne I sayd to hym that I had spoken to by-  
fore, ‘what haue ye doon there as ye haue been?’  
that same deuyl ansuerd, that ‘James of galyce, frende 8  
to charles, hath ben moche contraye to vs, for whan  
we were redy for to receyue hys soule, and had egally  
departed his good dedes and his euyl, he brought so  
many stones & tymbre of chyrches, whyche he had doo 12  
make in the name of hym, that his good dedes sur-  
mounted moche his euyl dedes, wherfore we myght  
haue noo thyng ne parte;’ & thys sayd, the deuyl  
‘vanysshed awaye,” & soo he loste hys vysyon. Thus 16  
Charles, in the moneth of februarye, rendred his soule  
to god holyly. For after that he returned fro spayn he  
dyd but languyshe & appayre in hys body toward hys  
deth; & in hys ende he ordeyned many almesses, & 20  
to say many masses & psaulters. And the vysyon that  
the gloryous archebysshop Turpyn sawe, is sygnyfy-  
cacion that he whyche maynteneth and edefyeth  
chyrches in thys present world, that he maketh pre- 24  
paracyon of hys sye in heuen. His sepulture was  
moche honourable emonge al the sepultures of the world,  
noble and ryche excellently, and so fayr that it myzt  
not be amended. and ouer hys tombe was maad an 28  
arche of gold & syluer and of precyous stones, com-  
prysed by grete scyence. & thyder came Leo the pope,  
accompanied wyth prynces Romainys, archebyssshops,  
byssshops, Abbottes, Dukes, Erles, and many other 32  
lordes, and dyd do make a fayre representacyon of the  
body of Charles, clad rychely and Imperyally with a  
fayre crowne of gold sette on his hede, & satte vpon

The devils return,

and tell him that  
St. James pro-  
duced so many  
good works done  
by Charles, that

they cannot have  
his soul.

Charles is buried  
with great mag-  
nificence,  
in a tomb over

which was set a  
figure of himself,  
crowned and  
seated on his  
throne.

a chayer of gold<sup>1</sup> moche fayre and shynnyng, and<sup>2</sup> resembled wel a notable Iuge lyuyng. and they sette vpon his knees notably the texte of the four gospels in  
4 fayre letters <sup>1</sup>of gold, & wyth the ryzt hande he helde the lettre, & in the lyfte hande he helde the ceptre Imperial, moche ryche; & by cause the heed<sup>2</sup> shold not encline to eyther syde, hit was vnder set wyth a chayne  
8 of gold & susteyned. And the crowne that was on hys heed<sup>2</sup> raught to the arche, whiche was al aboute wel made, & the conduytes of the sepulture were replenysshed with al good odours aromatyques & precyous, and<sup>2</sup> after  
12 closed & shette moche subtylly, & honourably kepte, as it was wel worthy for to be doon.

On his knees  
were placed the  
Gospels,

and in his left  
hand the sceptre.

# ¶ Thexcusacyon of thauctour. ix

16 **T**His werke, accomplysshed to the playsyr of god<sup>1</sup> tofore wryton, conteyneth thre bookes, by the  
chapytres deuyded, as it appereth openly to the reders, and I haue made them thre, after that I haue comprysed in the separacyon and<sup>2</sup> deuydyng of the  
20 matyer. Of whyche the fyrst book speketh of the begynnyng of fraunce, and<sup>2</sup> of the fyrst crysten kyng of fraunce, whyche was named Cloys by the moeyen of his wyf clotildys, in descendyng to kyng Pepyn, fader of  
24 themperour Charles, In the honour of whome thys book is composed for the moost parte; to the whyche Pepyn the lygnage of <sup>2</sup>kyng Cloys took an ende in successyon of the Royaulme of Fraunce. And the sayd fyrst book  
28 sayth, more ouer, how Charles was nourryshed, of hys corpulence, of hys etyng, of hys strengthe, of hys seynce, & other werkes of magnyfycece. The second  
book speketh of the bataylle that Olyuer dyd ayenst  
32 Fyerabras, the meruayllous geaunte, sone of ballant, Admyral of spayne, a puyssaunt kyng; & al the fyrst parte of the second book is attributed to noble olyuer,

This work contains three books,  
divided into chapters.

The first book  
tells of the begin-  
ning of France,

and of the youth  
of Charles.

The second book,  
of the duel be-  
tween Oliver and  
Fierabras.

<sup>1</sup> m vj, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> m vij.

The third book  
treats of the con-  
quest of Spain by  
Charles,

of the treason of  
Ganelon,

and the death of  
Charles.

and<sup>t</sup> in the honour of hym. After ye shal fynde how  
the peres of fraunce were deteyned<sup>t</sup> in Aygremore and<sup>t</sup>  
pnt in surete, & after saued fynably by florypes, the  
curtoys doughter of the sayd ballant; And<sup>t</sup> the holy 4  
relyques recoured<sup>t</sup>, and<sup>t</sup> other maters of grete mer-  
uaylles. The iij book speketh how, by reuelacyon of  
saynt Iames, charles went and conquerd spayne &  
galyce, where as he dy<sup>t</sup> operacions vertuous, & made 8  
constytucyons of sauacyon, wyth many bataylles doon  
by hym and<sup>t</sup> hys subgettes; and fynably of the trayson  
of Ganelon, by the whyche the deth of Rolland<sup>t</sup> was  
pyctous, the deth of Olyuer dolorouse, and of the other 12  
peres of crysten knyghtes slayn & dede. And fynably  
the deth of Charles themperour, as tofore is sayd<sup>t</sup> and  
wryton. and<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup>after that ony persone wyl here or rede  
of thys matere, the table made atte begynnyng shal 16  
shewe it to hym lyghtly, yf it be hys playsyr to here or  
rede of y<sup>e</sup> werk in thys book composed<sup>t</sup>.

¶ Thenuoye of thauctour: ca.

x

This work I have  
written to be a  
good example to  
all,  
how to rule their  
lives.

**A**S I haue sayd<sup>t</sup> at the begynnyng of thys present 20  
werke, the escriptures and<sup>t</sup> feates somme haue  
ben reduced<sup>t</sup> in wrytyng<sup>t</sup> for to be in memorye,  
to the ende that they that haue doon wel, be to vs  
ensaunple in ensyewyng<sup>t</sup> and<sup>t</sup> folowyng them, & they 24  
that haue doon euyl may be cause to rewle our lyf for  
to come to the porte of helthe. For the comune vnder-  
stondyng<sup>t</sup> is more contente to reteyne parables and  
examples for the ymagynacion locall, than to symple 28  
auctoryte, the whyche is reteyned<sup>t</sup> by vnderstondyng,  
and<sup>t</sup> also semblably thystories spekyng<sup>t</sup> of our lord<sup>t</sup>  
Ihesu cryst, of hys myrales, & of his vertuous sub-  
gettes, enery man ouzt gladly to here and retenne them. 32  
& it is so, that at the requeste of the sayd venerable

And I have made  
it at the request

- man to fore named, Maister henry bolonmyer, chanonne  
of lausanne, I haue been Incyted to translate & reduyse  
in prose in to Frensshe the mater tofore reduced. as  
4 moche as toucheth the fyrst & the thyrd <sup>1</sup>book I haue  
taken & drawn oute of a book named myrroure hys-  
toryal for the moost parte; & the second book I haue  
onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frensshe.  
8 And without other Informacyon than of the same book,  
I haue reduced it in to prose, substancyally wythout  
fayllyng, by orlynaunce of chapytres & parties of the  
sayd book, after the mater in the same conteyned.  
12 And yf in al thys book I haue mesprysed or spoken  
otherwyse than good langage, substancyally ful of good  
vnderstandyng to al makers & clerkes, I demaunde  
correxyon and amendement, and of the defaultes par-  
16 don. For yf the penne hath wryton euyl, the hert  
thought it neuer, but entended to say wel; & also my  
wytte & vnderstandyng, whyche is ryght lytel, can not  
vttre ne wryte thys matere withoute error. Neuer-  
20 theles, who so vnderstandeth wel the lettre shal wel  
compryse myn entencyon, by which he shal fynde  
nothyng but moeyen for to come to saluacyon. To the  
whyche may fynably come alle they that wyllingly  
24 rede, or here, or do thys book to be redde. Amen.

of Master Bolo-  
myer,  
Canon of Lau-  
sanne.

The first and third  
book I haue trans-  
lated from the  
*Speculum His-  
toriale*, and the  
second from an  
old French  
romance.

I pray all who  
may find a fault  
in it to pardon it,

and attribute to  
my want of learn-  
ing, not my good  
will.

- ¶ And by cause I, Wylliam Caxton, was desyred  
& requyred by a good and synguler frend of myn,  
Maister wylliam dau<sup>2</sup>beny, one of the tresorers of the  
28 Iewellys of the noble & moost crysten kyng, our na-  
turel and sonerayn lord, late of noble memorye, kyng  
Edward the fourth, on whos soule Ihesu haue mercy.  
To reduce al these sayd hystories in to our Englysshe  
32 tongue, I haue put me in deuoyr to translate thys sayd  
book, as ye heretofore may se al a-longe and pl[a]yn,  
prayeng alle them that shal rede, see, or here it, to

And I, William  
Caxton, haue, at

the instance of  
Sir W. Daubeney,

translated this  
book into English

And I pray all to

<sup>1</sup> m vij. back.

<sup>2</sup> m vij. back. col. 2.

excuse my rude  
translation, and  
forgive the faults  
they may find.

And this work I  
finished on the  
18th June, in the  
year of our Lord,  
1483.

pardon me of thys symple & rude trans[1]acyon and  
reducyng<sup>t</sup>, bysechyng<sup>t</sup> theym that shal fynde faute to  
correecte it, & in so doying they shal deserue thankynges,  
& I shal praye god<sup>t</sup> for them, who brynge them and me, 4  
after this short and transytorye lyf, to euerlastyng<sup>t</sup>  
blysse. Amen. the whyche werke was fynysshed<sup>t</sup> in  
the reducyng of hit in to englysshe, the xviiij day of  
Iuyn, the second<sup>t</sup> yere of kyng<sup>t</sup> Rychar<sup>t</sup> the thyr<sup>t</sup>, 8  
And the yere of our lord<sup>t</sup> MCCCC lxxxv, And<sup>t</sup> enprynted<sup>t</sup>  
the fyrst day of decembre, the same of our lord<sup>t</sup>, & the  
fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth.

¶ Explicit *per* William Caxton.



## NOTES.

Page 1, line 12. "bye hystories:" Fr. *histoires haultaines*.

p. 1, l. 13. Fr. *lentement comun est mieuls content a retenir pour la ymaginacion locale, a la quelle il est subzmis*.

p. 1, l. 15. "gladly:" Fr. *volontiers*.

p. 2, l. 9. Fr. *peult estre que je ieusse bien este informe*.

p. 2, l. 11. See *Introduction*.

p. 2, l. 27. The "*Book of the noble Hystories of Kyng Arthur and of certeyn of his Knyghtes*, reduced into English by Syr Thomas Malory, Knyght, and by Mr. William Caxton, deuyded into xxi bookes, chapytred and empynted in the abbey westmestre;" was printed also in 1485, folio. It is a book of the greatest rarity. There is a perfect copy in Earl Jersey's library, at Osterley Park, and an imperfect one, wanting four leaves, in the library of Earl Spencer. It was reprinted by Wynkyn de Worde in 1498, folio, and an unique copy of this reprint is also in Earl Spencer's library. "*The last Siege and Conqueste of Jherusalem*," which gives the account of Godfrey of Bullogne, appeared in 1481.

p. 16, l. 22. "the people is boystous & furious, &c.:" Fr. *celluy peuple est austere et furieux, et, que pis est, sans memoire de dieu*.

p. 17, l. 16. "guarysshed and hool:" Fr. *gary*.

p. 17, l. 33. "and wepte—sayd:" Fr. *plourer moult largement en grant pitie va dire*, &c.

p. 18, l. 11. Fr. *Pour quoy toy comme vray dieu et seigneur ie te requiers, comme ie ne desire croire qu'en toy fermement: par ta haultaine puissance ie demande*.

p. 19, l. 27. [he]: the pronoun is unnecessarily inserted here: throughout the book the subject is constantly omitted in secondary clauses, where the person or thing spoken of is the same as in the principal sentence. See *Sage off Melayne*, l. 27, and note.

p. 19, l. 31. "autentykly:" Fr. *auctantiquement*.

p. 19, l. 32. "frentes:" clearly an error for "fontes:" the Fr. reads, *composer baptitoires couenablement*.

p. 21, l. 23. "put hym self in relygyon:" that is, became a recluse, devoted himself to religion: Fr. *se mist en religion*.

p. 26, l. 11. "cont[r]ye:" Fr. *pais*.

p. 26, l. 24. "wel a poynte:" Fr. *bien a pointe*.

- p. 27, l. 4. "as touchyng the pytaunce:" as regards his share at dinner: Fr. *quant a la pitance*.
- p. 27, l. 12. "iij hors shoen:" the Fr. original adds, *venans de la forge*.
- p. 29, l. 1. "to hym:" we should here insert "he doeth," according to the reading of the French original, *ou fait*.
- p. 29, l. 12. "frequenteþ:" constantly studied: Fr. *frequentoit*.
- p. 29, l. 26. "moche ample & boystous:" Fr. *moult ample et robuste*.
- p. 29, l. 30. "he ete not for the moost parte, &c.:" Fr. *ne mengoit pour le plus que de quatre metz, si non de la venoison rostie*.
- p. 32, l. 21. "he enclosed in Iustyce:" Fr. *soies enclos en iustee*.
- p. 33, l. 19. The original French runs: *ilz se vont trouuer en vng grant bois quon ne pouoit passer a mains de deux iours encores a grant paine, et charles le pensoit passer en vng iour*. The meaning evidently is that the wood was so extensive that they could not pass through it in two days, and even then with great difficulty.
- p. 34, l. 1. Psalm cxix. 35.
- p. 34, l. 15. "after in the same contreye, &c.:" Fr. *depuis sont veus ces oyceaulx*.
- p. 34, l. 24. In the original, *Constantynople*.
- p. 37, l. 1. "moment." The original reading is *au mouuement quon tira*. The French *mouuement* is evidently a mistake.
- p. 37, l. 30. "And it was ordeyned, &c.:" Fr. *il est ordonne que ou moys de iuing a ays la cite tous les ans on deust venir recoir, &c.*
- p. 38, l. 23. "after that I shal mowe, &c.:" Fr. *selon que ien pourray concepuoir*.
- p. 39, l. 4. "of rome:" orig. *a rome*.
- p. 39, l. 9. "adiouste:" add. Fr. *adioidre*. On the word *adjust*, as representing the two Latin forms *adjutare* and *adjustare*, see Dr. Murray's paper in the *Philological Society's Transactions*, 1880.
- p. 39, l. 10. "I have not founde in the book competent:" this, unintelligible in itself, is explained by the original French, which reads, *ou liure competent*, the last word meaning containing.
- p. 39, l. 29. See the different lists of the douzeperes, as given in the various romances in my note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 259, where the list given as that found in the *Sordane of Babyloyn* should be read as that of the original French version in the Grenville copy, 10531. The names given in the *Sordane* will be found in Dr. Hansknecht's Introduction to his edition of that romance, p. xxvii. For the names in *Roland* and *Otuel*, see my edition, note to l. 688.
- p. 40, l. 30. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 78.
- p. 41, l. 13. "as euyl ande olde:" Fr. *comme mauuais viellart*.
- p. 41, l. 33. "that I be fugytyf:" Fr. *ie soie fugi*.
- p. 42, l. 22. "quasi hurt, &c.:" hurt almost to the death.
- p. 42, l. 27. These exploits are related in the *Sordane of Babyloyn*, pp. 4 *et seq.*
- p. 46, l. 19. "cremenr:" in the original the same.

- p. 46, l. 20. "as," read [h]as[t]: Fr. *qui as*.
- p. 48, l. 14. "At uede a man knoweth hys frende." See the *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 131.
- p. 48, l. 20. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988.
- p. 48, l. 28. "took to hym." The original adds, *qui estoit estachie a dis riches cloux de fin or*.
- p. 49, l. 22. "lodgyce:" Fr. *logis*.
- p. 50, l. 3. "onte of mesure:" so outrageous in his conduct and language. "At thys heure, &c.:" Fr. *de cette heure ie vous ottoie*.
- p. 50, l. 18. "Andrewe:" Fr. *Andrieu*, does not appear again in the present or any other account of the treason at Roncesvalles, so far as I am aware.
- p. 50, l. 21. Compare the corresponding passages in *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 310 *et seq.*, and the notes.
- p. 50, l. 33. "secretly:" Fr. *comme entre ses dens*. Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 322.
- p. 51, l. 24. "the kyng had gynen to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence." The usual mode of giving permission to undertake a duel: compare *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1366, and the *Song of Roland*, l. 482, and notes.
- p. 51, l. 31. "where shal I become:" what will become of me? See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. v. 651.
- p. 52, l. 22. "he settid nought by hym:" took no thought or heed of him.
- p. 53, l. 9. "or:" I have corrected the reading in accordance with the original, which has *ou*.
- p. 54, l. 18. Compare *Chanson de Roland*, 376. "*Jamais n'iert hum qui encuntre lui cuillit*."
- p. 55, l. 26. "thou art departed of a lowe hous:" Fr. *tu es bien de basse main party*.
- p. 56, l. 12. "of the rounde table." An addition of the translator.
- p. 56, l. 20. "I trowe thou be hurte." Not in the original.
- p. 56, l. 27. "flagons:" *barilz*: "botelles" in the *Sowdan*, l. 1185: "costrel" in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 510, on which see note and Introd., p. xii; at p. 60, l. 6, below, they are called "barylles."
- p. 57, l. 21. "Termagaunt:" Fr. *Talugaunt*.
- p. 57, l. 30. "goddes:" the reading has been corrected on the authority of the original, which has *dieule*.
- p. 58, l. 28. "lether of arabye:" Fr. *cuir de capadocr*.
- p. 59, l. 3. "to the regarde of hys persone:" *i. e.* in comparison with himself.
- p. 59, l. 11. "I suppose:" *i. e.* I am sure.
- p. 59, l. 18. "grabam." The names of Ferumbras' swords are not given in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*, but in the verse *Fierabras* are said to have been Plorance, Baptism, and Garbain.
- p. 59, l. 23. ["I wyl saye:"] omitted also in the original, but plainly needed.

- p. 59, l. 25. In the verse *Fierabras* the names appear as *Galans*, *Munificans*, and *Aurisas*.
- p. 59, l. 33. The verse *Fierabras* gives the names of the swords made by Munificans as *Durandal*, *Musaguine*, and *Courtain*.
- p. 60, l. 6. "barylles." See p. 56, l. 27, and note.
- p. 60, l. 8. "bendede:" bound, banded: Fr. *bende*.
- p. 61, l. 12. "seen:" i. e. seeing, considering.
- p. 61, l. 35. "thou remembrest:" Fr. *tu taises*, i. e. thou thinkest of.
- p. 62, l. 18. "utterance:" Fr. *a oultrance*.
- p. 62, l. 23. "at this stroke:" Fr. *a cestuy cop*.
- p. 62, l. 34. "bowed and entred:" Fr. *pliez et entrez*.
- p. 63, l. 1. "tronchonne:" Fr. *tronconne*, i. e. broken to pieces.
- p. 63, l. 5. "in a grete whyle:" Fr. *dune grant preece*, i. e. for a great while.
- p. 63, l. 12. "made:" an instance of the omission of the subject pronoun *he* before the verb. See p. 19, l. 27, and note.
- p. 64, l. 4. "he was bowed afterward:" Fr. *par derriere*.
- p. 64, l. 14. "playe:" the regular technical term for fencing or fighting with swords. Thus the *Catholicon Anglicum* has: "a Bucler plaer, *gladiator*; a Bucler playnge, *gladiatura*. þ<sup>e</sup> Swerde & y<sup>e</sup> bucler (bukiller A.) playnge, *gladiatura*." In the *Ancien Riwe*, p. 212, we have the expression "*pleuð mid sweordes*." See further in my notes in the *Catholicon*.
- p. 64, l. 32. "reioye:" Fr. *resioye*.
- p. 66, ll. 7-32. Caxton carefully distinguishes between *you* and *ye*: the former never being used for the nominative.
- p. 68, l. 21. "made a lytel course:" ran away a little distance.
- p. 68, l. 24. There is no mention of Oliver's drinking any of the balm in *Sir Ferunbras* or the *Saerdan*. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the latter, l. 1191.
- p. 68, l. 29. "beyngt nyghe vnto a grete ryner, &c." See note 1 in Introduction to *Sir Ferunbras*, p. xii.
- p. 69, l. 12. ["he:"] the omission of the subject pronoun frequently causes ambiguity when two persons are spoken of: the [he] here, of course, refers to Oliver's horse.
- p. 69, l. 16. "aboue:" Fr. *oultre*, i. e. out of, away from.
- p. 69, l. 20. For number of chapter given as "viij" read "xiiij."
- p. 71, l. 11. "tenestre:" read "terrestre."
- p. 71, l. 21. "Longyns." On the legend of *Longinus*, see Prof. Skeat's notes to *P. Plorman*, C. xxi, 82—90.
- p. 71, l. 31. "thou." Here the singular pronoun is used rightly as in a prayer addressed directly to our Lord: in the previous lines *you* and *ye* were used, as they were not of the character of a prayer.
- p. 72, l. 6. "for hys glorious medytacyon." In the original French, *par glorieus meditacion*. "Nenertheles:" Fr. *touttefois*.
- p. 72, l. 16. "soo coneytous in smytynge:" Fr. *conuoiteule et affoibly*.
- p. 72, l. 17. "a-slepe:" i. e. numbed. Fr. *endormie*.

- p. 72, l. 19. "at vterraunce:" *a oultrance*: comp. p. 62, l. 18.
- p. 73, l. 8. "for to apoynte wyth the:" Fr. *te faire une pache*.
- p. 74, l. 5. "vylete:" Fr. *ville*.
- p. 74, l. 12. "matte." In the original the same. See *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 2506, 2590, and Glossary.
- p. 75, l. 20. "whyche he brake and al to-frussched euyl:" Fr. *cassa et rompi mallement*.
- p. 76, l. 5. "and ranne vpon hym:" Fr. *et se coururent*. The succeeding passage is awkwardly expressed in the translation. The original reads: *et fut premierement frappe Oliuer sur son escu par telle fierte, qu'au prez le poinz de Oliuer a mis en pieces son escu*, which is not much better. The *he*, of course, is Ferumbras.
- p. 78, l. 16. "enforced:" exerted. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, 782—  
"þan Firumbras enforcede hym þer to arise vp-on ys fete."
- p. 79, l. 18. "a faus dart:" Fr. *une faulx dart*. Properly a hand-bill. See *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 966, and note—  
"*falsarz an feþerd dart*."

The expression occurs again, p. 81, l. 28, below.

- p. 79, l. 20. "crapauld:" Fr. *crapaule*, a toad.
- p. 80, l. 72. "a pynapple tree:" a pine or fir-tree. The *Catholicum Anglicum* gives: "a Pyne tre (A Pyne Appyltre A.); *pinus* (*pinus fructus eius* A.)." Apple was the ordinary word for the cones of the pine or fir. Lyte, Dodoens, p. 769, speaking of the pine, says: "his fruite is great Boulleans or bawles of a browne chesnut colour, and are called *pine-apples*." See other instances in my note in the *Catholicum*.
- p. 81, l. 12. "by force of shotte and of strokes." Altered on the authority of the original, which reads: "*a force de coup et de trais*."
- p. 81, l. 28. "faus dartes." See p. 79, l. 18, and note.
- p. 82, l. 6. "it is good to wete:" this does not at all convey the meaning of the original, which runs: *sans le dire se pult entendre*.
- p. 82, l. 15. The omission of the pronoun before making makes the sentence rather awkward.
- p. 82, l. 27. "Amanedlys:" Fr. *Amandis*.
- p. 82, l. 35. In the *Sowdone* it is Roland and Oliver that are captured: see Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1433.
- p. 83, l. 9. "wente down of a mountayn." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 984:  
"at aualyng of an hulle."
- p. 83, l. 20. "morfounded:" Fr. *morfondus*, lit. chilled, affected by cold.
- p. 84, l. 31. "ones:" at some time or other.
- p. 85, l. 10. "Turpyyn." For an account of this celebrated Knight-Bishop, see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1711.
- p. 85, l. 19. "sercheden:" compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1093-4.

"is wounde to *enserche* and saye.

At is heste þey wente þer-to & softe gunne *taste* is wounde."

- p. 86, l. 3. "ballant thadmyral." Laban in the *Sowdone* throughout.

- p. 86, l. 32. "sythe." By using this word to render the original *puis*, Caxton has made the whole sentence almost unintelligible. It should run: "O brulant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuwe bruchart, and also of my sone fyerabras, the ledar and captayn of all?"
- p. 87, l. 6. "knyght:" Fr. *demoiseau*.
- p. 87, l. 15. In the *Sowdone* the French knights tell their true names.
- p. 87, l. 30. "yeman:" Fr. *vassal*.
- p. 88, l. 10. "brillant:" in the *Sowdone*, 1512, it is Floripas who advises her father to imprison the Frenchmen, not to slay them.
- p. 89, l. 3. "strayt:" Fr. *estroite*.
- p. 89, l. 6. See note to p. 79, l. 20.
- p. 89, l. 29. "put vnder by fals fortune:" Fr. *soubmis a faule fortune*.
- p. 89, l. 31. "what I make": Fr. *que ie fays*, i. e. what I am doing, how I fare.
- p. 90, l. 11. Compare the description of Floripas as given in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5789, *et seq.*
- p. 90, l. 28. "whyche was made of one of the fayrye:" Fr. *faicte dune fac*.
- p. 91, l. 1. Caxton's translation of Raoul Lefevre's *Jason* was printed in 1477 (Blades). Several copies are still in existence.
- p. 91, l. 11. "doughter:" Fr. *la fille*.
- p. 91, l. 26. "Anone florypes had ennye to here hym speke:" Fr. *eult eunt les oyr parler*, i. e. had a great desire to hear them speak.
- p. 91, l. 31. "dyschoneste:" Fr. *inhonestete*.
- p. 91, l. 32. "on that other syde:" i. e. on the other hand, again.
- p. 92, l. 21. "charlenayus:" evidently a misprint for "charlemayne," and not a genitive case.
- p. 92, l. 35. "for to meddle wyth:" Fr. *pour vous mesler* = to engage.
- p. 93, l. 3. "wel ferre for to be oute:" i. e. very far from being out. Perhaps we should read "wel ferre fro to be oute."
- p. 93, l. 18. "ye can wel playe with maydens, &c." Compare the corresponding passage in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1303, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1723.
- p. 93, l. 29. "a corde & a staffe." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 1308, Floripas sends for "anuyt, tange, & slegge." The *Sowdan* agrees with Caxton, for in l. 1647 we are told that she  
     "a rope to hem lete down goon  
     That aboveñ was teyde faste."
- p. 94, l. 13. "a gardyn pretoyre:" Fr. *avoit ung pretoire*, i. e. an enclosed yard or space.
- p. 94, l. 27. "camuse:" flat-nosed. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 4437, and Glossary.
- p. 94, l. 35. "varlet:" a repetition of the original French word.
- p. 95, l. 27. "ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs." This hardly conveys the meaning of the original, which runs: *se*

*dauenture quelque*, i. e. so long as, or, provided that no man hath heard us.

p. 95, l. 28. "I am not in doubte:" Fr. *en aultre doute*, i. e. fear.

p. 96, l. 5. "when my fader the admyral destroyed Rome." See my Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii, and Dr. Hausknecht's edition of the *Sowdan*, Introd.

p. 96, l. 6. "lucafar:" in the French versions of the romance *Lucifer* throughout.

p. 97, l. 1. "damage:" Fr. *dommaige*.

p. 97, l. 4. The French reads: *et plusieurs aultres terriennes victoires*.

p. 97, l. 6. "deteyneþ:" Fr. *detenir*.

p. 97, l. 30. "Rolland." In the *Sowdone*, l. 1663, it is Guy whom Charles orders first to go on the message to Balan. See Introduction, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1665.

p. 98, l. 33. "cosyn." Guy was Charles's nephew: see *Sir Ferumbras*, 1922, 2091, &c., and see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1888.

p. 99, l. 7. "lese:" destroy. Fr. *perdre*.

p. 101, l. 15. "and:" if.

p. 102, l. 5. Comparing p. 183, l. 32, it is clear that we should read "he behelde." On Durandal, see note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988, and the *Sowdone*, l. 875.

p. 102, l. 7. "descerkled:" cut off the circle or band of gold worn round the helmet. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 622, and note, and the corresponding passage in the *Sowdone*, l. 1182, and Dr. Hausknecht's note.

p. 103, l. 29. "Ogyer:" in *Sir Ferumbras* it is Richard of Normandy who gives the account of Mauntribe, which he was able to do, because, as we learn, "he knew all the cost."

p. 105, l. 7. "he hath quytte his contreye of fals peple." There can be little doubt that we should read "he hath not quytte."

p. 107, l. 14. "Naymes": in *Sir Ferumbras*, Roland; the *Sowdone* agrees with our text, see l. 1821.

p. 108, l. 23. "with his berde florysshed." Compare *Roland and Otuel*, 82; where Naymes, describing Charles, says:

"He sittes his duspers Imange,  
With white berde large and lange  
Faire of flesche & folle,  
With a floreschede thowwange,  
Oure noble kynge þat es so strange,  
His doghety men imelle."

p. 113, l. 25. "enterbracedþ eche other & kyssed:" Fr. *se font baisser et accoller*.

p. 116, l. 27. "gloutons." Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 1634, 3841, &c.

p. 118, l. 26. Compare the account of the game "at the coal," given in the *Sowdone*, ll. 1999—2003. In it Lucifer burns the beard of Naymes, who at once kills him.

- p. 119, l. 8. "thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes:" Fr. *tu me cuidas il ne pas gaires bon faite musier en tes folies.*
- p. 119, l. 17. "no more charge to playe:" Fr. *na plus cure de iour.*
- p. 120, l. 7. "put you in poynte:" Fr. *mis en point* = arm yourselves completely.
- p. 120, l. 28. "whyche was wel appoynted, &c.:" Fr. *trestien appareille tantost fut par terre vrese.*
- p. 121, p. 18. Fr. *tousiours a la cue d'ung viel chien vous tenez.*
- p. 122, l. 23. "Marpyn:" in the *Sowdone*, Mapyne; in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2387, Maubyn.
- p. 123, l. 23. "he came so wel to poynte, &c.:" slightly different in the French, *il vint la bien a point, car le larron.*
- p. 124, l. 29. "hyr spouse that shold be:" Fr. *son espouse aduenir.* Compare p. 134, l. 27.
- p. 128, l. 11. "doubte:" feared. Fr. *redouble.*
- p. 129, l. 13. "wente in theyr repayre:" went on their way back. Fr. *alloient en leur repaire.*
- p. 130, l. 18. "leste not for to be forthwith quartred, &c.:" he did not hesitate, though he should be at once cut to pieces. In the French, *et pour estre esquarterelle presentement il ne se fust tenu quil ne prist celluy sarrazin.*
- p. 130, l. 29. "whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to-bete hym in such wyse, &c.:" Fr. *que des pies que des mains ilz le vont tant battre* = both with hands and feet they beat him, &c. Compare the corresponding passage in *Syr Ferumbras*, p. 90, l. 2790, and note.
- p. 133, l. 19. "so hardy and oute of mesure:" Fr. *si hardis et des-mesurez.*
- p. 134, l. 27. "hir lone and tocomyng husbond:" Fr. *son espouse aduenir.* Compare p. 124, l. 29.
- p. 131, l. 31. "Truste ye none other, &c.:" be sure of this only, that if he die I shall leap out of the wyndowe, &c. Fr. *ne vous jics point que sil meurt.*
- p. 136, l. 11. "a morel of grete faeyon:" Fr. *morcel de grant faison.*
- p. 136, l. 19. "after that he was reconred:" as soon as he had recovered himself. Fr. *aprez quil se fut recouru.*
- p. 136, l. 32. "Inconuenyents:" Fr. *inconueniens* = damage.
- p. 137, l. 31. "cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, &c.:" Fr. *luy criu a haulte voix quil luy plust de la veoir baisier, en disant que selle vivoit pour la pousse des barons que son pere l'admiral seroit une jfoys en son dangier.* The whole passage is very obscure, nor does the corresponding line in *Sir Ferumbras* help much to make it any clearer.
- p. 142, l. 3. "at vtterance:" Fr. *a oultrance* = exceedingly.
- p. 142, l. 7. "esmaye you nothyng yet:" Fr. *ne vous esmaies encore.*
- p. 142, l. 12. "beurage:" Fr. *beuraige*, a draught.
- p. 142, l. 30. "For they sawe parte of the walles, &c.:" Fr. *car ilz virent a terre ruer les murailles principalls du chateau.*



- p. 143, l. 25. "be ye . . ne wroth ayenst Mahon:" in the *Sourdane* Balan smashes Mahonud.
- p. 144, l. 15. "the frenshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper:" Fr. *les francoys nous veullent faire refroidier notre soupper* = wish to make our supper cold.
- p. 145, l. 1. "wherfor of veray force the other paynynis must re-  
torne:" Fr. *pourquoy force fut aux aultres*, &c.
- p. 145, l. 25. "sythe he is a man of auctoryte:" Fr. *puis quil est  
homme de audience*.
- p. 147, l. 5. "abandoned hym self to goo:" offered himself, volun-  
teered.
- p. 147, l. 26. "greued in hys persone:" wounded. Fr. *greue de sa  
personne*.
- p. 149, l. 5. "on a day emonge al other:" Fr. *un jour entre les  
aultres*.
- p. 149, l. 17. "at al aduenture:" Fr. *a son aventure*.
- p. 149, l. 28. "he doubted entyerly:" Fr. *il doubta entierement* =  
feared greatly, or in his heart. See *Glossary*.
- p. 151, l. 6. "dropped:" Fr. *platz* = broad.
- p. 152, l. 6. "attayned ouerthwart the necke:" Fr. *lattaingt du trauers  
du col*.
- p. 154, l. 4. "of thy partye:" = so far as thou art concerned. Fr.  
*de ta part*.
- p. 154, l. 13. Fr. *Et quant l'admiral les vit venir tout ethroclite en son  
entendement*. I can make nothing of "the ethroclites."
- p. 155, l. 8. "Orages:" in *Sir Ferumbas*, 3823, Malyngras; in the  
*Sourdane*, 2145, Espyard.
- p. 155, l. 29. "To whom there is none like or equal in goodness in  
the world:" Fr. *quil non y a point de pareil*.
- p. 158, l. 2. "in conyng, &c.:" as we should now see, *en passant*, or  
by the way. Fr. *en venant vous debuez scauoir*.
- p. 158, l. 5. The miracle of the water rising to a level with the  
banks, and afterwards subsiding, is not given in the English metrical  
versions of the romance. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sourdane*,  
l. 2810.
- p. 159, l. 10. "dantesuyle." In the original French, *dautfeuille*, evi-  
dently misread by Caxton.
- p. 161, l. 1. "how am I determyned?" Fr. *comme suis ie determiné*.
- p. 161, l. 29. "as a thief attaynt:" Fr. *comme larron prouue*.
- p. 163, l. 12. "deffende:" forbid. Fr. *ne plaise pas a dieu que iamais*.
- p. 165, l. 31. "wyth motye:" Fr. *a ce mouuement vous viendrez*.
- p. 167, l. 14. "reclame me reereaute, &c.:" Fr. *reclame reereant et  
tenu reboute*.
- p. 169, l. 3. "bowed his hede:" Fr. *baissa le mouton*.
- p. 169, l. 28. "of an olde Serpente, &c.:" Fr. *dung viel serpent crote  
et moult endurey*.
- p. 170, l. 27. "confaun:" so in the original French.

- p. 171, l. 27. "she was departed fro her gesyne, &c.:" Fr. *qui auoit faicte sa gessine de deux filz*, that is, who had given birth to two sons.
- p. 172, l. 11. "facyon:" = state of affairs.
- p. 175, l. 24. "Thus doyingt:" = while this was happening.
- p. 175, l. 32. "Amyotte." Amyote, *Sir Ferumbas*, 4663; Barrok, in the *Sowdone*, 2939.
- p. 177, l. 10. In the *Sowdone*, 3043, Richard is left as governor of Mantrible.
- p. 177, l. 35. "he swowned, &c.:" Fr. *il pasma de ducil et cria comme tout hors du sens*.
- p. 178, l. 11. "wel abused:" Fr. *bien abusez* = greatly deceived or mistaken. This is almost the oldest use of the word. "*Abuser*. To abuse, misuse . . . deceive, disappoint, gull, cozen, beguile. *Sabuser*. To mistake, to be in error; to wronge himselfe, &c." Cotgrave.
- p. 179, l. 7. "the olde kyngt Coldroe tempesteð hym." Here Caxton has made a most curious mistake. The original runs: *et avec luy le viel roy Coldroe, tempeste, et brullant de monnierre: tempeste* being really the name of one of the Saracen kings, and not a verb.
- p. 183, l. 5. "better aduysed:" Fr. *quil soit desousli(?)*.
- p. 183, l. 32. "byhelde:" Fr. *regarderent*. See note to p. 102, l. 6.
- p. 184, l. 13. "Duc Naymes." In the *Sowdone* Floripas first sees the French army advancing.
- p. 187, l. 1. "in the tree of the crosse:" Fr. *en larbre*.
- p. 187, l. 14. "he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes:" Fr. *a peu de fait quil ne fut enraige de ses parolles*.
- p. 187, l. 33. "by presumyngt:" Fr. *par presumption* = by supposition.
- p. 190, l. 2. "wythoute faulte:" Fr. *sans faulte* = without fail.
- p. 193, l. 29. "helde them soo short, &c.:" Fr. *et les tindrent si de prez quilz ne sceurent que fuïre*.
- p. 195, l. 11. "a grete abusyon:" Fr. *grant abusyon*.
- p. 201, l. 7. "that there was non abusyon, &c.:" Fr. *quil ny auoit point dabusyon en croire et adorer les distes reliques*.
- p. 202, l. 22. "al ranysshed:" Fr. *tout ruy*.
- p. 204, l. 7. "onerthrow to the erthe:" Fr. *ront tomber par terre*.
- p. 208, l. 18. "he founded, rented, and releneð many and dyners chyrches:" Fr. *il fonda, renta, et relena plusieurs et diuerses eglises*.
- p. 209, l. 4. See Dr. Hansknecht's note to the *Sowdon*, l. 1888.
- p. 209, l. 23. "he wold not lene herby:" would not stop at this. Fr. *ne se vult tenir a ceuy*.
- p. 209, l. 27. "maad certeyn experyences:" Fr. *jist aucunes exp rimentacions*.
- p. 213, l. 5. "took hede:" Fr. *sen prist garde* = took notice.
- p. 214, l. 31. Fr. *ceulx qui estoient presens et leurs success urs fussent francs et liberez, les tillables fussent a leurs drois comme quilz fussent conditionez*.

- p. 215, l. 35. "felow:" Fr. *compaignon de cescoc*.
- p. 217, l. 13. "wythoute makynge grete rebellyon:" without showing any great fight. Fr. *sans faire grandes rebellions*.
- p. 221, l. 17. "demaundeð synguler persone ayenst a persone:" Fr. *demanda a Charles bataille singuliere de personne a personne*.
- p. 222, l. 17. "soo vylaynsly:" Fr. *si villement*.
- p. 231, l. 1. "surprysed:" overcome, taken. Fr. *surpris*.
- p. 237, l. 1. "dystourneð:" turned him away, dissuaded him. Fr. *le destourcha*.
- p. 237, l. 21. "lepte:" corrected on the authority of the original French, which reads *monta*.
- p. 242, l. 6. "to-faissheð and broken:" Fr. *il estoit nauce, cassé, et tout rompu*.
- p. 251, l. 27. "daubeney." See *In reduction*, p. 7.



## G L O S S A R Y.

- Abuse, *s.* 60/30, deceit, error.  
 Abuse, *v.* 206 19, deceive.  
 Abylled, *pt. s.* 80 11, dressed, prepared.  
 Accomplysshe, *v.* 125 34, complete, finish.  
 Accumyled, *pa. par.* 198 167, accumulated, grown long and thick.  
 Acoward, *v.* 173 15, show to be a coward, prove oneself a coward.  
 Adionste, *v.* 39 9, to add, append.  
 Adoubed, *pa. par.* 95 22, arrayed, dressed; 55 5, dubbed.  
 Affectionously, *adv.* 13 12, affectionately, with affection.  
 Alowed, *pa. par.* 49 20, praised.  
 Ampull, *s.* 20 31, a flask, a bottle, a jar.  
 And, *conj.* 101 15, if.  
 Anenst, *prep.* 246 29, towards, as regards.  
 Appeled, *pt. s.* 212 26, accused, challenged, charged with.  
 Araught, *pt. s.* 76 28, reached to, touched.  
 Arbalastré, *s.* 101 12, a cross-bow.  
 Aresonned, *pa. par.* 52 20, questioned.  
 Attayned, *pt. s.* 190 19, reached, struck.  
 Attones, *adv.* 56 14, at once, at the same time.  
 Auale, *pt. s.* 158 16, sank down, was lowered; 101 31, let down, lowered.  
 Baeynet, *s.* 32 15, a small helmet.  
 Barat, *s.* 231 35, fraud, deceit.  
 Baston, *s.* 182 4, a staff.  
 Batayl, *s.* 232 35, a battalion, a division of an army.  
 Bayned, *pa. par.* 89 20, bathed, plunged.  
 Baynes, *s. pl.* 95 20, baths.  
 Becke, *s.* 20 30, a beak, bill.  
 Behoeful, *v.* 145 25, advisable, advantageous.  
 Belfraye, *s.* 175 7, a tower. See *Cath. Anglicum*, s. v. Barsepay.  
 Blynfelde, *pt. pl.* 82 1, blindfolded. See *Cath. Anglicum*, s. v. Blyndfeyld.  
 Bowedraugt, *s.* 189 31, a bowshot.  
 Boystous, *a.* 29 26, large, big; 16 22, rough, violent.  
 Broched, *pt. s.* 101 35, spurred.  
 Buseage, *s.* 33 19, a wood. O.Fr. *boscage*.  
 Canuse, *a.* 94 27, short, thick-nosed.  
 Chauffed, *pt. par.* 95 20, warmed, heated.  
 Complices, *s. pl.* 164 33, accomplices.  
 Confanon, *s.* 170 27. For gonfanon = a standard.  
 Confysked, *pa. par.* 21 34, confiscated.  
 Conuenably, *adv.* 19 32, suitably, fittingly.  
 Corobere, *v.* 24 9, to strengthen.  
 Crapudd, *s.* 79 20, a toad.

*Cremeur*, *s.* 46/19, dread.

"*Cremeur*, feare, dread." —  
Cotgrave.

*Cresme*, *s.* 20/32. The chrism or holy oil with which kings were anointed at their consecration. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s.* v. *Creme*.

*Dedyed*, *pa. par.* 16/35, dedicated.

*Delyuer*, *a.* 80/33, active, nimble. Hence the modern *clever*.

*Depesshe*, *v. imp.* 53/9, hasten, hurry.

*Derked*, *pt. s.* 211/12, was eclipsed.

*Descerkled*, *pt. s.* 102/7, cut off the circle or ring round the helmet.

*Descouerred*, *pa. par.* 75/26, uncovered, deprived.

*Desmaylled*, *pa. par.* 69/10, deprived of the mails or plates.

*Disreng*, *v.* 226/19, to be thrown in disorder.

*Dy-shioneste*, *s.* 91/31, filth, nastiness.

*Dyssynyled*, *pa. par.* 13/22, disguised.

*Dystourned*, *pt. s.* 237/1, turned aside.

*Dystrouble*, *v.* 151/27, trouble, disturb, interfere with.

*Egal*, *s.* 59/2, equal, match.

*Empesshed*, *pa. par.* 219/14, hindered, obstructed.

*Enforced*, *pl. s.* 78/16, exerted.

*Engyne*, *s.* 165/21, craft, art, skill.

*Enhardyed*, *pt. pl.* 192/22, encouraged, took courage.

*Ensweyng*, *v.* 250/24, following.

*Enterbraced*, *pt. pl.* 113/25, embraced.

*Enterprenour*, *s.* 166/10, enterpriser, actor.

*Entretene*, *v.* 46/32, to treat, behave towards.

*Entyer*, *a.* 237/32, earnest, hearty.

*Entyered*, *pa. par.* 211/27, interred.

*Entyerly*, *adv.* 119/28, earnestly, very greatly. "*Entyryly*: *intire*." *Cathol. Anglicum*.

*Eserye*, *v.* 77/27, to call upon, invoke.

*Faus*, *a.* 79/18. See *note*.

*Faysyble*, *a.* 49/34, possible to be done, feasible.

*Felounye*, *s.* 109/30, daring, recklessness.

*Fere*, *v.* 140/5, to frighten.

*Ferfully*, *adv.* 193/32, in fear, timidly.

*Fette*, *pt. s.* 223/26, fetched.

*Fliese*, *s.* 91/1, a fleece.

*Florysshe*, *v.* 36/3, to bud, flower.

*Florysshed*, *pa. par.* 108/23, flowing, long and wide.

*Formosyte*, *s.* 198/10, beauty.

*Frequented*, *pt. s.* 29/12, made frequent use of.

*Geayler*, *s.* 89/1, jailer.

*Glaues*, *sb. pl.* 81/27, glaives: weapons made of a cutting blade fixed at the end of a staff.

*Gree*, *s.* 96/10, pleasure, delight.

*Grued*, *pa. par.* 147/26, hurt, injured.

*Guarysshed*, *pa. par.* 17/16, cured, healed.

*Habylle*, *a.* 169/32, active, nimble.

*Harnoyes*, *s.* 105/34, equipments, outfit.

*Houyng*, *pr. par.* 36/16, hovering.

*Iape*, *v.* 60/22, play, mock.

*Ionques*, *s. pl.* 200/1, rushes. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s.* v. *Ionkett*.

*Journeye*, *s.* 216/9, a day's journey.

*Lawhe*, *v.* 53/12, to laugh.

*Lawhyng*, *a.* 90/15, laughing.

*Lesynges*, *s. pl.* 106/8, lies.

*Leteth*, *pr. s.* 212/24, causes. *Leteth the wite* = tells you, sends notice to you.

*Lette*, *pa. par.* 219/14, obstructed, hindered.

- Loange, *s.* 25/32, praise, worship, reverence. O.Fr. *louange*.
- Lodgyce, *s.* 49/22, lodgings, tent. Fr. *logis*.
- Loos, *s.* 85/5, glory, praise.
- Lyces, *s.* *pl.* 40/25. Lists or a tilt-yard (*Cotgrave*) here used for the lines of the camp.
- Lygnage, *s.* 192/33, clan, party.
- Maistresse, *s.* 94/19, governess.
- Matte, *a.* 74/12, conquered, thoroughly beaten. See glossary to *Sir Ferumbras*.
- Maulgre, *prep.* 234/26, in spite of.
- Meddle, *v.* 92/35, engage, contend.
- Medled, *pa. par.* 198/14, mixed, intermingled.
- Mesprysed, *pa. par.* 251/12, made a mistake, erred; 52/6, done wrong, injured.
- Mosel, *s.* 151/10, a muzzle.
- Moyen, *s.* 213/33, a means, a plan.
- Murayl, *s.* 203/25, walls, fortifications.
- Muse, *v.* 119/9, to be confounded.
- Ouerall, *adv.* 30/12, everywhere.  
 "Ouer alle; *passim, chieun-que, genus loquendi est obique.*"—*Cath. Anglicum*.
- Ouerthrewe, *pt.* *s.* 141/18, fell over.
- Parents, *s.* *pl.* 160/3, relations.
- Pourchace, *v.* 32/6, provide, contrive. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 2603.
- Prestly, *adv.* 94/35, readily, quickly.
- Prined, *pa. par.* 215/14, withdrawn, estranged.
- Purchaced, *pa. par.* 131/8, obtained, procured.
- Putayne, *s.* 180/1, a harlot.
- Puterye, *s.* 181/35, harlotry. Fr. *puterie*.
- Pynapple, *s.* 80/22, a fir. See note.
- Raught, *pt.* *s.* 81/18, reached to, touched.
- Reioye, *v.* 64/32, renew.
- Releued, *pt.* *s.* 130/24, lifted up, raised.
- Remysed, *pt.* *s.* 208/28, placed again, brought back.
- Rented, *pt.* *s.* 206/18, endowed.
- Repayre, *s.* 129/13, retreat, return.
- Rescower, *pa. par.* 72/35, rescued.
- Retcheth, 3 *pr.* *s.* 22/3, cares, recks.
- Ryuage, *s.* 158/3, shore, bank.
- Salewe, *pt.* *s.* 49/23, saluted, made obeisance to.
- Setted, *pt.* *s.* 52/22, set, thought.
- Share, *pt.* *s.* 76/28, cut.
- Somnyers, *s.* *pl.* 105/23, pack-horses.
- Soulded, *pa. par.* 103/33, soldered, fastened, jointed.
- Sperhawke, *s.* 193/32, a sparrowhawk.
- Stratchedden, *pt. pl.* 236/31, were stretched or strained.
- Sudarye, *s.* 37/14, a handkerchief: commonly applied to the napkin which wrapped about our Lord's head. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* and note.
- Surquydrous, *a.* 74/10, proud, haughty.
- Swolowe, *s.* 205/32, a whirlpool or quicksand. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* a Swalle of y<sup>e</sup> See.
- Symylaeres, *s.* *pl.* 206/11, images.
- Syeges, *s.* *pl.* 229/5, seats, places.
- Tabellyons, *s.* *pl.* 214/32. See note.
- Tabouryns, *s.* *pl.* 22/27, tabourers.
- Thwarte, *prep.* 44/6, across.
- To-frussed, *pa. par.* 75/20, broken to pieces.
- Tranaylled, *pa. par.* 103/7, worn out with labour.
- Tronchoned, *pt. par.* 63/1, broken to pieces.
- Truffed, *pt.* *s.* 119/15, played, mocked.

Tyrece, <i>s.</i> 232/23, terce, or the third of the canonical hours.	Wende, <i>pt.</i> <i>s.</i> 36/13, thought, intended.
Underset, <i>pa. par.</i> 249/7, propped up, supported.	Wesshe, <i>pt.</i> <i>s.</i> 66/21, washed.
Vnnothe, <i>adv.</i> 31/6, scarcely, with difficulty.	Wynbrowes, <i>s. pl.</i> 26/33, eyebrows. Evidently a corruption of <i>eyebrowes</i> .
Vylaynsly, <i>adv.</i> 222/17, shamefully, disgracefully.	Ymbre, <i>s.</i> 37/35, ember.







5.R.24/11/44

PR	Early English Text
1119	Society
E5	[Publications]
no.36-37	Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

